R

RANGE ROVER EVOQUE

OWNER'S HANDBOOK

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Publication Part No. LRL 10 02 60 171

Introduction

ABOUT THIS HANDBOOK

Please take the time to study all of the owner literature supplied with your vehicle as soon as possible.

IMPORTANT

The information contained in this handbook covers all vehicle derivatives and optional equipment, some of which may not be fitted to your vehicle. Due to printing cycles, this handbook may include descriptions of options before they become generally available.

The vehicle options, hardware and software, are designed for the market in which the vehicle is intended for original sale. If the vehicle is to be registered or used in another geographical area, it may need modifications to suit local requirements. Jaguar Land Rover Limited is not responsible for the cost of any modifications. Warranty conditions may be affected.

The information contained in this publication was correct when it went to print. Subsequent vehicle design changes may result in a supplement being added to the literature pack. The digital handbook can be viewed at: **www.ownerinfo.landrover.com** and is updated with the latest available information.

In the interest of development, the right is reserved to change specifications, design or equipment, at any time, without notice and without incurring any obligations. This publication, or part thereof, may not be reproduced nor translated without our approval. Errors and omissions excepted.

SYMBOLS USED IN THIS HANDBOOK

Safety warnings indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury.

Cautions indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of damage to your vehicle.

The recycling symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of safely in order to prevent unnecessary damage to the environment.

The disposal symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from your retailer/ authorised repairer or your local authority.



The personalisation symbol identifies those features that can be adjusted, disabled, or enabled by your retailer/authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016.

All rights reserved.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEOS

Throughout this handbook are a selection of QR codes which, when scanned using a smartphone app, will connect the smartphone to relevant instructional videos.

Note: *The instructional videos are best viewed using a high-speed internet or 4G connection.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

R

Contents

Introduction....2
Controls overview....7
Entering the vehicle....9
Exiting the vehicle....21
Front seats....26
Rear seats....32
Head restraints....34
Steering wheel....36
Seat belts....37
Child safety....42
Airbags....50
Instrument panel....58
Warning and information lamps....63
Exterior lights....71
Interior lights....75
Wipers and washers....79
Mirrors....83
Garage door opener....85
Windows....88
Storage compartments....91
Load carrying....96
Convertible roof....100
Towing....108
Starting the engine....119
Auto stop/start....123
Transmission....125
Suspension....129
Brakes....130
Stability control....135
Traction control....137
Hill descent control (HDC)....138
Cruise control....140
Adaptive cruise control....141
All terrain progress control (ATPC)....149
Driving programs....153
4x4i....156
Driving aids....160
Touch screen - Home....170
Touch screen - Extra features..175
Touch screen - Settings....177
Media....178
AM/FM Radio....185
DAB radio....188
Portable media....190
Television....198
DVD player....200
Dual view....202
Headphones....204
Climate and comfort....206
Parking features....217
Phone....229
Bluetooth®....235
Navigation....236
Voice control....249
InControl....251
Connectivity....259
Fuel and refuelling....262
Maintenance....273
Vehicle cleaning....288
Fluid level checks....293
Vehicle battery....300
Fuses....305
Tyres....316
Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)....325
Tyre repair kit....328
Wheel changing....333
Vehicle recovery....339
After a collision....341
Vehicle labels....343
Technical specifications....345
Service....356

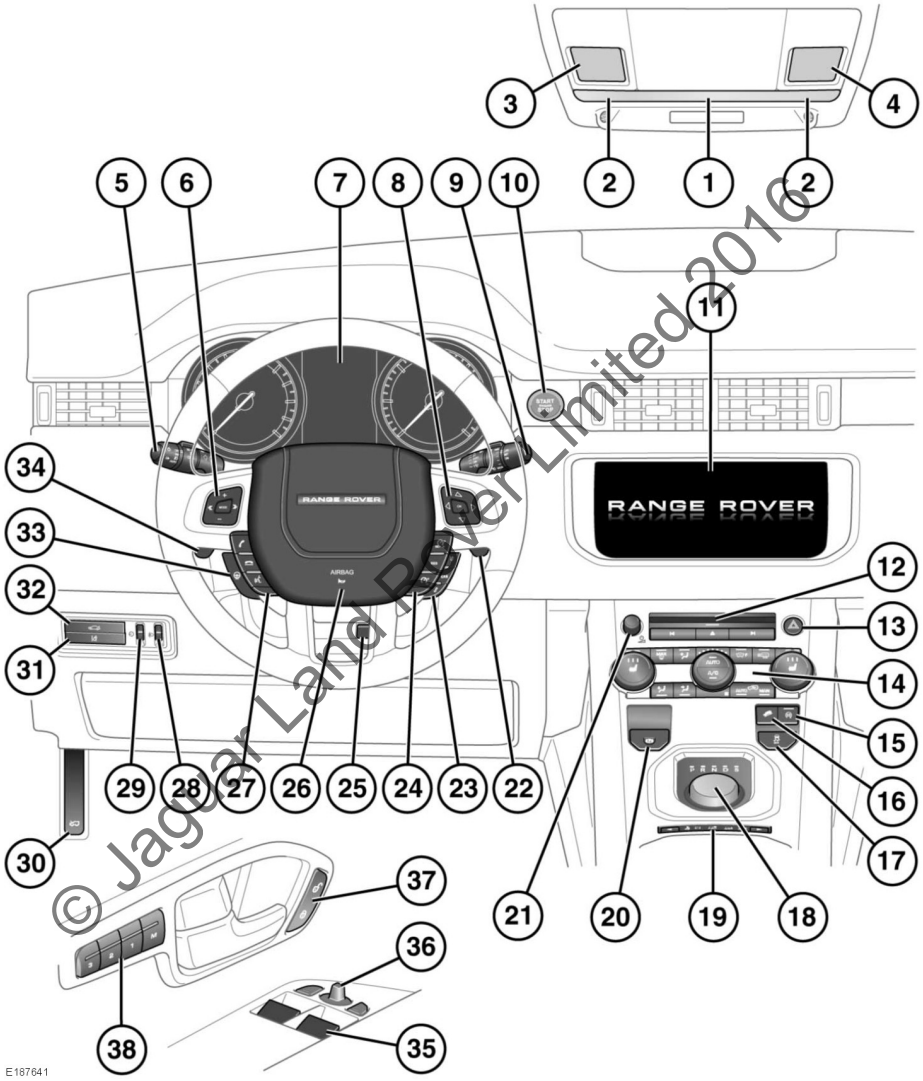
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Contents

Warranty.....362
Roadside assistance.....369
Type approval.....372
Index.....387

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

DRIVER CONTROLS



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

For further information on the numbered item, refer to the page number.

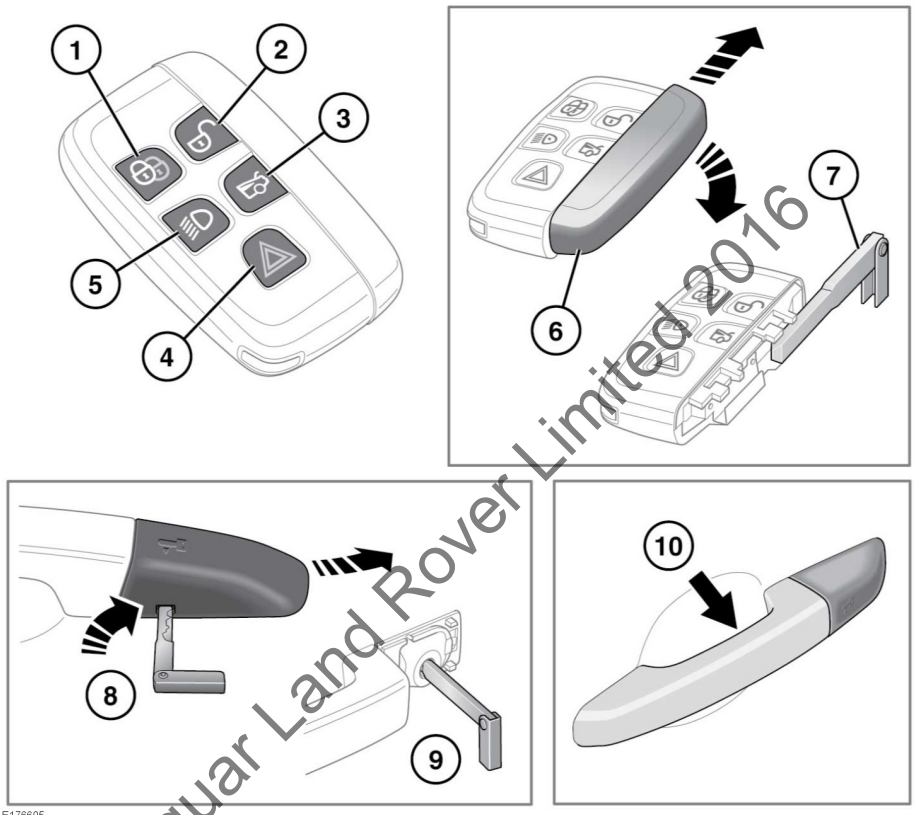
1. Front interior light. **75**.
2. Front map reading lights. **75**.

Controls overview

3. InControl Protect: Breakdown Call. **251**.
4. InControl Protect: SOS Emergency Call. **251**.
5. Exterior lights and trip computer. **71** and **60**.
6. Media system control. **178**.
7. Instrument panel and message centre. **58**.
8. Instrument panel menu control. **58**.
9. Wipers and washers control. **79**.
10. Engine START/STOP. **119**.
11. Touch screen. **170**.
12. Media system. **178**.
13. Hazard warning lights.
14. Heating, ventilation and Air Conditioning (AC) controls. **206**.
15. Auto stop/start. **123**.
16. Hill Descent Control (HDC). **138** and **149**.
17. Dynamic Stability Control (DSC). **135**.
18. Automatic transmission gear selector. **125**.
19. Terrain response. **153**.
20. Electric Parking Brake (EPB). **133**.
21. Media on, off and volume. **178**.
22. Up-shift gear paddle. **125**.
23. Adaptive cruise control. **141**.
24. Cruise control or adaptive cruise control. **140** and **141**.
25. Steering column adjustment lever. **36**.
26. Horn.
27. Phone control. **233**.
28. Headlight levelling. **74**.
29. Interior light illumination. **78**.
30. Bonnet release lever. **277**.
31. Lane departure warning. **163**.
32. Luggage compartment release or open. **1513**.
33. Heated steering wheel. **36**.
34. Down-shift gear paddle. **125**.
35. Window controls. **88**.
36. Mirror adjustment and power-folding mirrors. **83**.
37. Central locking and unlocking. **24**.
38. Driving position memory. **29**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should make sure that the device is kept at a distance of at least 22 cm away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device.

Interference may cause the implanted medical device to malfunction, causing serious injury or death. For more information on the locations of the security system transmitters, see 351, SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS.

Entering the vehicle

To prevent accidental or unauthorised operation, never leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle can be operated when the smart key is inside the vehicle.

Note: *The operational range of the smart key varies considerably, depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.*

Note: *If any door, or the luggage compartment, is unlocked 10 times within a short period, the locking latch is disabled for approximately 1 minute.*

The vehicle is supplied with two smart keys. The smart keys act as remote controls for the locking and alarm system. They allow the vehicle to be locked, unlocked, and driven without the use of a conventional key. Each smart key also has an emergency key housed behind a slide-off cover. See **12, KEYLESS ENTRY**, **22, KEYLESS LOCKING**, and **119, STARTING THE ENGINE**.

1. Lock: Press to secure the vehicle. The vehicle single locks. In some markets, a second press double locks the vehicle. If power-fold mirrors are enabled, they fold in. See **21, SINGLE LOCKING**, **21, DOUBLE LOCKING**, **83, DOOR MIRRORS**.
   Press and hold to activate global closing. See **23, GLOBAL CLOSING**.
2. Unlock: Press briefly to unlock the vehicle and disarm the alarm. The hazard warning lights flash twice to indicate that the vehicle is unlocked and the alarm is disarmed. The interior lights illuminate to assist entry to the vehicle.
   If power-fold mirrors are enabled, they unfold. Press and hold to activate global opening. See **12, GLOBAL OPENING**.
3. Luggage compartment: Press briefly to release, open or close the luggage compartment. If the vehicle is locked and armed, all of the other doors remain closed and the exterior alarm remains armed while the luggage compartment is open. Intrusion and inclination sensing systems disable until the luggage compartment is closed again.
   When closing, if the vehicle is already locked and armed, the hazard warning lights flash after a few seconds to confirm that the full alarm system is re-armed. An audible sound is given when the vehicle is double locked.

   Note: *Make sure the smart key does not remain in the vehicle before closing. It may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, e.g., a smartphone. Also, if the vehicle is in an area of localised Radio Frequency (RF) interference, it may not be detected. If the smart key is not detected inside the vehicle, the vehicle locks. The vehicle does not automatically unlock. The vehicle now unlocks only with another valid smart key.*
4. Panic alarm:
   - Press and hold for 3 seconds (or press three times within 3 seconds) to activate the horn and the hazard lights.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

- Once active for more than 5 seconds, the alarm can be cancelled. Press the button and hold for 3 seconds (or press three times within 3 seconds).
- The panic alarm also cancels if a valid smart key is present when the **START/STOP** button is pressed.

5. Headlights:
   - When approaching the vehicle during darkness, press to switch on the approach illumination. Press again to switch approach illumination off.
   - The approach illumination preset delay period is 30 seconds. This delay period can be configured to provide illumination lasting between 0 and 240 seconds. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.
6. Emergency key access: Slide open the side cover to release, then remove.
7. Emergency key blade: Remove and unfold.
8. Door lock cover: If the smart key fails to open the vehicle, insert the key blade into the slot at the base of the driver's door lock cover. Apply slight downward pressure to the top of the cover and gently lever the key blade upwards. Carefully rotate the door lock cover upwards, to lever the cover off the retaining lugs.
9. Door lock: Insert the key blade into the exposed lock and turn to operate the lock. The alarm sounds until the smart key is positioned correctly to disarm the alarm. See **120, ENGINE START BACKUP**.

   Note: *When replacing the door lock cover, locate the top retaining lugs first. Press down and inwards to locate the single bottom lug. The lug clicks into the locked position. Check the security of the cover. An insecure cover is likely to fall off while the vehicle is moving.*
10. Keyless entry and exit: Exterior door handles have separate unlock and lock sensors. The unlock sensor is located on the inner surface of the handle.

Note: *A replacement smart key can be obtained only from a retailer/authorised repairer. The retailer/authorised repairer will require proof of identification and ownership.*
Notify your retailer/authorised repairer immediately if a smart key is lost or stolen.

SINGLE AND MULTI-POINT ENTRY

To unlock the vehicle and disarm the alarm system, press the smart key, unlock button. The vehicle unlocks in one of two ways:

1. Single-point entry: Unlocks the driver's door only. A second press is required to unlock the remaining doors and the tailgate.
2. Multi-point entry: Unlocks all of the doors and the tailgate on the first press.

To change from single to multi-point entry, or vice versa, on the smart key, press the lock and unlock buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds. The hazard warning lights flash twice to confirm the change.

Single and multi-point entry may also be set via the Vehicle settings menu. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Note: *If an audible warning is emitted when the vehicle is unlocked, there may be a fault with the alarm sensors. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.*

GLOBAL OPENING

To unlock the vehicle and open all of the windows simultaneously, press and hold the smart key, unlock button for 3 seconds.

To cancel global opening, press any of the buttons on the smart key.

Note: *Global opening can be enabled and disabled via the instrument panel menu. See* ***59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU****.*

KEYLESS ENTRY

Keyless entry allows the vehicle to be opened if a smart key is within 1 m of the door handle or the tailgate button.

Note: *The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, e.g., a smartphone. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting keyless entry, keyless locking, or push button starting.*

Note: *The smart key needs only to be on the driver's person, or in a non-metallic bag or briefcase. The smart key does not need to be exposed or handled.*

The keyless entry sensor is located on the inner surface of the door handle. Grip and pull the door handle to open the door. The vehicle unlocks, the alarm system disarms, and the hazard warning lights flash twice to confirm unlocking. If the power-fold mirrors are enabled, they fold out.

Note: *When single-point entry is the current security setting and a door other than the driver's door is opened first, all of the doors unlock.*

After entering the vehicle, and all of the doors are closed, a scan is made of the interior for a valid smart key. If a valid smart key is not detected, the message centre displays the message, **SMART KEY NOT FOUND**. If this situation occurs, use a valid smart key to carry out the start backup procedure. See **120, ENGINE START BACKUP**.

The security system fitted to this vehicle is Thatcham category 1 approved and meets EU regulations 97/116 and EU directive 95/56 EC.

CONVENIENCE MODE

When the driver's door is opened using either the smart key or keyless entry, the vehicle's electrical system initiates the convenience mode. The following systems become functional:

- Driver position memory.
- Seat adjustment.
- Interior and exterior lighting.
- Message centre.
- Auxiliary power socket.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

SMART KEY SYSTEM TRANSMITTERS

Keep any implanted medical device at least 22 cm away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and device. Interference may cause the implanted medical device to malfunction, causing serious injury or death. More information on the locations of the security system transmitters can be found in the technical specifications section.

See **351, SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS**.

STEERING COLUMN LOCK

The electroniclly adjustable steering column lock locks and unlocks in conjunction with the vehicle's locking system. The steering column lock also locks automatically, after a time delay, when the ignition is switched off and the smart key is removed from the vehicle.

During vehicle recovery, a smart key must remain inside the vehicle, so that the electronic steering column lock remains unlocked.

If the steering column lock malfunctions, the message centre displays the message, **STEERING COLUMN LOCKED**. If this occurs:

1. Lock and then unlock the vehicle using the smart key.
2. Try again to unlock the steering column lock. Turn the steering wheel gently to the left and right.

Note: *The steering column lock malfunctions, if the steering column is under load.If the vehicle is parked with the steering on full lock, the steering wheel position may inadvertently press a front tyre against a kerb, etc.*

If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

DRIVE-AWAY LOCKING

Drive-away locking automatically locks all of the doors when the vehicle reaches a set speed. The drive-away locking feature can be enabled or disabled via **Drive-away locking** in the instrument panel menu. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *Press the unlock or lock button on the driver or front passenger door, after drive-away locking has taken place, to override drive-away locking for the current journey. See* ***24, DOOR LOCKS AND RELEASE LEVERS****.*

CONVERTIBLE – OPENING AND CLOSING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT

While the luggage compartment is open, the locking latch is exposed. Do not attempt to manually close the latch, as it may also automatically soft-close and trap items or body parts.

Make sure there is sufficient space above and at the rear of the vehicle, before opening the luggage compartment. Insufficient opening space may result in damage to the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

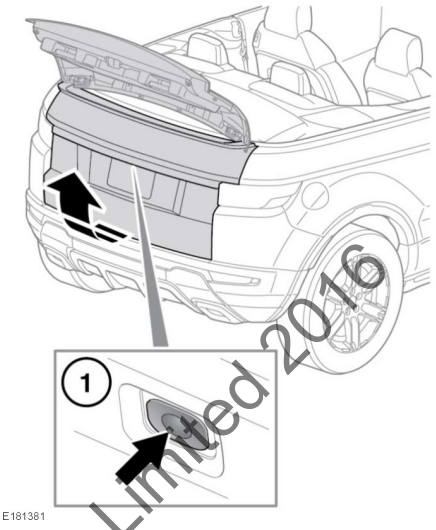
Entering the vehicle

Do not open the luggage compartment if a cycle rack is fitted. Remove any cycles and/or racks before opening the luggage compartment.

The vehicle must not be driven with the luggage compartment unlatched and not completely closed. Any items placed in the luggage compartment should be arranged to allow secure closure. An unlatched or open luggage compartment may allow exhaust fumes to enter the vehicle, causing drowsiness, which in turn may lead to an accident.

If the luggage compartment automatically re-opens after a closing attempt, do not repeatedly attempt to close it, as this may cause the latch mechanism to overheat. Unlock all of the doors and the luggage compartment with the smart key. Make sure that all of the doors, the bonnet, and the luggage compartment are completely closed and then lock the vehicle again with the smart key.

The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, e.g., a smartphone.



E181381

To open the luggage compartment:

1. Luggage compartment release button: Press to release the lock and then lift the boot to open.

The luggage compartment can also be released using the following methods:

- The interior luggage compartment release button.
- The luggage compartment release button on the smart key.

Closing the luggage compartment: As the boot reaches its lowest position, it automatically soft closes to the fully closed position. Do not slam the boot.

Note: *Make sure the luggage compartment is fully closed before leaving the vehicle unattended. Visible and audible warnings indicate if the vehicle is locked and the alarm armed. If there are no visible or audible warnings when closing the luggage compartment, the vehicle may be unprotected.*

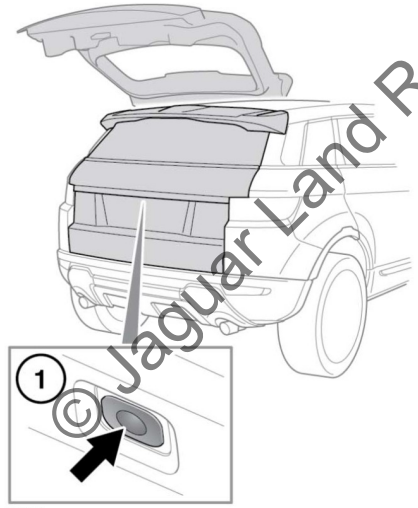
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

OPENING AND CLOSING THE TAILGATE

While the tailgate is open, the locking latch is exposed. Do not attempt to manually close the latch, as it may also automatically soft close and trap items or body parts.

Make sure there is sufficient space above and at the rear of the vehicle, before operating the tailgate. Insufficient opening space may result in damage to the vehicle.

Do not operate the tailgate if a cycle rack is fitted to the tailgate. Remove any cycles and/or racks before operating the tailgate.



E155824

To open and close the tailgate:

1. Release button: Press to release and then lift the tailgate to open.

The tailgate can also be released using the following methods:

- The interior luggage compartment release button.
- The luggage compartment release button on the smart key.

Note: *The external release button operates if all of the doors are unlocked and the gear selector is in the Park (**P**) position. The external release button operates differently when the gear selector is in the Neutral (**N**) position. It operates only if all of the doors are unlocked, and the ignition is in convenience mode or switched off. It does not operate if the gear selector is in any other position.*

Note: *The tailgate does not open if the vehicle is travelling at, or above, approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).*

Closing the tailgate: As the closing tailgate reaches its lowest position, it automatically soft closes to the fully closed position. Do not slam the tailgate.

Note: *If a valid smart key cannot be detected within 1 m of the rear of the vehicle, an audible warning sounds to indicate a mislock. The tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds.*

Note: *If a valid smart key remains inside the vehicle when it is locked and the alarm is armed, a warning is given. The audible warning sounds to indicate a mislock and the tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds. The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, e.g., a smartphone.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Entering the vehicle

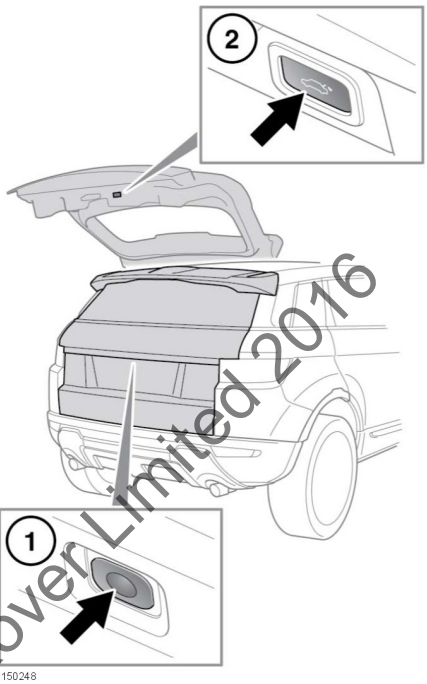
Note: *Make sure the tailgate is fully closed before leaving the vehicle unattended. Visible and audible warnings indicate if the vehicle is locked and the alarm armed. If there are no visible or audible warnings when closing the tailgate, the vehicle may be unprotected.*

OPENING AND CLOSING THE POWERED TAILGATE

Before operating the tailgate, make sure that anyone in the vicinity does not have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Note that the soft close action does not incorporate object detection. Death or serious injury could occur, even with an object detection system.
While the tailgate is open, the locking latch is exposed. Do not attempt to manually close the latch, as it may also automatically soft close and trap items or body parts.

Make sure there is sufficient space above and at the rear of the vehicle, before operating the tailgate. Insufficient opening space may result in damage to the vehicle.

Do not operate the tailgate if a cycle rack is fitted to the tailgate. Remove any cycles and/or racks before operating the tailgate.



To operate the powered tailgate:

1. External open and close button: Press to open, stop, reverse direction, or close the tailgate.

   Note: *The external release button operates if all of the doors are unlocked and the gear selector is in the Park (**P**) position. The external release button operates differently when the gear selector is in the Neutral (**N**) position. Operation begins only if all of the doors are unlocked, and the ignition is in convenience mode or switched off. It does not operate if the gear selector is in any other position.*

2. Internal close button: Press to close or stop the tailgate.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

The tailgate can also be opened using the following methods:

- The interior luggage compartment release button.
- The luggage compartment release button on the smart key.

Note: *The interior luggage compartment release button and the luggage compartment release button on the smart key cannot be used to close the tailgate.*

Note: *The tailgate does not open if the vehicle is travelling at, or above, approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).*

After the tailgate has opened to its set height, it can be manually raised or lowered. If the tailgate fails to open or close correctly, close it manually and then press the external open and close button again.

As the closing tailgate approaches the closed position, it soft closes to the fully closed position. If the vehicle was previously locked, the alarm re-arms. The hazard warning lights flash to confirm the alarm status. An audible confirmation may also be given.

Note: *If a tailgate open or close button is pressed while the tailgate is opening or closing, all movement stops. However, if a button is pressed during the soft close stage, it is ignored.*

Object detection while opening: If an object is detected that would interfere with the tailgate opening, tailgate movement stops. Remove any obstructions and press the release button again to open.

Object detection while closing: If an object is detected that would interfere with the tailgate closing, tailgate movement stops. The tailgate then reverses to the fully open position, if able to do so. An audible warning is given to indicate a mislock. If the tailgate is open, remove any obstructions then press the tailgate button again to close the tailgate. If the tailgate is not open, press a tailgate release button to open the tailgate and remove any obstructions. Once the obstructions have been removed, press the tailgate close button to close the tailgate.

Note: *If a valid smart key cannot be detected within 1 m of the rear of the vehicle, the tailgate does not power close. An audible warning sounds to indicate a mislock.*

Note: *If the tailgate is closed manually, the vehicle searches for a valid smart key. If no smart key is detected within 1 m of the rear of the vehicle, or a smart key remains inside the vehicle, an audible warning sounds. The warning indicates a mislock and the tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds.*

Note: *If the smart key remains inside the luggage compartment when the vehicle is locked and the alarm is set, a warning is given. The warning indicates a mislock and the tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds. The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, e.g., a smartphone.*

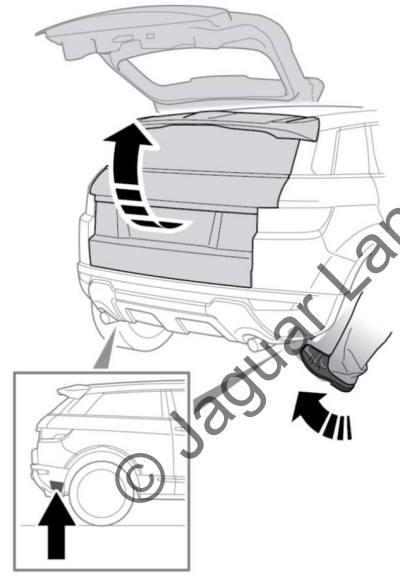
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

GESTURE TAILGATE

Make sure that there is sufficient space above and at the rear of the vehicle, before operating the tailgate. Insufficient opening space may result in damage to the vehicle.

Do not operate the tailgate if a cycle rack is fitted to the tailgate. Remove any cycles and/or racks before operating the tailgate.

Sensors are positioned within the outer parts of the rear bumper. They recognise movement of a foot below the bumper level and allow automatic opening or closing of a powered tailgate.



E174895

To operate the gesture tailgate, approach the vehicle, and perform a smooth kick and return motion. This should last between 1 and 2 seconds and should take place within one of the vehicle's two sensor areas, as illustrated. When a valid kick movement is recognised by the vehicle, the direction indicators flash and the tailgate operates.

Note: *If the ignition is on, the tailgate operates but the direction indicators do not flash.*

Make sure that the standing area is stable and not slippery, before performing the kick movement.

Do not make contact with the vehicle's exhaust. It may be hot and cause injury.

Note: *A valid smart key must be within 1.2 m of the tailgate. The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, e.g., a smartphone. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting hands-free operation of the powered tailgate.*

Note: *Certain conditions may affect the performance of the sensors, and movement beneath the bumper may not be detected. If this should happen, use the interior luggage compartment release button or the luggage compartment release button on the smart key. Check the operation of the gesture tailgate when the vehicle is in a new location.*

Unintentional opening: In exceptional circumstances, and if the smart key is within 1.2 m of the tailgate, the powered tailgate may open unintentionally due to the following:

- Car washing or high pressure cleaning.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

- Moving objects beneath the rear bumper sensors.
- While changing a rear road wheel.

TAILGATE OPENING HEIGHT

Set the maximum opening height as required:

1. Open the tailgate to the position required as the maximum height. Press any tailgate button to stop movement at the required position. The final position can be achieved manually, if required.
2. Make sure the tailgate is stationary for at least 3 seconds.
3. Press and hold the tailgate close button for 10 seconds to set the required opening height.
4. Close the tailgate, then open again to check that it opens to the set height.

Note: *If, after performing part* ***3*** *of the process, the tailgate closes automatically, the required height has not been set. Repeat the process, making sure that all steps are adhered to.*

To reset the maximum opening height, repeat the process, but when the tailgate reaches its current set height, manually move it to the fully open position, before pressing and holding the button.

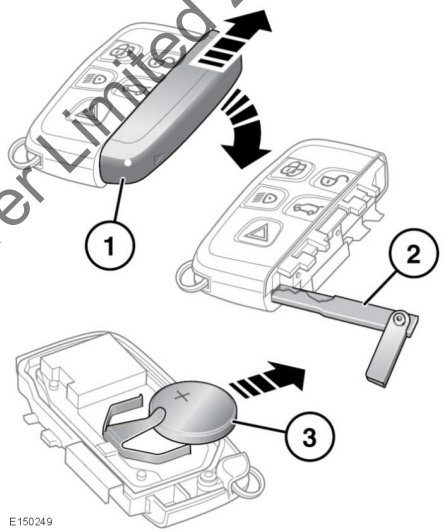
The powered tailgate may lose its position memory if there are multiple object detections or, if the battery voltage is low. Powered operation may be inhibited.

To reset the tailgate:

1. Manually close the tailgate.
2. Press a release button.
3. Allow the tailgate to power fully open, or to the previously set position.
4. Press and release the close button.
5. Allow the tailgate to power close fully. The tailgate's programmed memory is now restored.

SMART KEY BATTERY REPLACEMENT

When the battery needs replacing, there is a significant decrease in the effective range and **SMART KEY BATTERY LOW** is displayed in the message centre.



To replace the battery:

1. Remove the cover by sliding in the directions of the arrows.
2. Use the emergency key blade to separate the body of the smart key.
3. Fit a new and unused CR2032 type battery, available from a retailer/ authorised repairer, with the positive (+) side upward.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Note: *Avoid touching the new battery. Moisture or oil from fingers can reduce battery life and corrode the contacts.*

Note: *If the low battery warning does not extinguish, it indicates that the replacement battery is not in a new condition.*

Refit the parts in reverse order, making sure that they click securely into place.



Battery disposal: Batteries contain harmful substances and must be disposed of correctly. Seek advice on disposal from a retailer/authorised repairer and/or the local authority.

SMART KEY CARE

To prevent accidental or unauthorised operation, never leave the smart key unattended in the vehicle. Never leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle can be operated when the smart key remains inside the vehicle.

Do not expose to extremes of heat, dust or humidity, or allow contact with fluids. Do not leave the smart key exposed to direct sunlight.

The emergency key blade number is recorded on an attached label. Peel off the label and keep it safe, but not in the vehicle.

The operational range of the smart key varies considerably, depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.

Note: *The Radio Frequency (RF) used by the smart key may be used by other devices e.g., medical equipment. This may prevent the smart key from operating correctly.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

SINGLE LOCKING

When exiting the vehicle, always make sure of the following: Park (P) gear is selected. The engine is switched off. The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied. The smart key is removed from the vehicle. The smart key is to protect the safety of those inside and outside the vehicle.

No modifications or additions should be made to the security system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.

Press the lock button on the smart key, briefly, to lock the vehicle and arm the perimetric exterior alarm. The hazard warning lights flash to confirm.

Single locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors from being opened from the outside. The doors may still be unlocked and opened from inside the vehicle.

Note: *Single locking setting should be used in circumstances, such as a ferry crossing, when pets remain in the vehicle, or if a window must be left open, etc.*

Once armed, the alarm activates if:

- The bonnet, boot, or a door is opened.
- The engine **START/STOP** button is pressed without a valid smart key present.
- The vehicle's battery is disconnected.
- An attempt is made to disconnect the alarm's siren.
- An attempt is made to disconnect the battery back-up sounder.

Note: *Always secure the vehicle when left unattended. Where possible, always secure the vehicle to the maximum available level of security.*

DOUBLE LOCKING

Never double lock the vehicle with people, children, or pets inside. In the event of an emergency, they would be unable to escape and the emergency services would be unable to release them quickly.

Press the lock button on the smart key twice within 3 seconds to double lock the vehicle and arm the full alarm system. The hazard warning lights flash twice to confirm and a double lock tone sounds.

Double locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors from being opened from inside or outside of the vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from inside the vehicle when double locked.

Double locking provides extra security if the vehicle is left unattended. The vehicle cannot be opened by breaking a window and operating the door locks from inside. Additionally, double locking also arms the full alarm system.

Note: *In this state, an open glass area may cause the alarm to sound, due to the movement of air currents. Make sure that all glass areas are fully closed before double locking the vehicle.*

Once armed, the alarm system activates if:

- The bonnet, tailgate, or a door is opened.
- Movement is detected within the vehicle's interior, including air currents.
- The vehicle is raised or tilted.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2018

- Any glazed area is broken.

CONVERTIBLE – LOCKING THE GLOVEBOX

When the vehicle is locked from the outside, the glovebox locks automatically. The glovebox cannot be locked manually.

LOCK CONFIRMATION

If uncertain about the vehicle's locked and armed status, press the lock button on the smart key. With keyless entry, touch an exterior door handle lock sensor. The hazard warning lights flash once to indicate and confirm the current lock status.

Note: *If the vehicle is not already locked and armed, press the lock button once to single lock the vehicle.*

AUTOMATIC RE-LOCKING AND RE-ARMING OF THE ALARM

The security system disarms automatically when the vehicle is unlocked with a smart key. However, if the vehicle is not opened within 40 seconds, the security system re-engages the locks and the alarm re-arms. Automatic re-locking and re-arming is a precautionary action to protect the vehicle when it is unintentionally unlocked.

INTERIOR PROTECTION

The interior protection feature of the full alarm system can be temporarily disabled via **Alarm Sensors** in the instrument panel menu. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *If the Interior protection feature is temporarily disabled, it automatically enables the next time the vehicle is double locked with the smart key.*

KEYLESS LOCKING

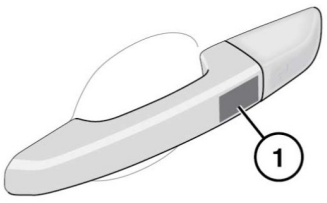
Never double lock the vehicle with people, children, or pets inside. In the event of an emergency, they would be unable to escape and the emergency services would be unable to release them quickly.

The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, e.g., a smartphone. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting keyless entry, keyless locking, or push button starting.

Note: *The vehicle does not lock automatically.*

Note: *Loose coins, in the same pocket as the smart key, may also affect its detection.*

Note: *Keyless locking activates only if the smart key is detected outside the vehicle. If no smart key is present, locking does not occur.*



E174603

To operate keyless locking:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

1. Lock sensor area: To single lock the vehicle, touch only the lock sensor once, without gripping the door handle. The hazard warning lights flash once to confirm locking.
   To double lock the vehicle, touch the lock sensor twice within 3 seconds, without grabbing the door handle. The hazard warning lights flash twice to confirm (with a long second flash). An audible confirmation (if enabled) may also be given.

Note: *Do not grip the door handle while touching the sensor. Doing so prevents the vehicle from locking.*

When using keyless locking, the vehicle does not lock when:

- any door(s) is open.
- the bonnet is open.
- the tailgate is not fully closed.
- the ignition is switched on.

No audible mislock error warning is given. The hazard warning lights do not flash and the power-fold mirrors (if enabled) do not fold in.

Make sure that the ignition is switched off, and that all of the doors, the bonnet, and the tailgate are closed properly. Lock the vehicle again. If the mislock persists, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

PASSIVE ARMING

When the passive arming feature is enabled, it automatically arms the perimetric (exterior) alarm system 60 seconds after the driver's door is closed. All of the other doors, the bonnet, and the boot must also be closed before passive arming enables. The ignition must also be switched off with no valid smart keys inside the vehicle.

Passive arming does not lock the vehicle, although access to the luggage compartment, via the interior or exterior release switches, is prevented. A locking fuel filler flap always locks.



Passive arming can be enabled or disabled by a retailer/ authorised repairer.

GLOBAL CLOSING

Make sure no children, pets, or obstructions are in any open aperture before operating the global closing feature.

To operate the global closing feature, all of the doors must be closed. Press and hold the lock button on the smart key for 3 seconds. The vehicle single locks and the perimetric alarm arms immediately. After 3 seconds, any open windows close.

Keyless global closing (if enabled) can be achieved if a valid smart key is on the driver's person or in a non-metallic bag or briefcase. To operate, touch the door lock sensor for 3 seconds. The vehicle single locks and the perimetric alarm arms immediately.

Note: *The windows close only while the door lock sensor is being touched. To fully secure the vehicle, continue to touch the door lock sensor until all of the windows are fully closed.*

Note: *Global closing can be enabled and disabled via the instrument panel menu. See* ***59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU****.*

BATTERY BACK-UP SOUNDER

When the security system is armed, the battery back-up sounder activates if:

- The vehicle's battery is disconnected.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

- An attempt is made to disconnect the alarm's siren.
- An attempt is made to disconnect the battery back-up sounder.

TILT SENSOR

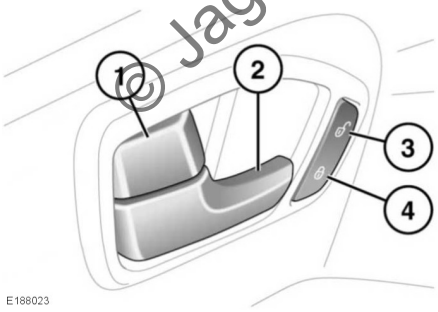
When the alarm is armed and the vehicle is double locked, the tilt sensor detects any change in the vehicle's angle to the ground. A significant change in the vehicle's angle activates the alarm.

Note: *The tilt sensor is an alarm sensor. The* ***Alarm Sensors*** *can be enabled or disabled for one ignition cycle only, via the instrument panel menu. See* ***59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU****.*

Note: *Not all vehicles are fitted with a tilt sensor.*

DOOR LOCKS AND RELEASE LEVERS

While a door is open, the locking latch is exposed. If the latch has the soft-close feature, do not attempt to manually close the latch. It may automatically soft-close and trap items or body parts.



E188023

To operate the door locks and release levers:

1. Locking and unlocking: Press in to lock and pull back to unlock. Operate either of the front door levers to lock or unlock all of the doors.
2. Opening: Pull the release lever to open a front door.
3. Master unlocking button: Press the button to unlock all of the doors and the luggage compartment.
4. Master locking button: With all of the doors closed, press the button to lock all of the doors and the luggage compartment.

Note: *To unlock and open a rear door, first operate its door unlocking lever, then pull the release lever.*

Note: *If the vehicle is locked with the smart key, operating an interior door release lever unlocks only that door. If the door is opened, the alarm sounds.*

Note: *The rear door child safety locks inhibit the rear door lock and unlock operation. See* ***42, CHILD SAFETY LOCKS****.*

MISLOCK

When locking the vehicle with the smart key, a mislock can occur if:

- One or more of the doors, the bonnet, or the tailgate is not fully closed.
- The ignition is switched on.
- A smart key is left inside the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

If any of the above are present, the vehicle does not lock and an audible mislock error warning sounds. The hazard warning lights do not flash and the power-fold mirrors, if enabled, do not fold in. Check that all of the doors, the bonnet, and the tailgate are closed properly. Make sure the ignition is switched off and lock the vehicle again. If the mislock persists, consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.

Note: *Operating the interior or exterior door handles, while attempting to unlock, lock, or change the child lock status of the vehicle including drive-away locking, may cause the security system to ignore any unlock, lock, or child lock requests.*

DEACTIVATING THE ALARM WHEN TRIGGERED

If the alarm activates, it can be deactivated by any one of the following methods:

1. Press the unlock button on the smart key.
2. Open a door using keyless entry.
3. Press the **START/STOP** button with a valid smart key positioned correctly. See **120, ENGINE START BACKUP**.

The cause of the last alarm activation can be displayed in the message centre. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

SENSOR FAULTS

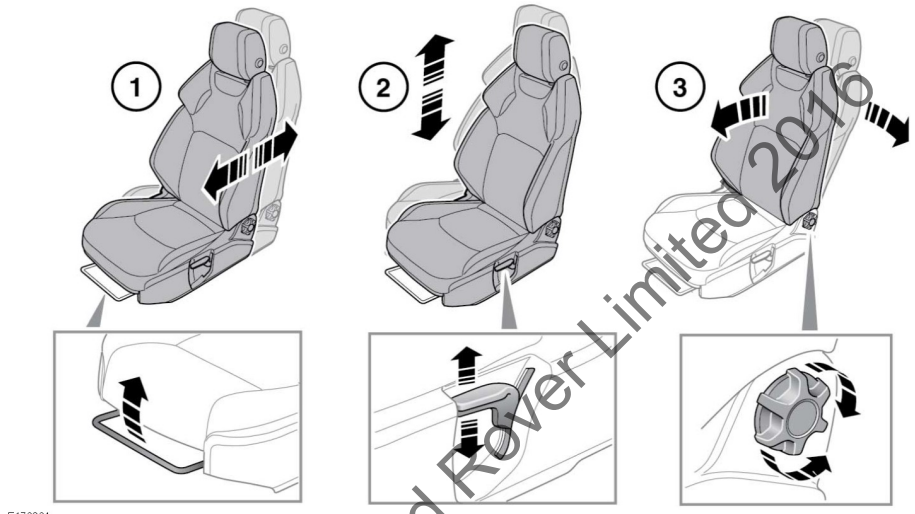
If a fault is detected with a security sensor, an error tone sounds from the alarm when the vehicle is unlocked. If this condition occurs, please visit a retailer/authorised repairer for rectification.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Front seats

MANUAL SEATS

Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. Doing so could cause a loss of vehicle control and personal injury.



Manual seat adjustment:

1. Forward and rearward adjustment.
2. Height adjustment.
3. Seatback angle adjustment.

The front head restraints can also be adjusted. See **34, FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS**.

Note: *The following diagrams cover all the electric seat controls. Not all of these controls apply to all seats.*

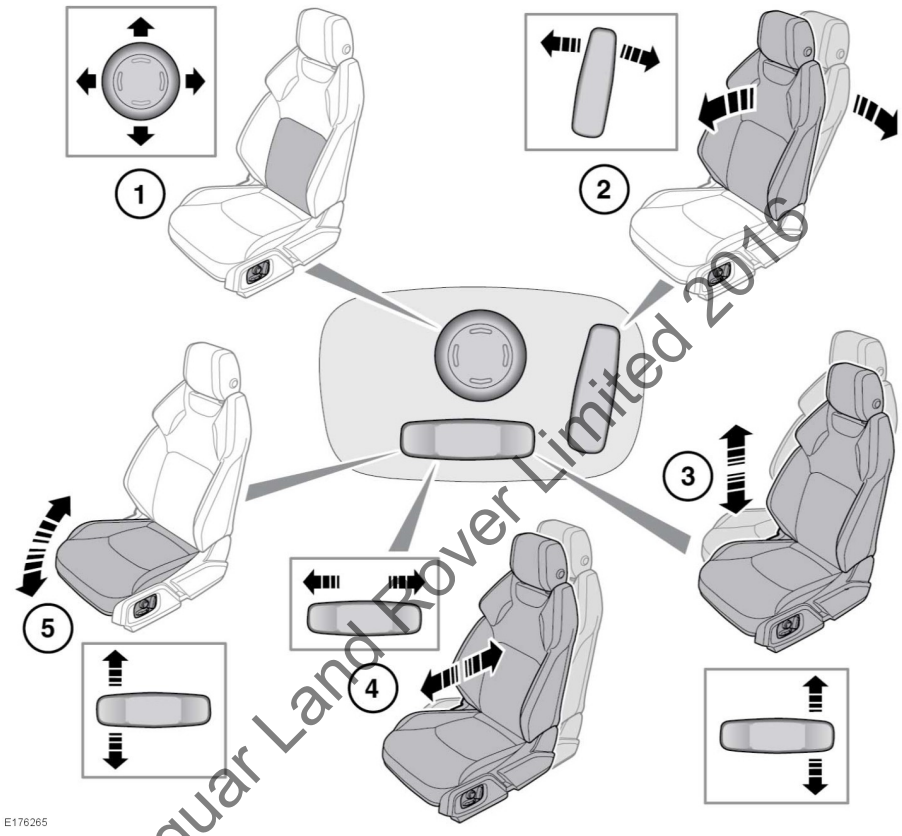
ELECTRIC SEATS

Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. Doing so could cause a loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

To adjust the seats, the smart key must be inside the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

5 Door and Coupe



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

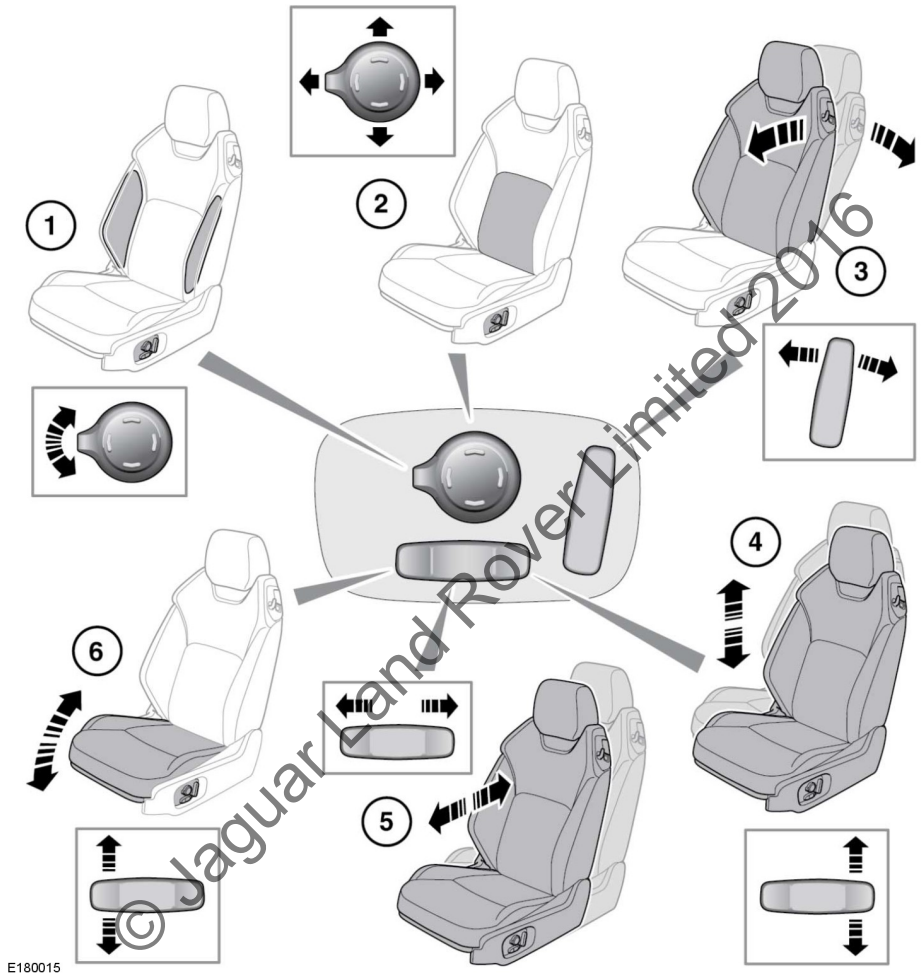
Electric front seat adjustment:

1. Lumbar support adjustment.
2. Seatback angle adjustment.
3. Height adjustment.
4. Forward and rearward adjustment.
5. Cushion angle adjustment.

The front head restraints can also be adjusted. See **34, FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS**.

Front seats

Convertible



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Electric front seat adjustment:

1. Bolster inflate or deflate.
2. Lumbar support adjustment.
3. Seatback angle adjustment.
4. Height adjustment.
5. Forward and rearward adjustment.
6. Cushion angle adjustment.

RESTRICTED FRONT SEAT TRAVEL

If seat movement stops unexpectedly during adjustment, check for and remove any obstructions.

If the front seat travel is restricted or obstructed, remove the obstruction and reset the seat adjustment mechanism as follows:

Operate the seat control again to continue the stalled adjustment. When seat movement resumes, hold the seat control until the end of travel in that direction has been reached. Seat adjustment can now be carried out as normal.

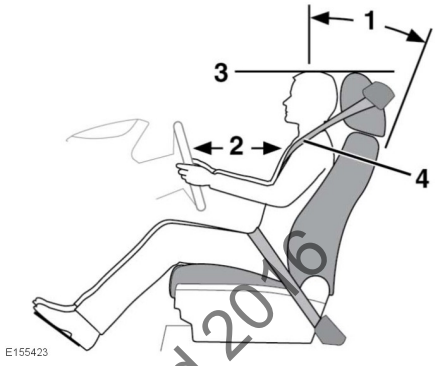
Note: *If no obstruction can be seen but normal adjustment cannot be carried out without stalling, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer.*

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

The driver and front seat passenger must not ride with the seat fully reclined.

Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving.

The seat, head restraint, seat belt and airbags, all contribute to the protection of the user. Correct use of these components gives greater protection to the user. Therefore, always observe the following points:



1. Sit in an upright position, with the base of the spine as far back as possible. To achieve optimum benefit of the seat belt in the event of an accident, do not recline the seat excessively.
2. Do not move the driver's seat too close to the steering wheel. Ideally, a minimum distance of 254 mm is recommended between the breastbone and the steering wheel airbag cover. Hold the steering wheel in the correct position, with arms slightly bent.
3. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centre line of the head.
4. Position the seat belt so that it is midway between the neck and shoulder. Fit the strap tightly across the hips, not across the stomach.

Make sure that the driving position is comfortable, enabling full control of the vehicle.

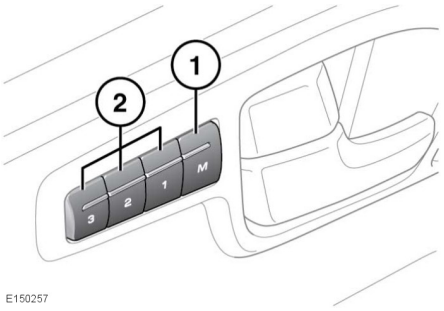
DRIVING POSITION MEMORY

The front seat positions can be saved to the vehicle's memory.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Front seats

Once the power operated driver's seat and the door mirrors have been adjusted, the vehicle can memorise the settings for future use. See **83, DOOR MIRRORS**.



E150257

1. On the driver's door, press the memory store button to activate the memory function. The indicator on the button illuminates.
2. Press one of the preset buttons within 5 seconds to memorise the current settings. **Memory (1, 2,** or **3) Settings Saved** is displayed in the message centre, accompanied by an audible chime to confirm the settings have been saved to the memory.

   Note: *A seat position is saved to the memory only during the 5 second active period.*

   Note: *Any existing settings are over-written when a new position is saved to the memory.*

   To recall a saved position, press the relevant preset button (**2**). **Memory (1, 2,** or **3) Recalled** is displayed in the message centre. Press the memory button to store the current seat settings.

Note: *For vehicles with passenger seat memory, saving a passenger seat position to the memory follows the same procedure as for the driver's seat.*

EASY ENTRY OR EXIT

When easy entry or exit is enabled, the driver's seat automatically lowers when the ignition is switched off and the door is opened. Upon returning to the vehicle, when the driver's door is closed and the ignition is switched on, the seat returns to its previously set position.

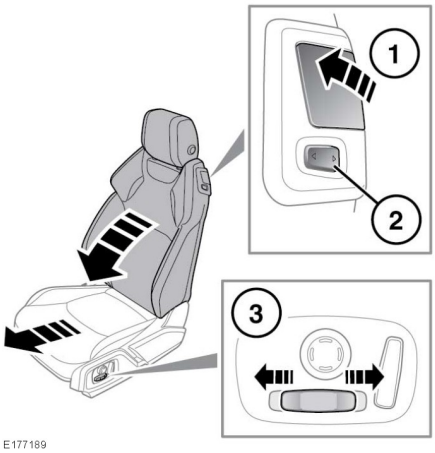
This feature can be enabled or disabled via the instrument panel menu. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

REAR SEAT ACCESS

On coupe and convertible vehicles, the front seats tilt and power-slide forwards to enable entry and exit of the rear seats.

Take care not to damage the seatbacks while gaining access to the rear seats.

Coupe



E177189

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

To pivot the seatback forward, lift the locking lever (**1**).

To move the seat forward or rearward, use either switch (**2**) or (**3**).

To return the seatback, manually pivot the seatback until it locks into its previous position.

Note: *The previous position can be a memory position or an adjusted position. If the seat is required to move further back and there is still adjustment available, push and hold the switch (**2** or **3**) again.*

Convertible



Before moving the seat, release the seat belt from the seat belt guide clip (**1**).

To pivot the seatback forward, lift the locking lever (**2**).

To move the seat forward or rearward, use either switch (**3**) or (**4**).

To return the seatback, manually pivot the seatback until it locks into its previous position.

Note: *If required, make sure the seat belt is refitted into the seat belt guide clip.*

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO

http://goo.gl/jNU7mL

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

FOLDING AND RAISING THE REAR SEATS

Always make sure that objects carried in the vehicle are secured properly.

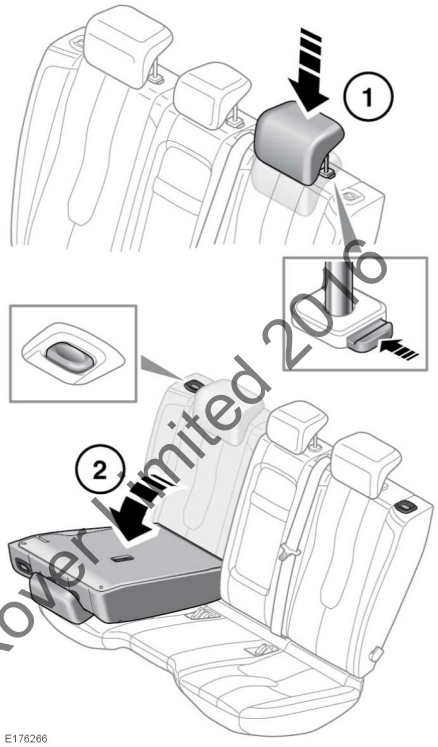
Never allow passengers to travel in the loadspace, under any circumstances.

Make sure that when the seatback is raised, the locking mechanism is fully engaged. If the seatbacks are not fully locked in place, red markers are visible around the seatback release buttons.

When raising the rear seats, make sure that the seat belts are correctly routed and not trapped behind the seats.

Make sure that the head restraints are raised to the correct position before the seats are used by a passenger.

To accommodate loads and still retain seating for passengers, the rear seats on the 5 door vehicles can be folded completely, or partially at a 60/40 split.



To fold part or all of the seat:

1. First press in the button on the adjusting collar, then fully lower the head restraints.
2. Press a seatback release button, then fold the appropriate seatback fully forward.

Raising a folded seat is the reversal of the folding process.

When the seatback is fully raised and locked into position, the release/locking button raises up.

Coupe rear seat folding

If a seat fold is required, the narrower seatback must be folded first.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Rear seats

Raising the coupe folded seats is the reversal of the folding process. Make sure the release/locking button relocates into the correct position.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Head restraints

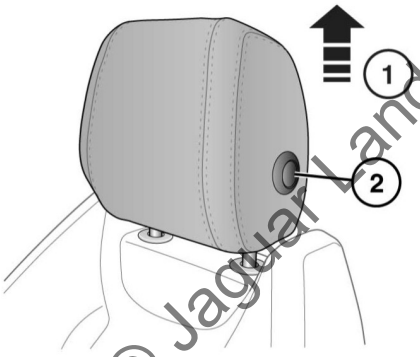
FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centreline of the head. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

Do not drive, or carry passengers with the head restraints removed from occupied seats. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.

Never adjust the head restraints while the vehicle is in motion.

Always store a removed head restraint securely.



1. To raise, move the head restraint up to the required position.
2. To lower, press the button on the side of the head restraint and move the restraint to the required position.

Two people are required when removing a front head restraint.

To remove the head restraint:

1. Raise the head restraint to the upper most position.
2. Using two hands, press down on each of the collars on the top of the seat to engage hidden buttons inside the seat.
3. While the collars are being pressed down, the second person should lift out the head restraint.

Make sure the head restraint is refitted before the seat is used by a passenger.

To refit the head restraint:

1. Press the button on the side of the head restraint and push the stems into the restraint as far as they will go.
2. Line the stems up with the hole in the collars and push down until both stems engage into the locked position.

REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centreline of the head. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

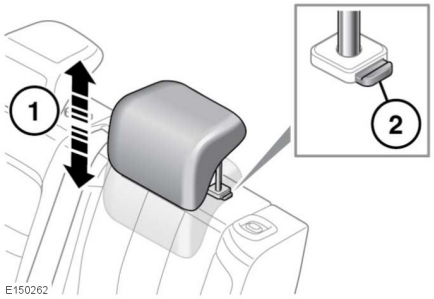
Do not drive or carry passengers with the head restraint removed from an occupied seat. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.

Always store a removed head restraint securely.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Head restraints

5 door and coupe



To raise or lower the rear head restraint:

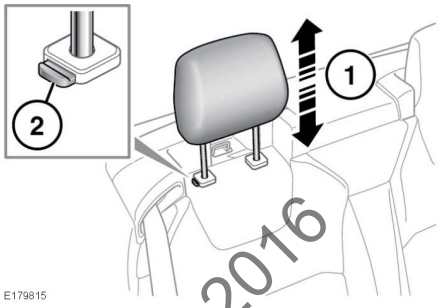
1. To raise, pull the head restraint upward.
2. To lower, press in the adjusting collar and push down on the head restraint.

Note: *The head restraint has to be raised to gain access to the child restraint tether anchorage point. See* ***48, FITTING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS****.*

The head restraints can be removed if required, e.g., to fit larger child seats. To remove a head restraint, first raise the head restraint to its uppermost position. With the adjusting collar pressed in, lift the restraint out of the seatback.

To refit a head restraint, make sure it is facing in the correct direction. Insert the stems of the head restraint into the sockets and push downward until at least the first click.

Convertible



To raise or lower the rear head restraint:

1. To raise, pull the head restraint upward.
2. To lower, press in the adjusting collar and push down on the head restraint.

Note: *The head restraint has to be removed before using a child restraint tether anchorage point. See* ***48, FITTING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS****.*

Note: *A rear head restraint can only be removed when the convertible roof is open.*

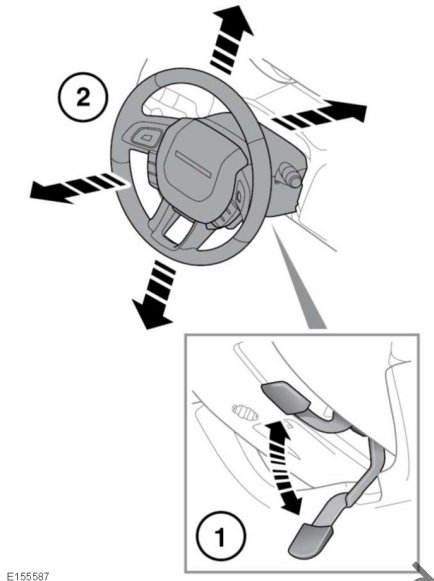
To remove a head restraint, first raise the head restraint to its uppermost position. With the adjusting collar pressed in, lift out the head restraint.

To refit a head restraint, make sure it is facing in the correct direction. Insert the stems of the head restraint into the sockets and push downward until at least the first click.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Steering wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



E155587

Never adjust the steering column while the vehicle is in motion.

1. Move the lever fully down to unlock the column. Move the lever fully up to re-lock the column.
2. Move the steering column up, down, in or out, to the desired position.

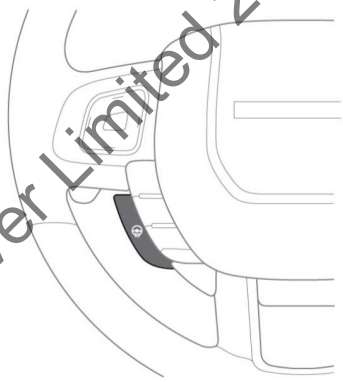
POWER STEERING

A fault with the power steering system is indicated by a message in the message centre, accompanied by an amber warning lamp. See **68, GENERAL WARNING/ INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)**.

Power assistance may be reduced to protect the system. The requirement for this may be due to overheating, caused by extensive steering inputs or high ambient temperature, or both.

Full steering assistance should return when the system has been allowed to cool. If full steering assistance does not return, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

HEATED STEERING WHEEL


E155588

Press the heated steering wheel button to switch on the steering wheel heating. Press again to switch off.

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO

http://goo.gl/eQffm8

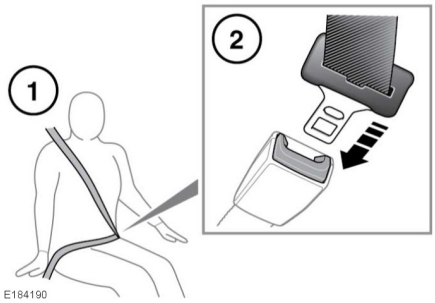
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

USING THE SEAT BELTS

- Do not use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the seat belt system.
- No modifications or additions should be made by the user, which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack. A slack seat belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.
- Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.
- Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.
  Make sure that any seat belt positioning sliders are adjusted so as not to introduce slack.
- Belts should not be worn with the straps twisted.
- Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.
- Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. The protection of your restraint system (seat belts and airbags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seat. Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance that an occupant's hips will slide under the lap belt or the occupant's neck will strike the shoulder belt. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted and with the seatbacks upright.
- The airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) is designed to add to the overall effectiveness of the seat belts. It does not replace them. Seat belts must always be worn.
- Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every trip, no matter how short. Failure to do so will greatly increase the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
- Never wear just the lap belt or just the shoulder belt of a lap/shoulder diagonal seat belt. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous and may increase your risk of injury.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

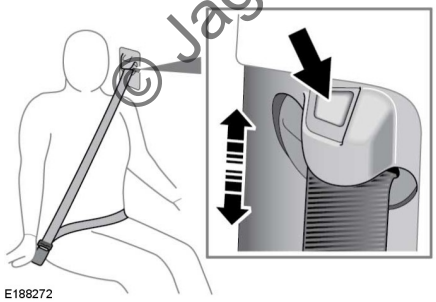
Seat belts



E184190

1. Putting on a seat belt: Draw the belt out smoothly, making sure the *belt height, the seat and the occupant's position on the seat, is correct.
*5 door vehicles only.
2. Fastening a seat belt: With the seat belt correctly positioned, place the metal tongue into the nearest buckle. Press it in until a click is heard.
Pull up on the belt, to confirm the buckle is latched correctly.
To release the seat belt, press the red button.

   Note: *When releasing the seat belt, it is advisable to hold the belt before pressing the release button. This prevents the belt from retracting too quickly.*


E188272

Seat belt height adjustment: Press to release the catch. With the catch pressed, move the mechanism slide up or down to the required height. Make sure the locking mechanism has engaged.

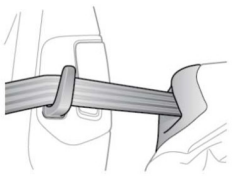
When correctly positioned, the seat belt should cross the collar bone at the mid-point between the neck and end of the shoulder.

Note: *Seat belt height adjustment is only fitted to 5 door vehicles.*

Make sure the height is correctly adjusted and the mechanism is locked in place before driving. Maladjustment of the seat belt could reduce its effectiveness in a crash.
Do not attempt to adjust the seat belt height once the vehicle is in motion. Doing so may cause you to lose control of the vehicle, or incorrectly adjust the seat belt.

For those vehicles without seat belt height adjustment, the front seat occupants should adjust their seating position to achieve the same seat belt position.

Where possible, rear seat passengers should adjust their seating position to achieve the same seat belt position.


E188271

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Seat belt guide - convertible vehicles only: The seat mounted belt guide provides a correct and comfortable seatbelt fit particularly for smaller occupants. Taller occupants may find it is not required due to their shoulder being higher than the guide. Additionally, the guide hook provides a convenient storage position for the seatbelt when stored.

When correctly positioned, the seat belt should cross the collar bone at the mid-point between the neck and the end of the shoulder.

Before gaining access to the rear seats, release the seat belt from the seat belt guide.

SEAT BELT USE DURING PREGNANCY

Position the seat belt correctly for the safety of the mother and unborn child. Never wear just the lap strap, and never sit on the lap strap while using just the shoulder strap. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous, and may increase the risk of serious injury in the event of an accident or during emergency braking.

Never place anything between an occupant and the seat belt, in an attempt to cushion the impact in the event of an accident. It can be dangerous, and will reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in preventing injury.



E184191

Seat belt adjustment during pregnancy: Position the lap strap comfortably across the hips, beneath the abdomen. Place the diagonal part of the seat belt between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen.

SEAT BELT PRE-TENSIONERS

The seat belt pre-tensioners will activate only once and then must be replaced. Failure to replace them will reduce the effectiveness of the SRS in reducing the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

After any impact, have the seat belts and pre-tensioners checked and, if necessary, renewed by a retailer/authorised repairer.

The seat belt pre-tensioners activate in conjunction with the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) to provide additional protection in the event of a severe frontal impact. They automatically reduce any slack in a seat belt to reduce forward movement of a front seat occupant.

SEAT BELT SAFETY

The seat belt should be replaced if the webbing becomes frayed, contaminated, or damaged.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Seat belts

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact, even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

If any damage, wear, cuts, defects, or impaired operation are noted with the seat belts, the vehicle should be taken to a retailer/authorised repairer for immediate attention. Do not use the vehicle if the seat belts cannot be operated correctly.

Seat belts should be inspected or replaced by qualified personnel only. All replacement parts should be, at least, the same specification as the vehicle's original equipment. If in doubt, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

Do not attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with any part of the vehicle's seat belts. Doing so may render the seat belts as ineffective.

Care must be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. Contaminated seat belts may not operate correctly in an impact and cannot be relied upon.

When using seat belts to restrain items other than occupants, make sure the belts are not damaged, or exposed to sharp edges.

Do not carry hard, fragile, or sharp items between an occupant and the seat belt. In an impact, the pressure on such items can cause them to break, which in turn may cause death or serious injury.

Each seat in the vehicle has a dedicated seat belt. Each seat belt is designed for an individual seat occupant, aged older than 12 years, or with a body mass greater than 36 kg. Occupants with a lower age, or a lower body mass, should use an appropriate child restraint. See **44, CHILD SEAT POSITIONING**.

The front row seat belts are equipped with a load limiter. This helps to regulate the over-tension of a seat belt in a severe impact, to help reduce the possibility of injury to the occupant.

SEAT BELT CHECKS

If any of the seat belts fail to meet those criteria, immediately contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

Note: *If the vehicle is parked on an incline, the seat belt mechanism may lock. This is a safety feature and the belt should be gently eased out from the upper anchorage.*

The seat belts should be inspected regularly to check for fraying, cuts or wear to the webbing. Also the condition and security of the mechanism, buckles, adjusters and mounting points should be checked.

- With the seat belt fastened, give the webbing near the buckle a quick upward pull. The buckle must remain securely locked.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

- With the seat belt unfastened, unreel the seat belt to the limit of its travel. Check that it unreels smoothly with no snatches or snags. Allow the belt to fully retract, again checking for smooth operation.
- Partially unreel the seat belt, then hold the tongue plate and give a quick forward pull. The mechanism must lock and prevent any further unreeling.

SEAT BELT REMINDER

Seat belt reminder commences when the vehicle is in motion and the driver's seat belt is unbuckled. Dependent on the market, an audible chime sounds and the warning indicator in the instrument panel illuminates. See **66, SEAT BELT (RED)**.

The visual and audible warnings applicable to the seat belt reminder feature are market dependent, to meet individual market requirements. The warning signals given may also change, depending on whether the vehicle is stationary, or when the vehicle's speed exceeds a predetermined threshold. In certain markets, the seat belt reminder feature also applies to the front passenger seat.

A graphic displayed in the message centre indicates which seat belts are fastened at the start of a journey. It also indicates when a seat belt is fastened or unfastened during a journey.



E175060

Each seating position is represented by a **passenger** icon, the colour and symbol of which indicates the seat belt status:

- Green: The seat belt, in the indicated position, is fastened.
- Red: The seat belt, in the indicated position, has been unfastened while the vehicle's ignition is switched on. The indicator turns grey after 30 seconds.
- Grey: Indicates that the seat belt is not fastened.

Note: *The indicators are displayed for 30 seconds each time there is a status change, for example, a seat belt is unfastened or fastened, or a door is opened and then closed.*

In addition, an audible warning sounds under the following conditions:

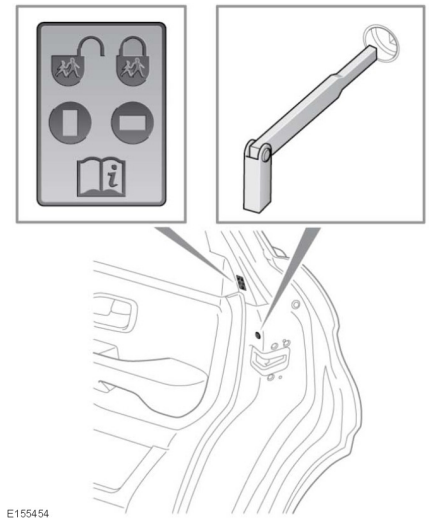
- The seat belt of an occupied front seat is not fastened, or is unfastened during a journey.
- A rear seat belt is unfastened.

Note: *If a heavy object is placed on the front passenger seat, it may activate the seat belt reminder feature. It is recommended that any objects placed on the front passenger seat are secured using the seat belt.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Child safety

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



If children are to be carried in the rear seat positions, it is recommended that the rear door interior handles are disabled.

To change the child lock settings:

1. Open the door to access the child safety lock.
2. Insert the key blade from the smart key into the slot and rotate a quarter of a turn to enable or disable the interior door handle as required. The enable and disable positions are shown in the illustration.

CHILD SEATS

For optimum safety, children should travel in the rear of the vehicle at all times; front passenger seat travel is not recommended. However, if it is essential that a child travels in the front (not permitted in Australia), set the vehicle's seat fully rearward and seat the child in an approved forward-facing child seat. Do not use a rearward-facing child seat - an inflating airbag could impact with the seat and cause serious injury.

Do not use a forward-facing child seat until the child using it is above the minimum weight of 9 kg and able to sit up unaided. Up to the age of two, a child's spine and neck are not sufficiently developed to avoid injury in a frontal impact.

Do not allow a baby or infant to be held or carried on the lap. The force of a crash can increase effective body weight by as much as thirty times, making it impossible to hold onto the child. At all times, children should be restrained in age and size appropriate child seats to reduce the risk of death or serious injury in a crash.

Children could be endangered in a crash if their child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle. Always follow the instructions that accompany the child seat carefully.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2015

Children typically require the use of a booster seat appropriate to their age and size, thereby enabling the seat belts to be properly fitted, reducing the risk of injury in a crash. Children could be endangered in a crash if their child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle.

Do not use a child seat that hooks over the seatback. This type of seat cannot be satisfactorily secured and is unlikely to be safe for your child.

The seat belts fitted to the vehicle are designed for adults and larger children. For their safety, it is very important for all infants and children under 12 years of age to be restrained in a suitable child safety seat, appropriate to their age and size.

If it is essential that a child travels in the front passenger seat (and national or state legislation permits this), Jaguar Land Rover Limited recommends that the following preparations are made before fitting the child restraint:

- Disable the front passenger airbag. See **56, DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG**.
- Adjust the front passenger seat fully rearwards.
- Adjust the lumbar support to its minimum support position.
- Adjust the seat cushion to its highest position. If cushion front tilt adjustment is possible, adjust it to its lowest position.
- Adjust the seatback to an upright position to support the child restraint.
- Adjust the seat belt upper anchorage to its lowest position (5 door vehicles only).



E132397

The above label, affixed to the front door B pillar on the passenger side, warns against the use of a rearward-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, when a front passenger airbag is fitted and operational.

Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.



E145193

The above label, affixed to the passenger side sun visor, warns against the use of a rearward-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, when a front passenger airbag is fitted and operational.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016



E187567

The above label is affixed to the front door B pillar on the passenger side. It warns against a child sitting too close to the front seat side airbag.

Never let a child's head rest near to a front seat side airbag. An inflating airbag can cause serious or fatal injury.

Taiwan only

DO NOT carry babies, infants or children in the front passenger seat.
NEVER use rearward facing child restraint systems on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS injury to the child may occur.



E181770

The above label is fixed to the passenger side sun visor, it warns against the use of a rearward-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, when a front passenger airbag is fitted and operational.

CHILD SEAT POSITIONING

Crash statistics show that children are safest when properly restrained in a child or infant restraint system that is secured in a rear seating position.

Seat belts (or suitable child restraints) should be used by all vehicle occupants, for every journey, no matter how short. Failure to do so will greatly increase the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

Information given within the table is correct at the time of going to press. However, availability of child restraints may change. Please consult your retailer/ authorised repairer for the latest recommendation.

Note: *The information contained in the following tables may not be applicable to all countries. If in any doubt regarding the type and fitment of child seats, seek advice from a retailer/authorised repairer.*

Note: *Ages given are approximate. In case of doubt, the child's weight, not age, should be used when considering an appropriate child seat.*

Note: *The legislation which governs how and where children should be carried when travelling in a vehicle, is subject to change. It is the responsibility of the driver to comply with all regulations in force.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Seating positions	Mass group				
	0 = Up to 10 kg 0-9 months	0+ = Up to 13 kg 0-18 months	I = 9-18 kg 9 months to 4 years	II = 15-25 kg 4-9 years	III = 22-36 kg 8-12 years
Front passenger with Airbag ON	X	X	UF	UF	UF
Front passenger with Airbag OFF*	U	U	U	U	U
Rear outboard**	U	U	U	U	U
Rear centre***	U	U	U	U	U

U = Suitable for universal category restraints, approved for this mass group.

X = Not suitable for the use of child restraints of this mass group.

UF = Suitable for universal forward-facing child restraints of this mass group, however we recommend that you secure children in an approved child seat secured in the rear seating position.

* Always make sure the passenger airbag has been disabled before using a child restraint in this seating position. See **56, DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG**. The front passenger seat should be positioned fully rearward, the seat cushion to its highest position and the seatback adjusted to an upright position to support the child restraint.

** Convertible: When fitting a rearward-facing child restraint in the rear, the front seat, directly in front of the rear seat being used, must be set in the most forward position and with the seatback in its most upright position. Therefore, it is not recommended that the front seat is occupied while using a rearward-facing child restraint in the seat behind.

*** There is no rear centre seating position on convertible vehicles.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

ISOFIX Child Seat Positioning

Mass group as shown on child restraint	Size class	Fixtures	Second row outboard	Recommended child restraint system
Carry-cot	F	ISO/L1	**X**	-
	G	ISO/L2	**X**	-
0 Up to 10 kg (0 - 9 months)	E	ISO/R1	**IL**	Britax/Römer Baby-Safe Plus with Baby-Safe ISOFIX Base.
0+ Up to 13 kg (0 - 18 months)	E	ISO/R1	**IL**	
	D	ISO/R2	**IL**	-
	C	ISO/R3	**IL**	-
I 9 to 18 kg (9 months - 4 years)	D	ISO/R2	**IL**	-
	C	ISO/R3	**IL**	-
	B	ISO/F2	**IUF**	Britax/Römer Duo Plus.
	B1	ISO/F2X	**IUF**	
	A	ISO/F3	**IUF**	
II/III 15 to 36 kg (4 - 12 years)	-	-	-	-

IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint systems of universal category, approved for use in the mass group.

IL = These ISOFIX child restraint systems are of the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories.

X = Not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint fitment in this mass group.

Note: *ISOFIX anchorages are provided for second row outer seating positions. ISOFIX child restraints should be securely attached, following the manufacturer's instructions at these locations only.*

5 door and coupe: When fitting any rearward-facing child seat in the rear, the front seat must be moved forward and upwards.

Convertible: When installing a rearward-facing ISOFIX child seat in the rear, the front seat, directly in front of the rear seat being used, must be set in the most forward position and with the seatback in its most upright position. Therefore, it is not recommended that the front seat is occupied while using a rearward-facing ISOFIX child seat in the seat behind.

Care must be taken not to load any part of the child seat when repositioning the front seat.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

RECOMMENDED CHILD SEATS

Child size/age	Recommended seat
Groups 0 and 0+	Britax/Römer Baby Safe Plus
Group I	Britax/Römer Duo Plus
Group II and III	Britax/Römer Kid Plus or Britax/Römer KIDFIX XP

CHILD RESTRAINT CHECK LIST

Every time a child travels in the vehicle, observe the following:

- Use appropriate child restraints.
- Carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the restraint system.
- Adjust the harnesses for every child on every journey.
- Make sure that all slack is removed from the adult seat belt.
- Always attach the top tether when fitting an ISOFIX seat.
- Always check the security of the child restraint.
- Do not dress a child in bulky clothing, or place any objects or padding between the child and the restraint.
- Regularly check the fit and condition of child restraints. If the fit is poor, or wear or damage is visible, replace the restraint immediately.
- Set a good example - always wear a seat belt.
- For child seats fitted with a support leg, adjust the leg so that it rests firmly on the floor.
- For some child seats, it may be necessary to remove the head restraint to make sure of a stable fit. Always refit a removed head restraint after the child seat is removed.

BOOSTER SEATS

In a situation where a child is too large to fit into a child safety seat, but is still too small to safely fit the 3-point belt, a booster seat is recommended for maximum safety. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for fitting and use. Adjust the seat belt to suit.

Booster seats with ISOFIX connectors should be used in conjunction with the adult seat belt to secure the booster seat where appropriate.

FITTING ISOFIX CHILD RESTRAINTS

Do not attempt to fit ISOFIX restraints to the centre rear seating position. The anchor bars are not designed to hold an ISOFIX restraint in this position.

If the restraint is not correctly anchored, there is a significant risk of injury to the child in the event of a collision or emergency braking.

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

ISOFIX anchorages are provided at the outer seat positions on the second row seats.



To fit an ISOFIX child seat:

1. Locate the ISOFIX anchor bars and remove any covers.
2. Slide the child seat into position. Attach the locking mechanism to the ISOFIX anchor bars.
3. If an upper tether is fitted to the child seat, make sure it is properly secured to the upper tether anchorages on the rear of the seats or behind the rear head restraints. See **48, FITTING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS**

Test the security of the child restraint. To do this, attempt to pull the restraint away from the vehicle seat and twist the restraint from side to side. Even if the restraint appears secure, check the anchor points visually, to make sure they are correctly attached.

Note: *Always make sure that if an upper tether is provided, it is fitted and tightened correctly.*

FITTING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS

Always follow the child seat or restraint system manufacturer's instructions when fitting tether straps.

If removing a head restraint in order to fit a child restraint, always secure the head restraint when storing it.

If a child seat or restraint system is to be fitted to the centre seating position, the centre armrest must be in the stored position (folded into the seat).

The vehicle is equipped with tether anchorage points, these should be used to attach straps from child seats or restraint systems.

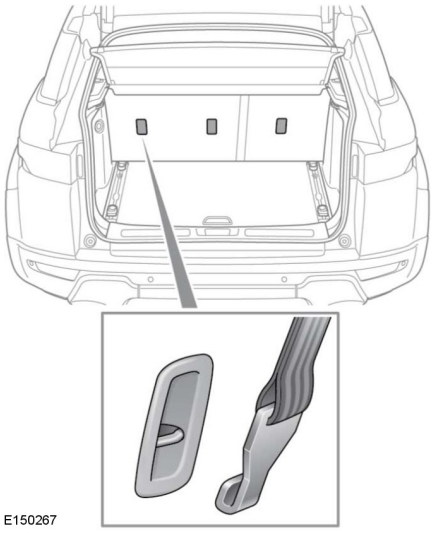
5 Door and Coupe

When fitting a child seat or restraint system, always pass the tether strap over the top of the seatback and beneath the head restraint.

Note: *A tether anchorage is provided for the centre seat position. Do not use this anchor position with an ISOFIX child seat.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Always fit the upper tether anchorage and tighten correctly.



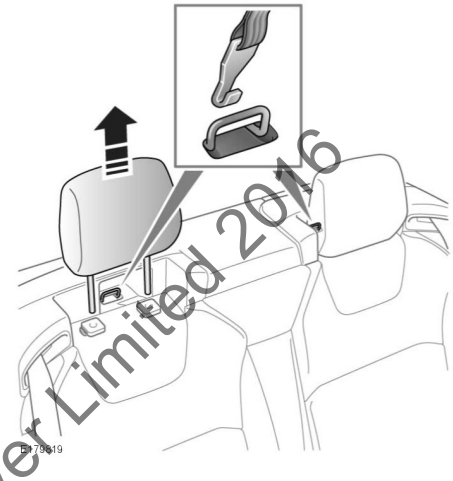
E150267

Fit the tether straps as follows:

1. Fit the child seat or restraint system securely in one of the rear seating positions.
2. Pass the tether strap over the seatback and beneath the head restraint.
3. Attach the tether strap hook to the tether anchor point on the back of the seat. Make sure the tether strap hook is facing the correct way, as illustrated.
4. Tighten the tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Convertible

Always fit the upper tether anchorage and tighten correctly.



The tether anchor points are located behind the rear head restraints.

Fit the tether straps as follows:

1. Remove the rear head restraint and store it in the luggage compartment. See **34, REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS**.
2. Fit the child seat or restraint system securely in one of the rear seating positions.
3. Attach the tether strap hook to the tether anchor point, making sure the tether strap hook is facing the correct way, as illustrated.
4. Tighten the tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Note: *Always refit the rear head restraint after the child seat or restraint system has been removed.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

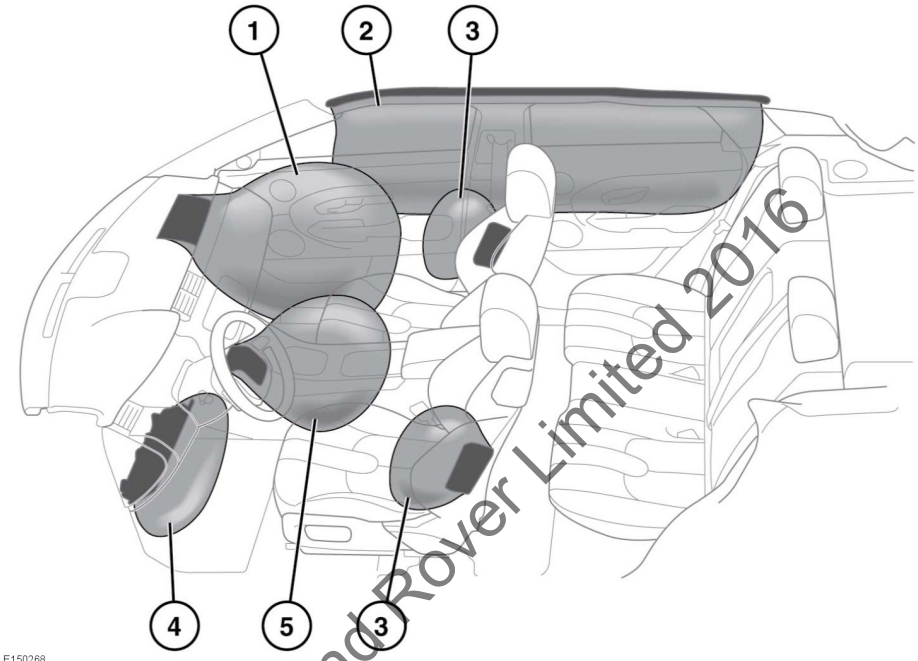
AIRBAGS AND ROLLOVER PROTECTION

⚠ **High speed impacts may cause serious injury or death, irrespective of safety features fitted to the vehicle. Always drive with caution and consideration for the vehicle's characteristics, road and weather conditions, and do not exceed any speed limits in force.**

⚠ **Seat belts should be worn at all times, by the driver and passengers in all seating positions. The airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) cannot provide protection in some types of impact. Under these circumstances, the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.**

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

5 Door and Coupe



E150268

Airbag locations:

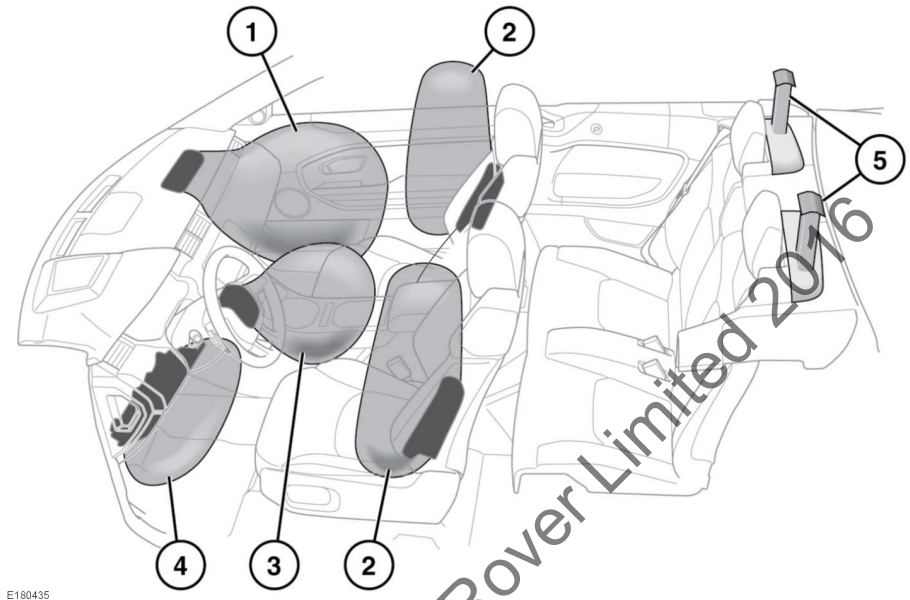
1. Front passenger's airbag.
2. Curtain airbags.
3. Side airbags.
4. Knee-bolster airbag.
5. Driver's airbag.

Note: *The general location of airbags fitted to the vehicle are marked by the word AIRBAG.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Airbags

Convertible



E180435

Airbag and rollover protection device locations:

1. Front passenger's airbag.
2. Seat-mounted head and thorax side airbags.
3. Driver's airbag.
4. Knee-bolster airbag.
5. Rollover protection device.

Note: *The general location of airbags fitted to the vehicle are marked by the word* ***AIRBAG****.*

Always contact your retailer/authorised repairer if:

- An airbag inflates.
- The front or sides of the vehicle are damaged.
- Any part of the airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) shows signs of cracking or damage, including the trim covering the airbags.
- The amber airbag warning lamp illuminates.

AIRBAG OPERATION

For the airbags to operate correctly, the roof lining and door pillar trims must be in good condition, correctly fitted, and free from obstruction. Any damage, wear, or incorrect fitment should be referred to a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible, for examination and repair.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Airbags inflate at high speeds and can cause facial abrasions and other injuries. To minimise the risk of injury, make sure all vehicle occupants wear correctly positioned seat belts and sit correctly in the seats. Position the seats as far back as possible.

Airbag inflation takes place instantaneously and cannot protect against the effects of secondary impacts. Under these circumstances, the only protection is provided by a correctly worn seat belt.

High speed impacts may cause serious injury or death, irrespective of safety features fitted to a vehicle.

The airbag SRS cannot provide protection in some types of impact. Under these circumstances, the only protection is provided by a correctly worn seat belt.

Airbags provide additional protection in certain types of collision only. Airbags do not replace the need to wear a seat belt. All occupants, in all seating positions, should always wear their seat belt, whether or not an airbag is present in that seating position.

Airbag deployment is dependent on the rate at which the passenger compartment changes velocity following a collision. Circumstances affecting different collisions (vehicle speed, angle of impact, type and size of object hit, etc.), vary considerably and affects the rate of deceleration accordingly.

The airbags and Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) are not designed to operate as a result of:

- Rear impacts.
- Minor front impacts.
- Minor side impacts.
- Heavy braking.
- Driving over bumps and pot holes.

Therefore, it follows that considerable superficial damage to the vehicle can occur, without causing the airbags to deploy.

AIRBAG OBSTRUCTION

Do not obstruct the operation of the airbags by placing any part of your person or any objects in contact with, or close to, an airbag module. If the airbag inflates, objects or any part of an occupant could interfere with the inflation of the airbag or be propelled inside the vehicle, causing injury to the occupants.

Do not allow passengers to obstruct the operation of the airbags by placing feet, knees or any other part of the body, or any other objects in contact with, or in close proximity to, an airbag module. If the airbag inflates, objects or any part of their person could interfere with the inflation of the airbag or be propelled inside the vehicle, causing injury to the occupants.
Do not place objects between the airbag module and the seat occupant.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Airbags

Do not use non-approved seat covers or accessory seat covers that have not been designed for use with airbags. If in doubt, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

Make sure that a gap is maintained between the side of the vehicle, and the head and torso. The gap enables unobstructed inflation of the curtain and seat-mounted side airbags.

Do not attach or position items on, or close to, the roof lining, front seatbacks, or to an airbag cover. Items in these positions could interfere with the inflation of the airbag or be propelled inside the vehicle, causing injury to the occupants.

Airbags cannot deploy correctly if they are obstructed. Examples of obstructions are:

- Any part of an occupant's body in contact with, or close to, an airbag cover.
- Objects placed on, or close to, an airbag cover.
- Clothing, sun screens, or other material hanging from grab handles.
- Clothing, cushions, or other material covering seat-mounted airbags.
- Seat covers which are not approved, or specifically designed for use with seat-mounted airbags.

The list is not exhaustive and it remains the responsibility of the driver and passengers to make sure the airbags are not obstructed in any way.

FRONT AIRBAGS

The front passenger and driver airbags are able to deploy in two stages, depending on the severity of the frontal impact. In a severe impact, the airbags inflate fully to offer maximum protection. In a lesser impact, full deployment is not required, so the airbags are partially inflated.

The knee-bolster airbag always fully inflates.

SIDE AIRBAGS

5 Door and Coupe

The side airbags are designed to protect the thorax region of the torso and deploy only in the event of a side impact and then, only on the side of the impact.

Convertible

The side airbags are designed to protect the head and thorax region of the torso and only deploy in the event of a side impact and then, only on the side of the impact.

CURTAIN AIRBAGS

For the curtain airbags to deploy correctly, the roof lining and A pillar trim must be undamaged and fitted correctly. Any damage or suspect fitting should be referred to a retailer/authorised repairer for examination.

The curtain airbags are deployed in side impact and rollover events, providing greater protection from serious head injuries.

Note: *Curtain airbags do not inflate as a result of frontal or rear impacts alone.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

ROLLOVER PROTECTION DEVICE

Do not let anyone sit or place any objects on top of the rollover protection device trim covers, as this could prevent correct deployment of the rollover protection device.

The rollover protection device fitted to convertible vehicles is concealed behind two panels located directly behind the rear head restraints. If there is a risk of a vehicle rollover, the rollover protection device automatically deploys.

AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT EFFECTS

When an airbag inflates, a fine powder is released. Release of fine powder is normal and not an indication of a malfunction. The powder may cause irritation to the skin and should be thoroughly flushed from eyes and any cuts or abrasions. The powder can cause breathing difficulties for asthma sufferers or other people with respiratory problems. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so or get fresh air by opening a window. If breathing problems persist, seek medical attention.

Airbag deployment is accompanied by a very loud noise, which may cause discomfort and temporary loss of hearing.

After inflation, some airbag components will be very hot. Do not touch the airbag components until they have cooled sufficiently.

After inflation, the front and seat-mounted side airbags deflate immediately. Deflation provides a gradual cushioning effect for the occupants and also makes sure the driver's forward vision is not obscured.

AIRBAG WARNING LAMP

The warning lamp indicates a potential fault with the vehicle's restraint system, which could result in serious injury or death in the event of a severe accident.

If the warning lamp indicates that a fault is present in the system, do not use a child restraint on the front passenger seat.

The airbag warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and illuminates as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on. See **66, AIRBAG (AMBER)**.

If any of the following warning lamp conditions occur, the vehicle should be checked by a retailer/authorised repairer immediately:

- The warning lamp fails to illuminate when the ignition is switched on.
- The warning lamp fails to extinguish within 6 seconds of the ignition being switched on.
- The warning lamp illuminates at any time, other than during the bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

When the ignition is switched on, a diagnostic control unit monitors the readiness of the system's electrical circuits. The elements of the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) components include:

- SRS warning indicator.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

- Rotary coupler.
- Airbag modules.
- Front seat belt pre-tensioners.
- Front seat belt buckle switches.
- Front seat track position sensor.
- Airbag diagnostic control unit.
- Crash and rollover sensors.
- Airbag wiring harness.
- Airbag status indicator.
- Rollover protection device and rollover sensor (convertible vehicles only).

DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG

(Not Australia)

⚠ **The passenger airbag should be disabled only when a child restraint is fitted to the front passenger seat.**

⚠ **Crash test data and statistics show that the safest place for a child to be restrained is in a child seat correctly fitted to the vehicle's rear seat.**

⚠ **Do not use a child restraint on a seat protected by an operational airbag in front of it. Doing so presents a high risk of death or serious injury to the child in the event of an accident.**

⚠ **When checking the operational status of the front passenger airbag, make sure the ignition is switched on and the warning lamp bulb check period of 6 seconds has elapsed.**

⚠ **As soon as the child seat is removed from the front passenger seat, the airbag must be switched on. Failure to do so will put any front seat passengers at greater risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.**

⚠ **Do not fit a child restraint to the front passenger seat if the airbag warning lamp illuminates continuously with the ignition on. See 66, AIRBAG (AMBER).**

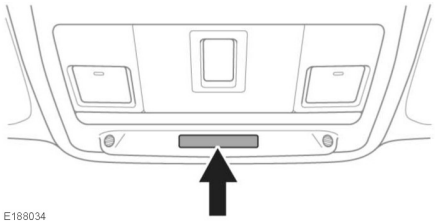
⚠ **The passenger airbag must be disabled when a rearward-facing child restraint is fitted to the front passenger seat.**

Note: *Disabling the passenger airbag is market dependent.*

The passenger's front airbag can be switched on and off, using the interactive controls in the Instrument panel when the vehicle is stationary. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**

Select **Passenger Airbag** from the **Vehicle Settings** menu, located in the **Main Menu**.

The displayed text and diagram shows the current passenger airbag on or off status. Select **Change Setting** to choose either **ON** or **OFF**.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

An airbag status indicator lamp, mounted in the overhead control panel, displays the operational status of the passenger airbag, as shown in the following table:

Setting	Passenger airbag status	Airbag status indicator
Off	Disabled	PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF
On	Activated	ON PASSENGER AIRBAG*

* Displays for 60 seconds, then extinguishes.

AIRBAG SERVICE INFORMATION

Phone systems should only be fitted by qualified persons familiar with the operation of, and requirements for, vehicles fitted with a Supplementary Restraint System (SRS). If in any doubt, seek advice from a retailer/authorised repairer.

Do not attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with, any part of the SRS. Doing so may cause the system to trigger, or render the system inoperative.

Do not attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with, any wiring or components in the vicinity of SRS. Doing so may cause the SRS to trigger, or render the SRS inoperative.

Do not use any electrical test equipment or devices in the vicinity of SRS components or wiring. Doing so may cause the system to trigger, or render the system inoperative.

For personal safety reasons, all of the following operations should only be carried out by a retailer/ authorised repairer, or suitably qualified person:

- Removal, or repair, of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any SRS components.
- Fitment of electrical, or electronic, equipment and accessories.
- Modification to the front or sides of the vehicle's exterior.
- Attachment of accessories to the front or sides of the vehicle.

Always contact a retailer/authorised repairer if:

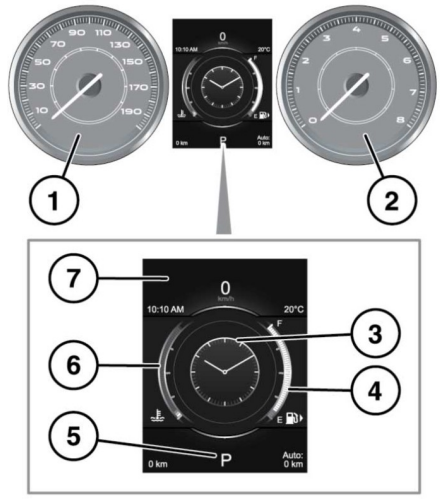
- An airbag inflates.
- The front or sides of the vehicle are damaged.
- Any part of the airbag SRS shows signs of cracking or damage, including the trim covering the airbags.

DISABILITY MODIFICATIONS

Occupants with disabilities which may require the vehicle to be modified, must contact a retailer/authorised repairer before any modifications are made.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

INSTRUMENT PANEL



E175805

The instrument panel conveys information to the driver.

1. Speedometer.
2. Tachometer.
3. Message centre and menu.

   Note: *A number of different displays are available in this area of the instrument panel. See* ***59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU****.*
4. Fuel gauge: See **69, LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)**.
   The arrow next to the fuel pump symbol indicates the side of the vehicle on which the fuel filler is located.

   Never allow the engine to run out of fuel, or damage to the engine may occur.
5. Gear selector status.
6. Temperature gauge: If the temperature gauge pointer moves into the red section at the top of the scale, the engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and allow the engine to idle until the temperature reduces. If, after several minutes, the temperature does not reduce, switch off the engine and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

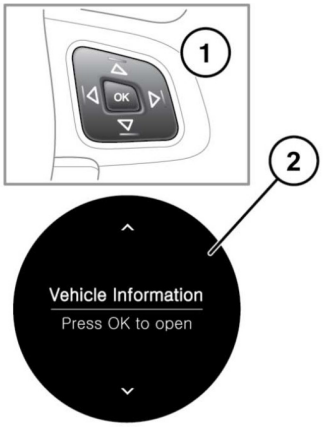
   Serious engine damage can occur if the vehicle is driven while the engine is overheating.

   Note: *If engine overheating occurs, there may be a noticeable reduction in engine power and the Air Conditioning (A/C) may cease operation. The reduction in engine power and A/C operation is a normal operating strategy, reducing load on the engine and assisting with engine cooling.*
7. Warning lamps and indicators display: Other warning lamps are displayed in the speedometer and tachometer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU

In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.



E175869

A number of vehicle features and display settings can be configured via the instrument panel menu.

To display and navigate through the instrument panel menu, operate the menu control on the steering wheel:

1. Steering wheel menu control: Press **OK** to activate the menu, then use as follows:
   - Press the up and down arrows to scroll through a list.
   - Press and release the right arrow, or press **OK**, to view a sub-list.
   - Press and release the left arrow to return to the previous menu.
   - Press and hold the left arrow to close the menu.
   - Press the **OK** button to select the highlighted menu item.
2. Scroll through the menu options as follows:
   - **Driver Assistance**.
   - **Trip Computer**.
   - **Display Settings**.
   - **Vehicle Settings**.

Make sure that all relevant Owner's Handbook information is read and fully understood before making any changes to the Vehicle Settings. Failure to do so could lead to serious injury or death.

   - **Vehicle Information**.

Note: *Only available before the engine starts.*

   - **Head-Up Display (HUD)**.

WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES

Do not ignore warning messages. Take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in serious damage to the vehicle.
If the message is suppressed, an amber or red warning lamp remains illuminated until the cause of the message is rectified.

For information regarding the individual messages, their meanings, and any action required, please refer to the relevant section within this handbook.

If more than one message is active, each is displayed in turn for 2 seconds, in order of priority.

Note: *Messages are displayed in order of importance. High importance warning messages are given the highest priority.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Warning messages may be accompanied by an audible warning and the message text may have the handbook symbol next to it. Warning messages are displayed until the condition causing the fault is rectified or the message is suppressed using the **OK** button on the steering wheel menu control.

TRIP COMPUTER

The trip computer memory stores data for a journey, or a series of journeys, until it is reset to zero.

There are three trip memories available: **Trip A**, **Trip B**, and **Trip Auto**. Use the instrument panel menu to select a trip memory to display in the instrument panel.

USING THE TRIP COMPUTER



E150760

The trip computer is able to display various pieces of information to the driver. Pressing the trip button (arrowed) for 1 second or less, displays the trip computer menu in the instrument panel message centre. The options available are:

- **Trip content**: Select the information type to be displayed in the message centre.
- **Trip bank**: Select **Trip A**, **Trip B**, or **Trip Auto**.
- **Trip Auto button**: Select to manage trip selection.
- **Trip units**: Select metric or imperial units.

The distance, average speed, and average fuel economy values for **Trip A** and **Trip B** can be reset to zero. To do this, press and hold the trip button until the message **resetting trip** is displayed in the message centre.

The **Trip Auto** feature cannot be manually reset. **Trip Auto** resets automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

Trips may be added together, to record a continuous journey, or removed. Press the trip button for longer than 1 second, when **Trip Auto** values for distance, average speed, and average fuel economy are displayed. **Adding last journey** or **Removing last journey** is displayed in the message centre. Press the trip button for longer than 1 second to select the desired option. The previous trip information is added to, or removed from, the current trip and the new total is displayed. There is no limit to the number of times this can be done before the ignition is switched off.

TRIP DISTANCE

Distance travelled since the last memory reset. The maximum trip reading is 9 999.9 (km or miles). The trip computer automatically resets to zero if this distance is exceeded.

RANGE

The range display shows the predicted distance (miles or km) that the vehicle should travel on the remaining available fuel. The reading assumes fuel consumption and driving style remain constant.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

METRIC, IMPERIAL, AND MIXED DISPLAY

The trip computer readings can be changed between metric, imperial, and mixed units in the **Trip Computer** menu of the message centre. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *The temperature display can be changed between* ***°C*** *(Celsius) and* ***°F*** *(Fahrenheit), independently of metric or imperial units.*

SERVICE INTERVAL INDICATOR

An upcoming service interval is notified to the driver via the message centre, as either a distance or time left until the service is due. Once the distance or time are exceeded, the display shows a negative (**-**) value to indicate that a service is overdue.

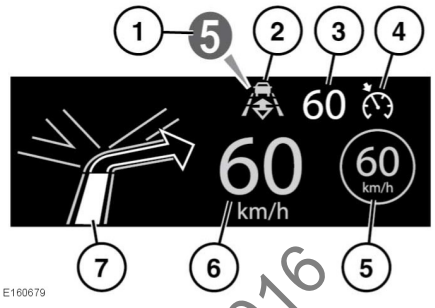
One or both types of service interval (distance and time) may be displayed.

Details of the next service can be found in the **Vehicle Information** instrument panel menu. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD)

⚠ **In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.**

The Head-Up Display (HUD) feature projects driver information onto the inside of the windscreen.



The information displayed is as follows:

1. Current gear selected, or,
2. Follow mode is active. See **142, ENTERING FOLLOW MODE**.
3. Cruise control set speed.
4. Cruise control or adaptive cruise control is active.
5. Traffic sign recognition, identified speed limit. See **165, TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION**.
6. Current vehicle speed.
7. Turn-by-turn navigation instructions.

Instrument panel warning lamps may also be displayed in the HUD. See **64, WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS**.

The HUD can be controlled from the **Head-Up Display (HUD)** option in the instrument panel menu. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Once selected, the menu offers a number of options, including:

- Switching the HUD on or off.
- Selecting which information is displayed on the inside of the windscreen.
- The position of the display.
- The brightness of the display.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Setting the correct HUD position is important. The correct position is dependent on a number of conditions, including the height of the driver and the seat position.

Note: *Before setting the position of the HUD, make sure that the driver's seat is correctly positioned. The HUD level should be set horizontally, within the driver's vision. See* ***29, SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION****.*

To set the display position, select **Position** from the **Head-Up Display (HUD)** menu and follow the on-screen instructions. Preferences can be stored using the driver's seat memory store button (**M**). See **29, DRIVING POSITION MEMORY**.

The brightness of the display is set automatically to suit the ambient light conditions. Select **Brightness** from the **Head-Up Display (HUD)** menu to manually adjust the brightness of the display.. Follow the on-screen instructions and then press **OK** on the steering wheel to confirm.

The HUD is linked to the trip computer **Trip units** settings. If the trip computer is set to metric, the HUD will be set to metric. If the trip computer is set to imperial, the HUD will be set to imperial. See **61, METRIC, IMPERIAL, AND MIXED DISPLAY**.

Note: *To ensure it always runs at its optimum temperature, the HUD takes a longer time to display from start-up in extreme temperatures.*

Note: *The full HUD image may not be visible while wearing polarised sunglasses.*

Note: *Do not place anything over the HUD unit, which is positioned on the driver's side between the top of the instrument panel and the windscreen.*

If cleaning is required, follow the cleaning instructions. See **291, CLEANING SCREENS AND DISPLAYS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

OVERVIEW

The following warning and information lamps may illuminate in the instrument panel:


See **65, BATTERY CHARGE (RED)**.


See **65, BRAKE (RED)**.


See **65, CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)**.


See **65, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (RED)**.


See **65, DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF) (RED)**.


See **66, ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED)**.


See **66, ENGINE TEMPERATURE (RED)**.


See **66, LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (RED)**.


See **66, LOW OIL PRESSURE (RED)**.


See **66, SEAT BELT (RED)**.


See **66, AIRBAG (AMBER)**.


See **66, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) (AMBER)**.



See **67, ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS) (AMBER)**.


See **67, BEND LIGHTING (AMBER)**.


See **67, BRAKE (AMBER)**.


See **67, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (AMBER)**.


See **67, DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF) (AMBER)**.


See **68, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)**.



See **68, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)**.


See **68, ENGINE/ TRANSMISSION (AMBER)**.


See **68, EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER)**.


See **68, FOLLOW MODE (AMBER)**.


See **68, GENERAL WARNING/ INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)**


See **68, GLOW PLUGS (AMBER)**.


See **69, LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)**.


See **69, REAR FOG LIGHTS (AMBER)**.


See **69, TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (YELLOW)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016



See **69, AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (GREEN)**.



See **70, AUTO STOP/START (GREEN)**.



See **69, CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)**.



See **69, DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF) (GREEN)**.



See **69, DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)**.



See **69, FORWARD ALERT (GREEN)**.



See **69, FRONT FOG LIGHTS (GREEN)**.



See **69, GEAR SHIFT (GREEN)**.



See **70, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) (GREEN)**.



See **70, LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (GREEN)**.



See **70, SIDE LIGHTS (GREEN)** .



See **70, TRAILER DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)**.



See **70, HIGH BEAM (BLUE)**.



See **70, FOLLOW MODE OFF (GREY)**.



See **70, AUTO STOP/START OFF (WHITE)**.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

Do not ignore warning lamps or indicators. Take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury, or serious damage to the vehicle.

Red warning lamps are for primary warnings. A primary warning must be investigated immediately by the driver or qualified assistance, before continuing.

Amber and yellow warning lamps are for secondary warnings. Some indicate that a vehicle system is in operation, others indicate that the driver must take action and then seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

Green and blue lamps within the instrument panel indicate a system's status.

LAMP CHECK

A warning lamp bulb check is initiated when the ignition system is switched on. The check lasts for 3 seconds, except for the airbag warning lamp, which remains on for 6 seconds. If any warning lamp remains on after this period, investigate the cause before driving.

Some warning lamps have associated messages displayed in the message centre.

Note: *Not all warning lamps are included in the check, e.g., high beam headlights and direction indicators.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Note: *If a trailer with LED lights is connected to the trailer socket, the bulb check may not be performed.*

BATTERY CHARGE (RED)



The battery charge warning lamp illuminates, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on. The lamp extinguishes when the engine is started.

If the lamp remains on or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the battery charging system and a message is displayed in the message centre. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

BRAKE (RED)

Do not drive if the message LOW BRAKE FLUID is displayed. Check the brake fluid level and top up, as necessary. If necessary, seek qualified assistance before continuing. Driving with low brake fluid can cause increased braking distance or brake failure, and can result in a collision.



The brake warning lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp illuminates while driving, suspect low brake fluid level or a fault with the braking system.

Stop the vehicle, as soon as safety permits. Check and top up the brake fluid, if necessary. If the lamp remains illuminated, seek qualified assistance before continuing.

CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)



The critical warning message lamp illuminates when a relevant message is available in the message centre.

DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (RED)



The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) warning lamp illuminates to warn the driver that the level of DEF is seriously low, incorrect fluid has been added to the system, or there is a fault with the system. The lamp is accompanied by messages in the message centre. Follow the on-screen messages, if safe to do so. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF) (RED)



The Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) warning lamp illuminates when the DPF is full, or there is a fault with the DPF system. Depending on severity, the lamp may be accompanied by a chime and a message in the message centre. Seek qualified assistance at the earliest opportunity.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED)



The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) warning lamp illuminates if the EPB is correctly applied. If the lamp flashes, a fault has been detected. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

ENGINE TEMPERATURE (RED)



The engine temperature warning lamp illuminates when the engine's temperature is too high. The message centre also displays the message **ENGINE OVERHEATING**.

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and seek qualified assistance before continuing.

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (RED)



The lane departure warning lamp illuminates if the vehicle crosses a lane marking, without the appropriate direction indicator being operated. Illumination of the lamp is accompanied by a vibration, felt through the steering wheel.

LOW OIL PRESSURE (RED)



If the low oil pressure warning lamp flashes or illuminates while driving, stop the vehicle, as soon as safety permits. Switch off the engine immediately.

Check and top up the oil level, if necessary. Start the engine. If the lamp remains illuminated, switch the engine off immediately. Seek qualified assistance, before continuing.

SEAT BELT (RED)



The seat belt warning lamp illuminates, accompanied by a chime, when the vehicle is in motion and an occupied seat belt is unbuckled.

The lamp extinguishes when the relevant seat belt is buckled.

Note: *Objects on the front passenger seat may activate the seat belt reminder feature. It is recommended that any objects placed on the front passenger seat are secured using the seat belt. See* ***37, USING THE SEAT BELTS****.*

AIRBAG (AMBER)



The airbag warning lamp illuminates, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes after 6 seconds.

If the lamp illuminates again, after the bulb check or when driving, there is a fault with the airbag system. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) (AMBER)



The All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) lamp illuminates to confirm that the ATPC system is enabled.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS) (AMBER)

If the Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) and brake warning lamps are illuminated at the same time, do not drive the vehicle until the fault is rectified, as the braking system may not be functioning correctly. This may, in turn, lead to a loss of control, causing an accident. Seek qualified assistance immediately.

It remains the responsibility of the driver to operate the vehicle in an appropriate manner for the prevailing conditions.



The ABS warning lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp remains on or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the ABS system. Drive with care, avoiding heavy brake pedal pressing, and seek qualified assistance urgently.

BRAKE (AMBER)



The brake lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp illuminates after starting the engine or while driving, suspect worn brake pads or a fault with the braking system. The vehicle can still be driven with care, but seek qualified assistance urgently.

BEND LIGHTING (AMBER)



The bend lighting lamp illuminates when there is a fault with the system.

The headlights still operate, but without this feature operating correctly. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (AMBER)



The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) warning lamp illuminates to warn the driver that the level of DEF is starting to run low, incorrect fluid has been added to the system, or there is a fault with the system. The lamp is accompanied by messages in the message centre. Follow the on-screen messages, if safe to do so.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF) (AMBER)



The Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) warning lamp illuminates when the DPF has failed to regenerate, and is starting to become full. The lamp is accompanied by a message in the message centre. Follow the on-screen messages, if safe to do so.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

DRIVER FATIGUE ALERT (AMBER)



The driver fatigue alert warning lamp illuminates when the driver fatigue alert system determines the driver is presenting signs of tiredness. The lamp is accompanied by a message in the message centre.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)



The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) lamp flashes when the system is active. If there is a fault with the system, it remains illuminated and the message centre displays **DSC NOT AVAILABLE**.

The vehicle can still be driven, but without DSC assistance. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)



The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) off warning lamp illuminates when the system is switched off.

The lamp is accompanied by a chime and a confirmation message in the message centre.

ENGINE/TRANSMISSION (AMBER)



The engine and transmission warning lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp illuminates when the engine is running, there is an emissions-related fault with the engine or transmission.

The vehicle can be driven, but may enter limp-home mode with the possibility of reduced performance. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

If the warning lamp flashes while the engine is running, reduce speed. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER)



The external temperature lamp illuminates when the external temperature is low enough that ice may be present on the road.

FOLLOW MODE (AMBER)



The follow mode lamp illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is in follow mode.

GENERAL WARNING/ INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)



The general warning and information message lamp illuminates when a non-critical warning message or an information message is available in the message centre.

GLOW PLUGS (AMBER)



The glow plug lamp illuminates when the ignition is switched on, to indicate that the glow plugs are active.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)



The low fuel warning lamp illuminates when the fuel level is low. Refuel at the earliest opportunity.

The arrow shows which side of the vehicle to locate the fuel filler flap.

REAR FOG LIGHTS (AMBER)



The rear fog lights lamp illuminates when the rear fog lights are switched on.

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (YELLOW)



The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) lamp illuminates to warn that one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated. The lamp is accompanied by a message in the message centre.

Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, when safe to do so. Check the tyre pressures and inflate to the recommended pressure.

The lamp flashes to indicate a system fault.

AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (GREEN)



The Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA) lamp illuminates when the AHBA feature has switched on the high beam headlights.

CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)



The cruise control lamp illuminates when cruise control or adaptive cruise control is active.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF) (GREEN)



The Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) lamp illuminates briefly when a successful DPF regeneration process has been carried out.

DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)



The appropriate, left or right direction indicators lamp flashes when the direction indicators are operated.

If a direction indicator bulb fails, the audible ticking and warning lamp sound and flash, respectively, at twice the normal rate, when that direction indicator is selected.

FORWARD ALERT (GREEN)



The forward alert lamp illuminates when forward alert is active.

FRONT FOG LIGHTS (GREEN)



The front fog lights lamp illuminates when the front fog lights are switched on.

GEAR SHIFT (GREEN)



The gear shift indicator illuminates briefly at the recommended gear change point (up-shift).

The gear shift indicator does not illuminate while cruise control is active and is not being overridden by pressing the accelerator pedal.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

The warning indicator is only a guide. It remains the responsibility of the driver to operate the vehicle in an appropriate manner for the prevailing conditions.

HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) (GREEN)



The Hill Descent Control (HDC) lamp illuminates continuously when the HDC system is selected and HDC operating conditions are met.

If the lamp flashes, HDC has been selected, but the operating conditions are not being met or HDC fade-out is occurring.

AUTO STOP/START (GREEN)



The auto stop/start lamp illuminates when the engine is shut down by the auto stop/start system.

Note: *Other warnings normally associated with an engine shutdown, do not illuminate during an engine shutdown by the auto stop/start system.*

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (GREEN)



The lane departure warning lamp illuminates grey to confirm the lane departure warning system is enabled.

Recognised lane markings illuminate green, otherwise they illuminate grey.

SIDE LIGHTS (GREEN)



The side lights lamp illuminates when the side lights are switched on.

TRAILER DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)



The trailer direction indicator lamp illuminates, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes when the engine is started.

If a trailer is attached, the warning lamp flashes in conjunction with the direction indicator warning lamp. If the lamp fails to flash, the direction indicator bulb on the trailer may be faulty.

Note: *If the attached and connected trailer is fitted with LED lights, the bulb check may not be performed.*

HIGH BEAM (BLUE)



The high beam lamp illuminates when the high beam headlights are switched on or flashed.

FOLLOW MODE OFF (GREY)



The follow mode off lamp illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is disabled.

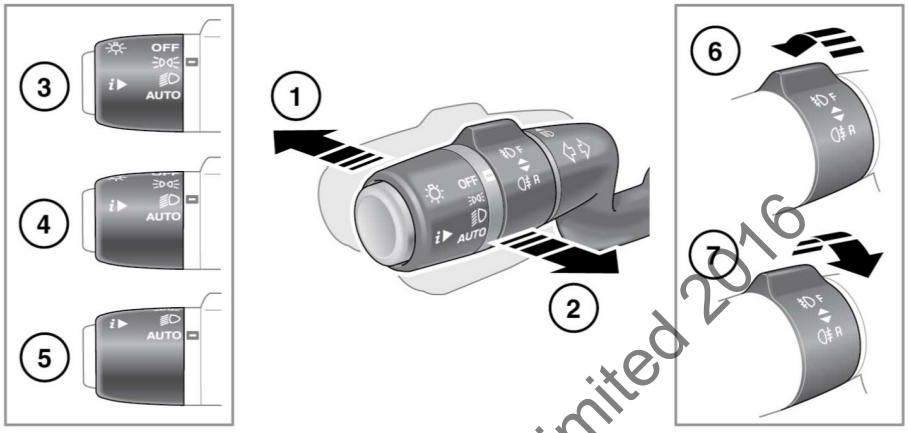
AUTO STOP/START OFF (WHITE)



The lamp illuminates when the auto stop/start system is switched off.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

LIGHTING CONTROL



E160313

Lighting control operation:

1. With the headlights on, push the lighting control away from the steering wheel to select high beam. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **70, HIGH BEAM (BLUE)**.

   Note: *Do not use high beam where it may distract other road users.*

2. Pull the lighting control towards the steering wheel and release to flash the high beam on and off. The high beam remains on for as long as the lighting control is held.
3. Side lights: Rotate the lighting control to this position to switch the side lights on. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **70, SIDE LIGHTS (GREEN)** .
4. Headlights: Rotate the lighting control to this position to switch the headlights on.
5. **AUTO**: Rotate the lighting control to this position to select auto lights. When ambient light fades and the ignition is switched on, the side lights, rear lights, dipped beam headlights, and number plate lights switch on automatically. Headlight courtesy delay, Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA), and windscreen wiper detection may also be activated.

   Note: *Low exterior light levels, caused by adverse weather conditions, may also cause the auto lights to activate.*

6. Front fog lights: Operate only while the side lights, headlights, or auto lights are selected. Turn the collar away from the steering wheel and release to switch on. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **69, FRONT FOG LIGHTS (GREEN)**. To switch off the front fog lights: Turn the collar away from the steering wheel again, and release.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

7. Rear fog lights: Operate only while the side lights, headlights, or auto lights are selected. Turn the collar towards the steering wheel and release to switch on. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **69, REAR FOG LIGHTS (AMBER)**. To switch off the rear fog lights: Turn the collar towards the steering wheel again, and release.

In the event of a bulb failure, it should be noted that some bulbs are replaceable only by a retailer/authorised repairer. See **279, CHANGING A BULB**.

DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS (DRL)

With the lighting control in the **OFF** or **AUTO** position, while the lighting conditions do not require the headlights to be on, the Daytime Running Lights (DRL) switch on automatically under the following conditions:

- The engine is running.
- The gear selector is out of Park (**P**) (automatic transmission).
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is not applied - market dependent.



Unless required or prohibited by law, the DRL feature can be disabled or enabled by a retailer/authorised repairer.

HEADLIGHT COURTESY DELAY

The headlight courtesy delay feature operates whenever the lighting control is in the **AUTO** position and the ignition is switched off. The headlights remain illuminated for up to 240 seconds.

Note: *The time delay may be changed via the* ***Vehicle Settings*** *menu. See* ***59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU****.*

The courtesy delay can be switched off at any time, by pressing the headlight button on the smart key.

AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA)

The Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA) feature automatically selects and deselects high beam, under specific conditions of road lighting and in the absence of other vehicle's lights. The system is only active when the ambient light drops below a predetermined level.

Note: *It is not recommended that AHBA is used while driving off road.*

For AHBA to become operational, the lighting control must be in the **AUTO** (**5**) position, with dipped beam headlights selected.

The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates when AHBA is selected. See **69, AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (GREEN)**.

AHBA only activates when the vehicle's speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph). The system deactivates when the vehicle's speed drops below 24 km/h (15 mph).

To manually select high beam, move the lighting control to the high beam position, as normal. To return to AHBA, move the lighting control back to the central position.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

To manually override to dipped beam from high beam, pull the lighting control to the flash position (**2**). AHBA is cancelled. To return to AHBA, push the lighting control to the high beam position (**1**) and then return it to the central position.

To switch AHBA off, turn the lighting control from **AUTO** to headlights.

This feature can be disabled or enabled via the **Vehicle Settings** menu. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The hand of traffic can also be selected within the instrument panel menu. As default, this is set to be opposite the hand of drive, so if the vehicle is Left Hand Drive (LHD), the hand of traffic is Right Hand Drive (RHD).

Note: *For vehicles fitted with a navigation system, following each ignition cycle the hand of traffic resets according to the region in which the vehicle is being driven.*

The following may affect the operation of AHBA:

- Highly reflective road signs.
- Dimly lit road users, e.g., cyclists or pedestrians.
- Adverse weather conditions, e.g., rain or fog.
- Dirty or obscured sensor.
- Dirty, damaged, or misted windscreen.
- Oncoming vehicles partially obscured by a central motorway barrier.
- An icy or frosted windscreen.

Note: *Make sure to defrost the windscreen during winter conditions.*

Note: *The system cannot be relied upon to activate or deactivate high beam in all possible circumstances. It remains the driver's responsibility to use the headlights correctly at all times.*

Note: *Make sure that the forward-facing sensors on the back of the rear-view mirror are not blocked or obstructed.*

WINDSCREEN WIPER DETECTION

If auto lights is selected and the windscreen wipers are switched on for 20 seconds or more, the side lights, rear lights, and headlights switch on automatically. When the wipers are switched off, the lights automatically switch off 2 minutes later.

HEADLIGHTS - CONDENSATION

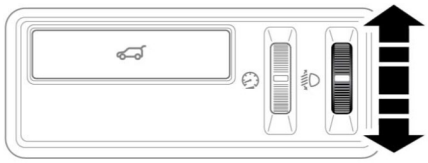
Misting of headlight lenses can occur under some atmospheric conditions. Performance of the lights is not affected and misting clears during normal operation.

HEADLIGHTS - DRIVING ABROAD

The headlight beam pattern is suitable for driving on either side of the road. There is no need for any mechanical adjustment or external decals.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

HEADLIGHT LEVELLING



E150305

Use the headlamp levelling control to account for vehicle loading changes.

Vehicle load	Switch position
Driver only.	Top.
Driver and front seat passenger.	Top.
Driver and passengers in all seats.	Rotate down 1 notch.
Maximum Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW).	Rotate down 1 notch.
Maximum rear axle load.	Rotate down 2 notches.

HEADLIGHT LEVELLING – LED AND XENON

LED and xenon headlights fitted with automatic levelling do not require manual adjustment. The vehicle does not have a rotary control on the fascia panel.

BEND LIGHTING

When cornering using dipped beam, the bend lighting system adjusts the headlight beams to provide improved illumination in the direction of travel.

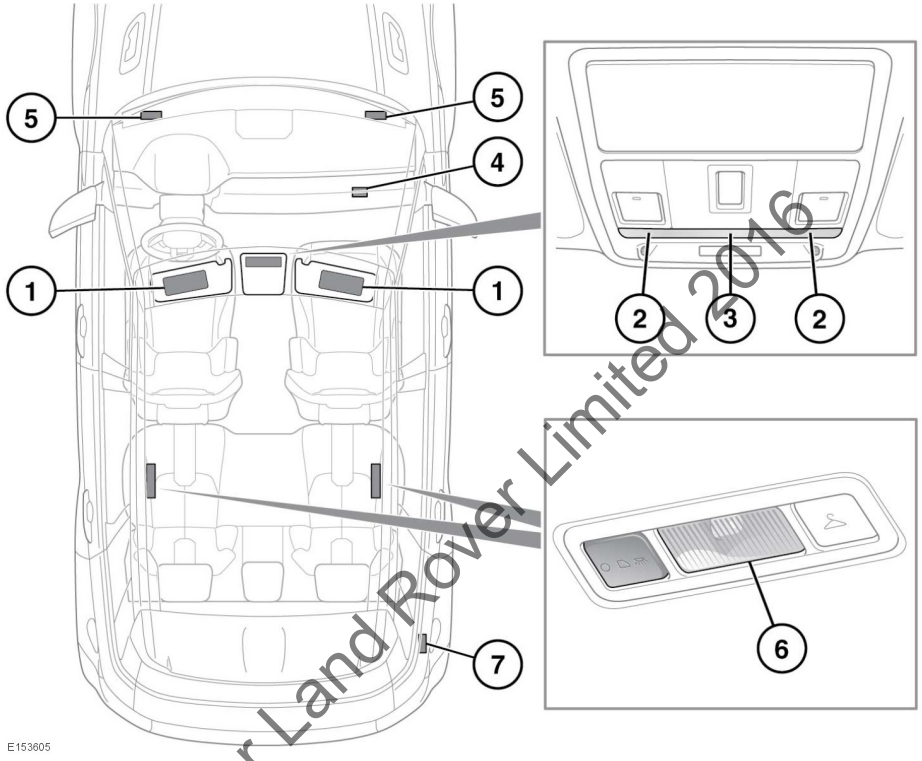
Bend lighting is deactivated when:

- Reverse gear (**R**) is selected.
- The vehicle is stationary.
- Daytime Running Lights (DRL) are switched on.

If a system fault is detected, the headlights attempt to move to the central position and remain stationary. The bend lighting warning lamp illuminates to indicate that a fault is present. See **67, BEND LIGHTING (AMBER)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

INTERIOR LIGHTS



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

1. Sun visor lights: Illuminate when the vanity mirror is opened.
2. Map reading lights: Move a finger close to (or touch) the relevant lens to switch on or off.

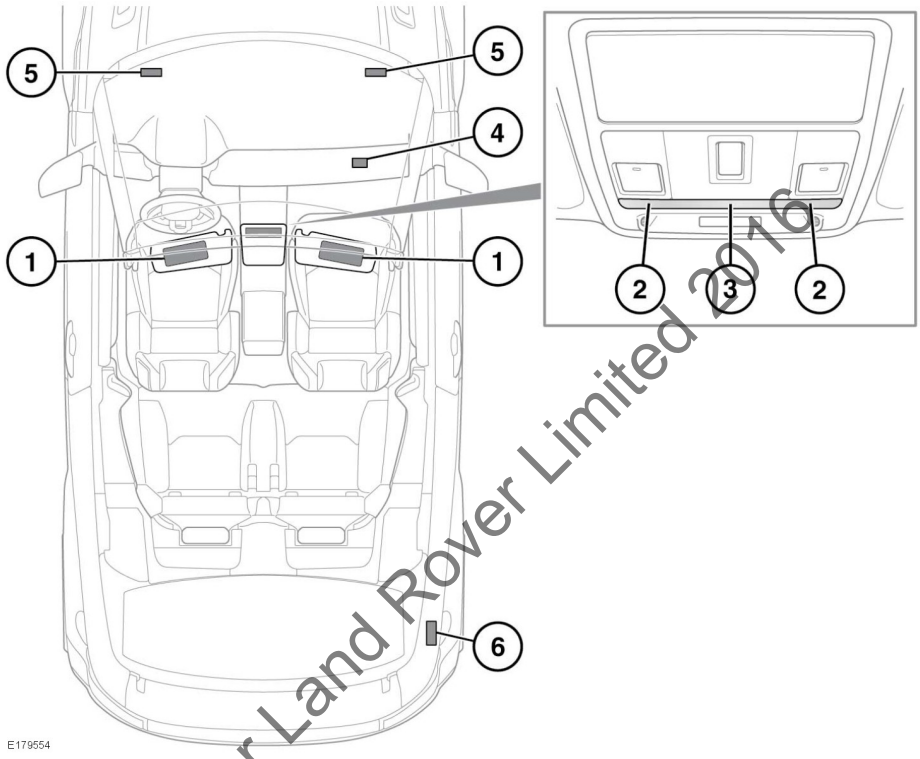
   Note: *If you are wearing gloves, it may be necessary to touch the lens to operate the lights.*
3. Front interior light: Illuminates when the doors are unlocked and extinguishes 60 seconds after all doors are closed, when the engine starts or when the vehicle is locked. Move a finger close to (or touch) the lens to switch on and off manually. Touch the lens for 2 seconds to deactivate or activate automatic illumination.
4. Glovebox light: Illuminates when the glovebox is opened.

Interior lights

5. Footwell lights: Illuminate when the doors are unlocked and extinguish 60 seconds after all doors are closed, when the engine starts or when the vehicle is locked.
6. Rear interior lights: Illuminate when the doors are unlocked and extinguish 60 seconds after all doors are closed, when the engine starts or when the vehicle is locked. Press the switch to switch on and off manually. Touch the front interior light lens for approximately 2 seconds to deactivate or activate automatic illumination of the rear interior lights.
7. Luggage compartment light: Illuminates when the tailgate is opened.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

CONVERTIBLE - INTERIOR LIGHTS



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

1. Sun visor lights: Illuminate when the vanity mirror is opened.
2. Map reading lights: Move a finger close to (or touch) the relevant lens to switch on or off.

   Note: *If you are wearing gloves, it may be necessary to touch the lens to operate the lights.*
3. Front interior light: Illuminates when the doors are unlocked and extinguishes 60 seconds after all doors are closed, when the engine starts or when the vehicle is locked. Move a finger close to (or touch) the lens to switch on and off manually. Touch the lens for 2 seconds to deactivate or activate automatic illumination.
4. Glovebox light: Illuminates when the glovebox is opened.

Interior lights

5. Footwell lights: Illuminate when the doors are unlocked and extinguish 60 seconds after all doors are closed, when the engine starts or when the vehicle is locked.
6. Luggage compartment light: Illuminates when the tailgate is opened.

INTERIOR LIGHTS INTENSITY

Use the interior illumination control to adjust the intensity of the instrument illumination. The exterior lights must be switched on while changes are being made. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

INTERIOR MOOD LIGHTING

On some vehicles, the LED interior mood lighting can be configured for colour and intensity through the touch screen. Although the exterior lights must be switched on while changes are being made, a 1 second preview of any changes made can be seen if the exterior lights are switched off. See **175, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Note: *Vehicles without configurable interior mood lighting illuminate the standard white light for the interior lights.*

STEALTH MODE

Stealth mode lowers the level of interior illumination to aid night time driving. Stealth mode can be enabled through the touch screen **Screensaver** menu. See **177, GENERAL SETTINGS**.

Once enabled, stealth mode is activated by switching the touch screen off. The touch screen can be switched off via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. If night time conditions exist when the touch screen is switched off, interior switch illumination and instrument panel back-lighting automatically reduces to the minimum light levels. Stealth mode is deactivated if night time conditions no longer exist, or if the touch screen is switched back on. See **170, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**.

Note: *The interior illumination control will not operate while stealth mode is active. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

WIPER OPERATION

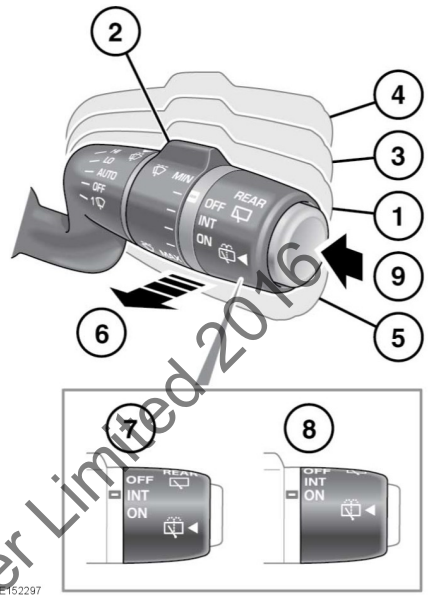
Do not operate the wipers on a dry screen.

Remove any snow, ice, or frost from the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades, and the windscreen scuttle, before operating the wipers.

In freezing or hot conditions, make sure the wipers do not stick to the glass. Use the winter park position to lift the wiper blades away from the screen. See **81, WINTER PARK POSITION**.

To avoid damage to the bonnet, do not lift the wipers when they are in the normal parked position. See **286, WIPERS SERVICE POSITION**.

Make sure the wipers are switched off before entering a car wash. If the wipers operate during the car washing process, damage may occur to the wiper mechanism.



To operate the washers and wipers:

1. Vehicles with a rain sensor: Automatic rain sensing mode. The front wipers respond and adapt automatically to the ambient rain conditions. The appropriate wiper frequency is selected for the prevailing conditions. The sensitivity of the system can be adjusted by rotating the collar (**2**). Vehicles without a rain sensor: Intermittent wipe. The time delay between wipes can be adjusted by rotating the collar (**2**).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

2. Vehicles with a rain sensor: Rotate the collar to adjust the sensitivity of the automatic rain sensing mode when position (**1**) is selected. The higher the setting, the more responsive the system becomes. When automatic rain sensing mode is selected, or when sensitivity is increased, the system performs a single wipe.
   Vehicles without a rain sensor: Rotate the collar to adjust the time delay between wipes when position (**1**) is selected. The higher the setting, the more frequently wipes occur.

   Note: *Wipe frequency increases with vehicle speed.*
3. **LO**: Low speed continuous wipe.
4. **HI**: High speed continuous wipe.
5. Single wipe of the windscreen, or hold down for further continuous wipes.
6. Windscreen wash and wipe: Pull and release to operate the front washers and wipers. The wipers operate for two further wipes after the control is released. After a few seconds, a drip wipe function clears any residual washer fluid from the windscreen. If more washer fluid is required, pull and hold the control's position.

   Note: *The front wipers do not operate while the bonnet is open.*
7. **INT**: Rear wiper, intermittent operation. Wiper frequency increases with vehicle speed.
8. **ON**: Rear wiper, continuous operation.
9. Rear screen wash and wipe: Press and release to operate the rear washer and wiper. The wiper operates in a set cycle to minimise drips when the button is released. If more washer fluid is required, push and hold the button.

   Note: *When Reverse (**R**) gear is selected and the front wipers are operating, the rear wiper activates.*

   Note: *The rear wiper does not operate while the tailgate is open.*

Note: *If the wipers leave smears on the glass after the vehicle has been washed, this may be due to wax or other residue. Should this occur, clean the glass with the recommended screen washer fluid. See **346, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.*

Note: *The windscreen is no longer wiped effectively and the automatic rain sensing function degrades if the wipers become worn. Always replace worn or damaged wiper blades as soon as possible. The wipers service position moves the wipers to allow wiper blade replacement. See **286, WIPERS SERVICE POSITION**.*

Note: *If the wipers become stuck or jammed, an electronic cut-out temporarily halts the operation of the wipers. If this happens, switch off the wipers and the vehicle's ignition, when safe to do so. Clear any obstructions and free the wiper blades, before attempting to switch on the ignition.*

RAIN SENSOR

The rain sensor is mounted on the inside of the windscreen, behind the rear-view mirror. The sensor is able to detect the presence and amount of water on the windscreen and automatically activates the windscreen wipers, accordingly.

Note: *Static droplets may not be detected on initial start-up. A single wipe should be used to clear the windscreen.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

To activate the rain sensitive wipers, move the wash/wipe control to the **AUTO** position (**1**). The behaviour of the system may be adjusted to the driver's preference by rotating the collar (**2**).

Note: *If the wash/wipe control is in the **AUTO** position, the wipers do not operate if either of the front doors are open.*

Note: *In dry and often sunny conditions, optical influences and dirt accumulation on the windscreen may result in the windscreen wipers activating inadvertently. To prevent this, it is recommended that, under these conditions, the wash/wipe controls are returned to the **OFF** position.*

The rain sensor feature can be enabled or disabled via the **Vehicle Settings** menu in the instrument panel. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

SPEED-DEPENDENT MODE

Front wipers:

If the vehicle's speed drops below 8 km/h (5 mph) with the wipers operating, the wipers switch to the next lowest speed. When the vehicle's speed increases to over 8 km/h (5 mph), the original wiper speed setting is automatically restored.

Vehicles without a rain sensor fitted also increase the frequency of the intermittent front wipe when the vehicle's speed increases.



This feature can be enabled and disabled by retailer/authorised repairer.

Rear wiper:

The frequency of the intermittent rear wiper increases when the vehicle's speed increases.



This feature can be enabled and disabled by retailer/authorised repairer.

DRIP WIPE

If the drip wipe feature is configured, the wipers operate a few seconds after a wash and wipe cycle has finished. The drip wipe feature clears any remaining drips from the windscreen.



The drip wipe feature can be enabled or disabled by a retailer/authorised repairer.

WINTER PARK POSITION

Make sure that the wiper arms are in the winter park position before lifting the wiper blades away from the windscreen. Failure to do so, may result in damage to the bonnet.

To avoid damage to the bonnet, do not lift the wiper blades, when they are in the normal park position.

When the vehicle is parked, the wipers can be set to park in a higher position than normal. The wiper blades can be lifted from the windscreen to limit the effects of freezing to the glass. Lifting the wiper blades from the windscreen aids the removal of snow, mud, and leaves, etc. The wiper's winter park position can be enabled or disabled via the **Vehicle Settings** menu in the instrument panel. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Do not drive with the wipers in the winter park position. The wipers should be returned to the normal park position before driving the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

HEADLIGHT WASHERS

The headlight wash feature operates automatically with the windscreen wash.

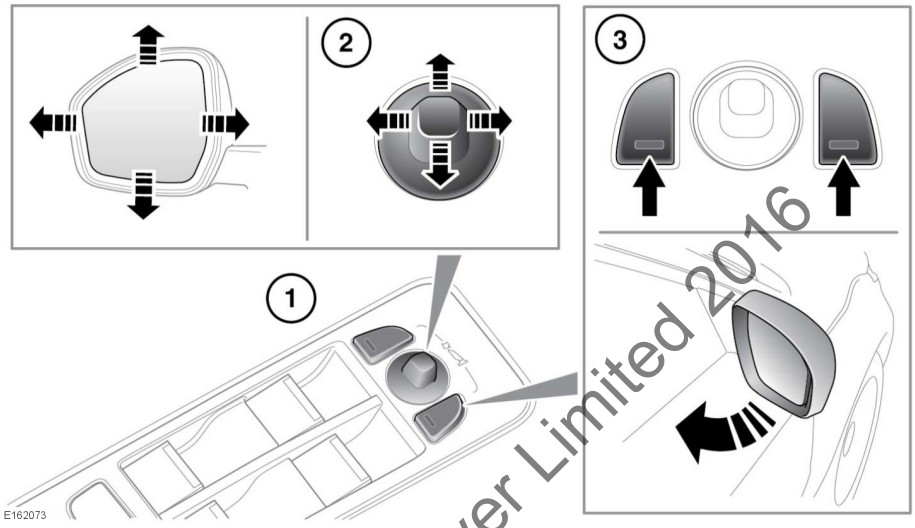
The headlight wash feature operates every fourth operation of the screen washers. The headlight wash feature operates if the headlights are switched on and approximately 10 minutes has elapsed since the last headlight wash.

Switching the headlights or the ignition off and back on again resets the cycle. See **71, LIGHTING CONTROL** or **119, SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE**.

Note: *The headlight washers operate only if the headlights are switched on and there is sufficient washer fluid in the reservoir.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

DOOR MIRRORS



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

To adjust the door mirrors:

1. Mirror selector buttons: Press to select the left or right mirror.
2. Mirror adjustment controls: Move up, down, left or right to adjust the mirror's glass position.
3. Press both mirror selector buttons together to fold and unfold the mirrors (power-fold option).

The mirrors can be adjusted for up to 5 minutes after the ignition is switched off, provided the driver's door is not opened.

Note: *The power-fold feature operates only if the vehicle's speed is below 113 km/h (70 mph).*

Note: *A thermal cut-out temporarily disables the power-fold feature if the buttons are operated repeatedly.*

Note: *The door mirror heaters operate automatically, according to the external temperature and the heated rear screen operation.*

Note: *An amount of knock protection is designed into the door mirrors. If a door mirror is accidentally knocked inwards or manually folded inwards, the mirror head disengages from the folding mechanism. To re-engage the mechanism, fold, then unfold the door mirror using the button.*



The mirrors can be configured by a retailer/authorised repairer to automatically fold when the vehicle is locked, and unfold when it is unlocked.

Note: *If the door mirrors are folded using the buttons, they do not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.*

MIRROR DIP WHEN REVERSING

Selecting Reverse (**R**) gear causes both of the door mirrors to automatically adjust, providing an improved viewing angle for reversing.

The dipped position of the door mirrors is a preset position. In **R**, the door mirrors can be adjusted, but the new position cannot be saved.

When the gear selector is moved out of **R**, the door mirrors return to their previous position.

Note: *If the vehicle's speed exceeds 12 km/h (7 mph) in **R**, the door mirrors return to their normal driving position for enhanced visibility.*

Mirror dip can be enabled or disabled via the **Vehicle Settings** menu in the instrument panel. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

RADIO FREQUENCY (RF) TRANSCEIVER

Do not use the Radio Frequency (RF) transceiver with any garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature, as required by safety standards.

When programming the RF transceiver to a garage door opener or entry gate, make sure that the area is clear of people and objects. Potential harm or damage may occur, as the gate or garage door activates during programming.

The device may suffer from interference, if operated in the vicinity of a mobile or fixed station transmitter. Interference is likely to affect the hand-held transmitter, as well as the RF transceiver.

See **86, INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE**.

In some countries, the RF transceiver is also known as the HomeLink® Universal Transceiver.

The RF transceiver is located in the rear-view mirror. The RF transceiver can be programmed to transmit the signals of up to three different hand-held transmitters. The RF transceiver can be used to operate garage doors, entry gates, home lighting, security systems, or other RF-operated remote devices.

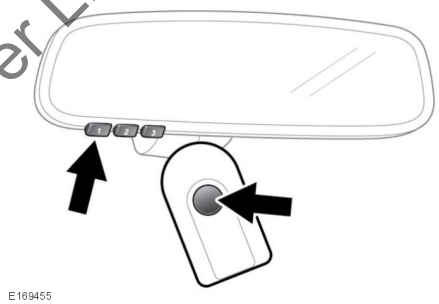
HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

BEFORE PROGRAMMING

Unplug the remote device if repeated operation of the hand-held transmitter is required during programming of the remote device. Repeated operation of the hand-held transmitter during programming may result in damage to the remote device.

For the best results, fit a new battery to the hand-held transmitter before programming. If the remote device's receiver is equipped with an antenna, make sure the antenna is extended.

PROGRAMMING



To program the Radio Frequency (RF) transceiver:

1. Switch the vehicle's ignition on.
2. Position the hand-held transmitter 25 to 75 mm from the rear-view mirror.
3. Simultaneously press and hold the memory button on the hand-held transmitter and the desired memory button on the RF transceiver. An indicator LED, located on the left side of the mirror, starts to flash slowly.
4. When the LED starts to flash quickly, release both buttons.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Garage door opener

To operate the remote device, press and hold the programmed memory button on the RF transceiver for 2 seconds.

If the LED illuminates continuously, the RF transceiver has been programmed successfully, and the remote device operates.

Note: *The button on the RF transceiver may need to be pressed up to three times.*

If the remote device does not operate, and the LED flashes quickly, further programming is required.

The following extra programming steps may require assistance from another person:

1. Locate the **smart/learn program** button on the remote device to be programmed.

   Note: *The name and location of this button may vary, depending on the manufacturer of the remote device.*

2. Press and release the **smart/learn program** button. Within 30 seconds, press and hold the desired memory button on the RF transceiver for 2 seconds.

   Note: *The memory button on the RF transceiver may need to be pressed and held for 2 seconds, a further two times.*

Note: *Some entry gate systems require the operator to cycle (press and re-press) the hand-held transmitter every 2 seconds during programming. If this is the case, continue to press and hold the memory button on the RF transceiver until the LED flashes quickly.*

The RF transceiver should now be programmed. Repeat the programming steps if further remote devices need to be programmed to the RF transceiver.

To operate a programmed remote device, press and hold the relevant memory button on the transceiver. Release the button when the device starts to operate.

REPROGRAMMING A SINGLE GARAGE DOOR OPENER BUTTON

To program a remote device to a previously programmed Radio Frequency (RF) transceiver memory button:

1. Press and hold the desired RF transceiver memory button. After approximately 20 seconds, the LED starts to flash slowly.
2. Follow the instructions described in step (**2**) onwards, as described in **PROGRAMMING**.

TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING

To erase all programming from the Radio Frequency (RF) transceiver:

1. Switch the vehicle's ignition on.
2. Simultaneously press and hold memory buttons **1** and **3** on the RF transceiver.

After approximately 10 seconds, the RF transceiver LED starts to flash. At this point, release both memory buttons on the RF transceiver. All programming is now erased from the RF transceiver.

Note: *Do not press and hold the buttons for longer than 20 seconds.*

INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE

If the vehicle is sold, it is recommended that all programming is erased from the Radio Frequency (RF) transceiver.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Garage door opener

For information on the range of compatible remote devices, or for assistance, contact a retailer/authorised repairer. Alternatively, visit the HomeLink® website: **www.homelink.com**.

Note: *Retain the original remote feature handset for future programming requirements.*

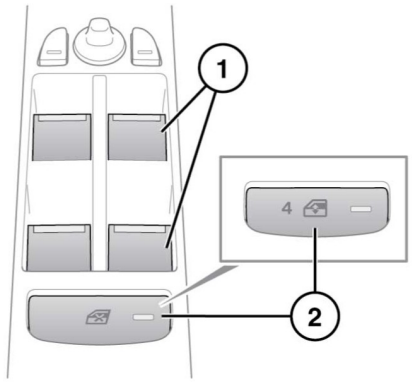
Note: *The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorised modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

ELECTRIC WINDOWS

To prevent accidental operation, never leave the smart key in the vehicle if children or animals are also left in the vehicle.



E183331

1. Window switches:

   Note: *Each switch has a 2-stage operation. Lightly press or pull and hold to manually operate to the required position. Alternatively, press or pull fully and release for one-touch operation. One-touch operation can be halted, at any time, by operating the switch again.*

   - Pull the front of the switch to partially or fully close.
   - Press the front of the switch to partially or fully open.

   5 door vehicles: The rear windows have a short drop feature for passenger comfort. The first press of a switch lowers the window a short distance, to give a flow of air. A second press lowers the window to its full extent. If a resonance or booming sound occurs when a rear window is open, lowering an adjacent front window by approximately 25 mm eliminates the condition.
   Convertible vehicles: When a door is opened, the window lowers by approximately 10 mm to allow clearance past the roof seal.

   Note: *The windows operate for 5 minutes after the engine is switched off, as long as none of the doors are opened.*

   Note: *Coupe models have fixed rear windows and a different switch pack.*

2. Rear window isolator or global operation switch:
   5 door vehicles: Press the switch to isolate the rear windows. The rear windows are isolated when the LED illuminates. Press the switch again to cancel.

   If children are carried in the rear seats, the isolator switch should be used to prevent operation of the windows. If the windows are operated by young children, there is a risk of serious injury or death.

   Convertible vehicles: All four windows can be fully opened or closed using the driver's window switch. Press the switch to activate global operation mode. The LED illuminates to confirm activation. When global operation mode is activated:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

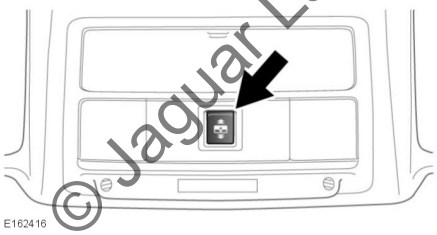
- Lightly press or pull and hold the driver's window switch to manually operate all four windows simultaneously.
- Pull fully and release the driver's window switch to close all four windows simultaneously.
- Press fully and release the driver's window switch to open all four windows simultaneously.

The global operation mode deactivates if any of the following occurs:

- 8 seconds has elapsed since activating global operation mode.
- All four windows have reached the fully open or closed position.
- Any other window switch is operated.

Note: *Anti-trap protection remains active during global operation of the windows. See* ***89, ANTI-TRAP PROTECTION****.*

ROOF BLIND



Roof blind open and close switch:

To open the blind, push from the rear of the switch, and release. The blind slides fully open.

To close the blind, push from the front of the switch to the first position and release. The blind fully closes. A further press stops movement of the blind.

Alternatively, push from the front of the switch to the second position and hold until the blind reaches the desired position, then release.

ANTI-TRAP PROTECTION

Closing a window or roof blind onto any part of the body can result in serious injury.

Before closing a window or the roof blind, make sure no occupants have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system, death or serious injury could occur.

Anti-trap protection is designed to stop window or roof blind movement if an obstruction or resistance is detected. Check the window or roof blind, and its aperture, and remove any obstructions, e.g., ice, etc.

If it is still necessary to raise the window, the override procedure is as follows:

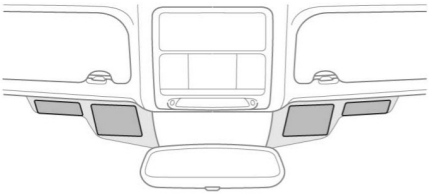
1. Attempt to close the window. Anti-trap prevents closure and lowers the window slightly.
2. Within 10 seconds, attempt to raise the window again. Anti-trap prevents closure and lowers the window slightly.
3. Attempt to close the window for a third time, this time hold the switch in the close position. The window raises while the switch is held. Hold until closed.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Note: *If this procedure fails to remove the blockage, or if the windows do not operate correctly, the window's operation may need to be reset. See* ***287, WINDOW RESET****.*

SOLAR ATTENUATING GLASS

The solar attenuating glass windscreen filters sunlight passing through a special laminated layer.



E167876

Electronic actuating cards, such as toll road payment cards or Radio Frequency (RF) ID tags, can be fixed at the dedicated locations on the inside of the windscreen. If these cards are located at any other part of a solar attenuating windscreen, the electronic scanners may not recognise them.

The fixing location is at the top of the windscreen, as shown, close to the interior rear-view mirror.

Note: *The electronic actuating card should be in the size appropriate location, on the driver's side of the windscreen.*

Note: *Transponders, mounted on the front number plate plinth, can be used as an alternative, dependent on the market and availability.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

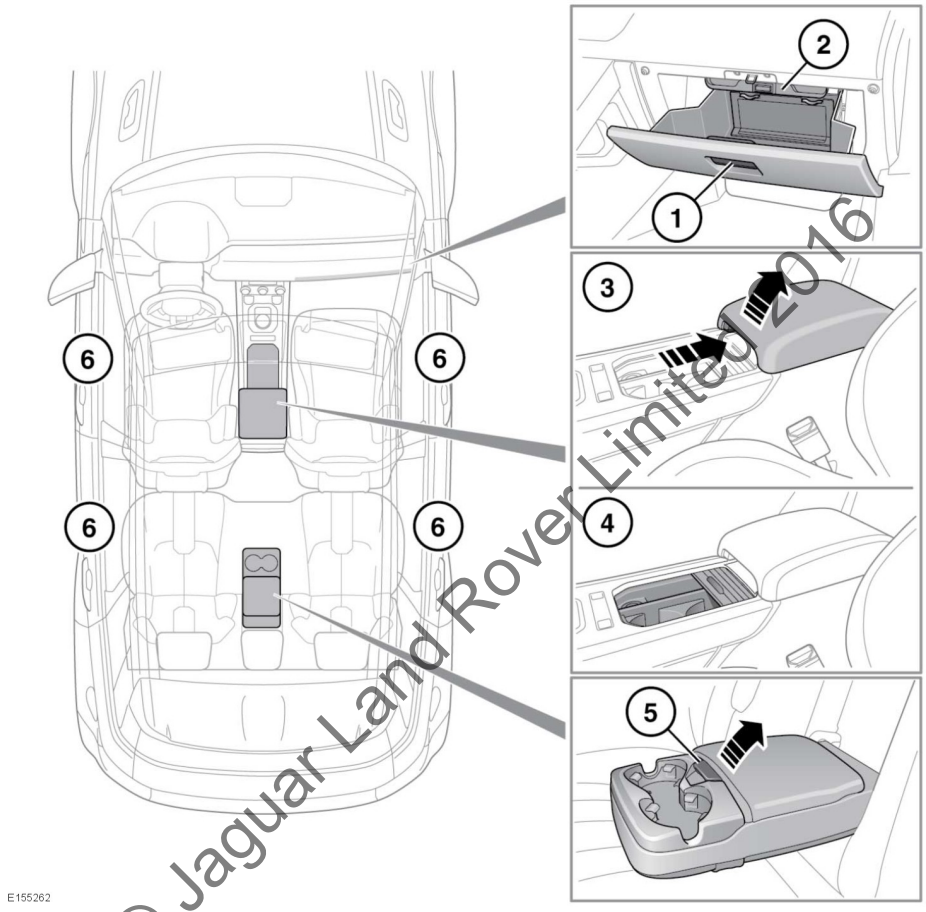
STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

Make sure that any items stored in the vehicle are secure and cannot move. If the vehicle is involved in an accident, or subject to sudden braking or a change of direction, loose items can cause serious injury.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Storage compartments

5 Seat and Coupe



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Storage compartment locations:

1. Glovebox.
2. Inside the glovebox is a drop-down storage area for the Owner's Handbook pack.
3. Sliding armrest and cubby box: Slide the armrest rearward to access the release lever.

   Pull the release lever and then raise the armrest to access the cubby box.

   ⚠ **To avoid personal injury, keep hands and fingers clear from the front and rear edges of the sliding armrest while opening and closing the cubby box.**
4. Slide back the cover to reveal the cup holders.

⚠ **Do not drink, or use the drinks holders when driving.**

5. Rear armrest storage and cup holders.

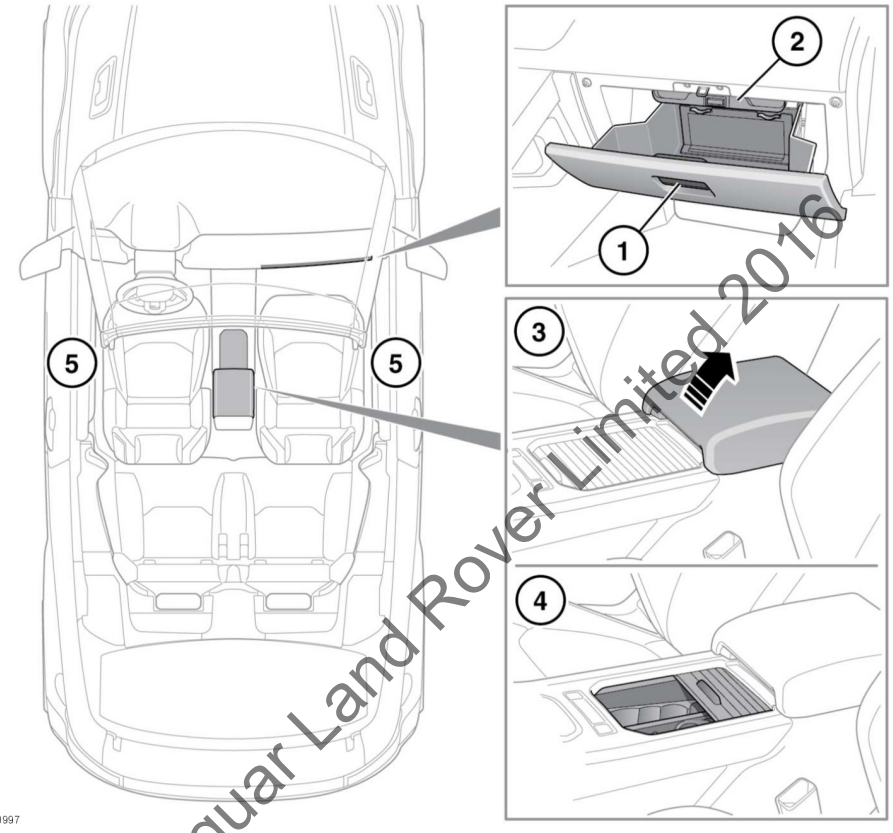
6. Front and *rear door storage areas.

* 5 door vehicles only.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Storage compartments

Convertible



Storage compartment locations:

1. Glovebox.

   Note: *The glovebox is automatically locked when the vehicle is locked.*

2. Inside the glovebox is a drop-down storage area for the Owner's Handbook pack.
3. Sliding armrest and cubby box: Slide the armrest rearward to access the release lever.

   Pull the release lever and then raise the armrest to access the cubby box.

   To avoid personal injury, keep hands and fingers clear from the front and rear edges of the sliding armrest while opening and closing the cubby box.

4. Slide back the cover to reveal the cup holders.

   Do not drink, or use the drinks holders when driving.

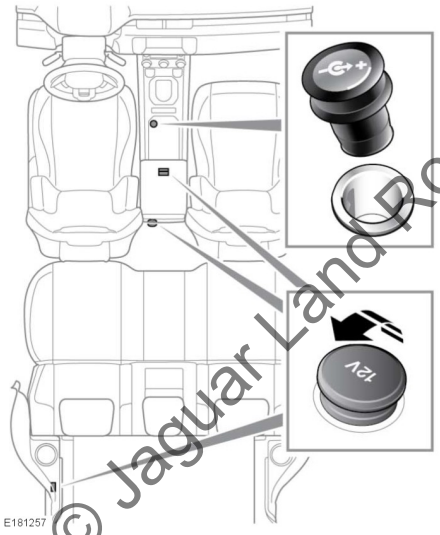
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

5. Front door storage areas.

AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS

Only use approved accessories. Using any other equipment may damage the vehicle's electrical system and/or cause battery discharge. If you are in any doubt, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

The engine should be running when using accessories for long periods. Failure to do so can discharge the battery.



Remove or lift the cover to access a 12V power socket.

Note: *The number and location of the power sockets varies depending on the vehicle type and specification.*

Note: *The 12V power sockets can be used to power approved accessories that use a maximum of 120 Watts.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Load carrying

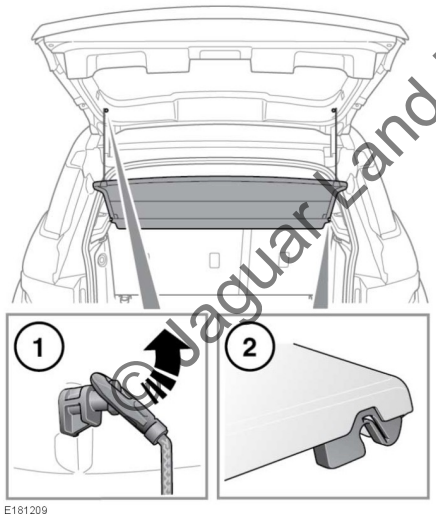
LOAD CARRYING

Never allow passengers to travel in the loadspace under any circumstances. All vehicle occupants should be seated correctly and wear a seat belt at all times when the vehicle is in motion.

Always make sure objects carried within the vehicle are secured properly.

LOADSPACE COVER

Never place objects on top of the loadspace cover. During an accident or sudden manoeuvre, loose objects can cause serious injury or death.



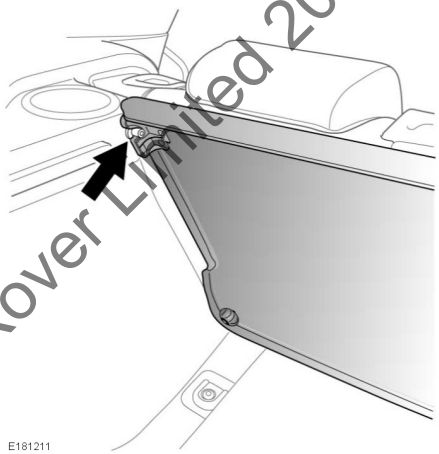
E181209

To remove the loadspace cover:

1. Release the two straps from the pins on the tailgate.
2. Lift the cover slightly, then pull the cover rearwards to release the cover's spring-loaded clips from the retaining pins on the loadspace side trim.

Storing the cover

Do not store the loadspace cover loose in the vehicle. During an accident or sudden manoeuvre, the loadspace cover could cause serious injury or death.

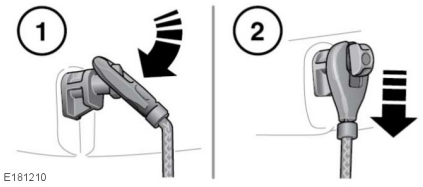

E181211

1. Remove the loadspace cover.
2. Fold the rear seats forward.
3. Position the cover vertically, approximately where the upright rear seatbacks are normally. The top surface of the cover must be facing forwards with the spring-loaded clips at the top.
4. Locate the cover's spring-loaded clips onto the retaining pins and click into place.
5. Return the rear seats to the upright, locked position.

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Refitting the cover

Locate the cover's spring-loaded clips onto the retaining pins. Push back the cover to fully engage the clips onto the pins.



To refit the straps:

1. Fit the straps over the pins on the tailgate.
2. Pull down lightly on the straps until they click into place.

ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

A loaded roof rack can reduce the stability of the vehicle, particularly when cornering and during crosswinds.

Driving off-road with a loaded roof rack is not recommended.

Fit only a roof rack system that is designed for use with the vehicle. For further information, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

The maximum load for an approved roof rack system is 75 kg, while driving on-road. Off-road driving reduces the limit to 50 kg. The weight of the approved roof rack system is not calculated as part of the load.

If an alternative roof rack system is used, the weight of that system must be included as part of the load weight.

Loads must be evenly distributed without overhanging the rack. After travelling 50 km (30 miles), check the security of the roof rack and any load.

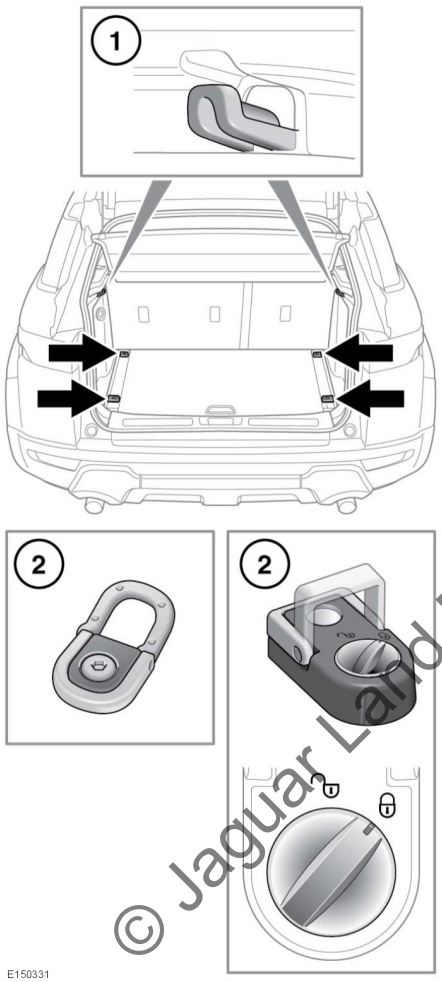
LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS

All items carried in the loadspace or luggage compartment areas should be properly secured.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Load carrying

5 Door and Coupe

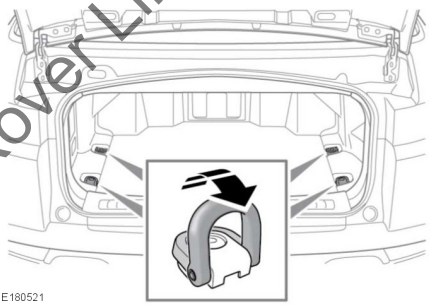


Using the fixed and adjustable lashing eyes:

1. Bag hooks: The bag hooks should only be used to secure light items such as shopping bags.
2. To assist in safely securing large items of luggage, four lashing eyes are located in the rear loadspace floor. If adjustable lashing eyes are fitted, first turn the locking button counter-clockwise to unlock. Press the button and slide to the required position in the luggage rail. Release the button to latch into position. Move the lashing eye slightly until a click is heard. The lashing eye is now secured. Turn the button clockwise to lock.

Note: *A range of approved luggage retention accessories is available from a retailer/authorised repairer.*

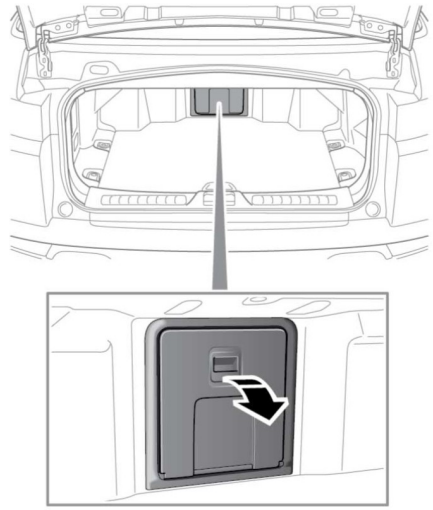
Convertible



To assist in safely securing large items of luggage, four lashing eyes are located in the rear luggage compartment floor.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

SKI HATCH



E180527

To use the ski hatch:

1. From inside the vehicle, lower the rear seat centre armrest.
2. From inside the loadspace, locate the ski hatch and press down on the release catch.
3. Lower the ski hatch.

Note: *The ski hatch is only available on the Convertible vehicles.*

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT EMERGENCY RELEASE

The mechanical luggage compartment release provides a means of escape in the event of someone being locked in the luggage compartment. Adults are advised to familiarise themselves with the operation of the release handle.



E187983

The release handle glows in the dark and is located on the inside of the luggage compartment closing panel. To open the luggage compartment closing panel from the inside, pull the handle while pushing the luggage compartment closing panel upwards.

Return the handle to its stowage position after use.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Convertible roof

OPENING THE ROOF

Before opening or closing the convertible roof, make sure that all occupants have moved their hands, fingers, hair, etc., clear of moving parts.

Do not attempt to operate the convertible roof at temperatures below -10°C, this may cause damage to the fabric.

If the convertible roof is operated above 50 km/h (30 mph), there is a risk of damage to the convertible roof.

Do not attempt to open the convertible roof manually, as damage to the linkage mechanism may occur.

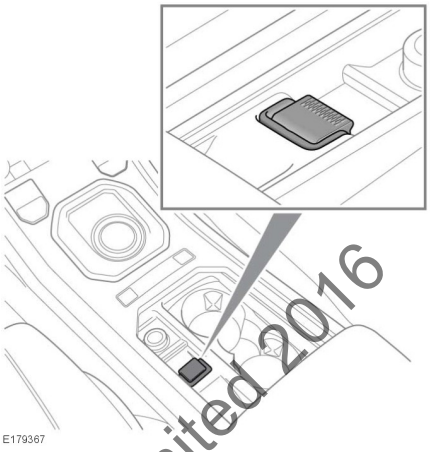
Do not place items in the roof's storage well.

Note: *If roof movement is inhibited, the message centre displays a warning message.*

Note: *Make sure that there is sufficient space above the vehicle before opening or closing the roof. Insufficient space may result in damage to the vehicle.*

Note: *It is inadvisable to operate the convertible roof system while moving off road.*

Note: *Before opening the convertible roof, make sure to remove any ice and snow. When removing ice or snow, do not use sharp objects or items that may cause damage to the fabric. An ice scraper can be used to clear the rear screen.*



The power-operated convertible roof is controlled by a switch located on the centre console, as illustrated. The ignition system must be switched on. The roof latches and unlatches automatically. The roof can be operated at speeds below 50 km/h (30 mph). However, for safety, do not open or close when the vehicle is being driven.

1. Make sure that the ignition is switched on.
2. Press and hold the front of the switch.
3. The door windows fully open. The roof unlatches and starts to move.
4. When the roof is fully open, an audible warning sounds and a message displays in the message centre.

   Note: *The roof's closing panels automatically close when the roof is in the fully stored position.*
5. Release the switch.

   Note: *If, at any period during the convertible roof's opening sequence, the switch is released, all movement of the convertible roof ceases.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

CLOSING THE ROOF

With the ignition switched on, pull and hold the front of the switch. Do not release the switch until the convertible roof is fully latched closed and the message centre displays a confirmation message. Continue to hold the switch to close the door windows. See **100, OPENING THE ROOF**.

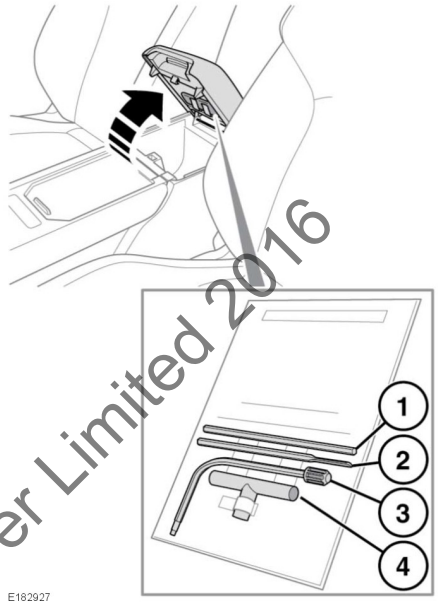
Note: *If, at any period during the convertible roof's closure sequence, the switch is released, all movement of the convertible roof ceases.*

MANUALLY CLOSING THE ROOF

In the event that the vehicle's systems do not close the convertible roof from the fully open position, then the manual closing procedure should be carried out.

Make sure that Park (P) is engaged, the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied, and the ignition is switched off.

Access the tools



The tool kit is stored in a wallet located on the underside of the cubby box lid.

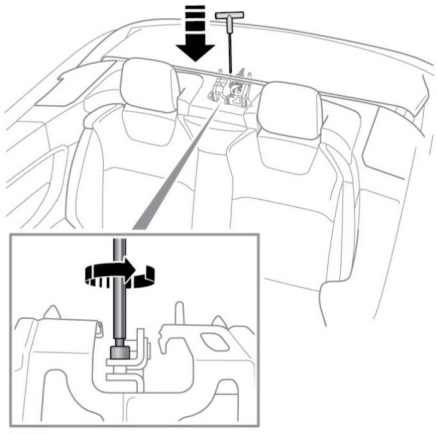
1. Allen key tool.
2. Flat blade tool.
3. L-bar.
4. T-bar.

Note: *The T-bar is used as a handle for the flat blade and allen key tools. Insert the appropriate end of the flat blade or allen key tool into the slot provided, making sure that it is secure.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

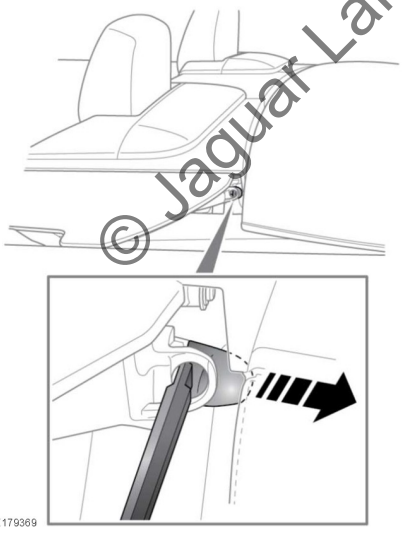
Convertible roof

Releasing and closing the roof


E179368

Attach the T-bar to the appropriate end of the allen key tool.

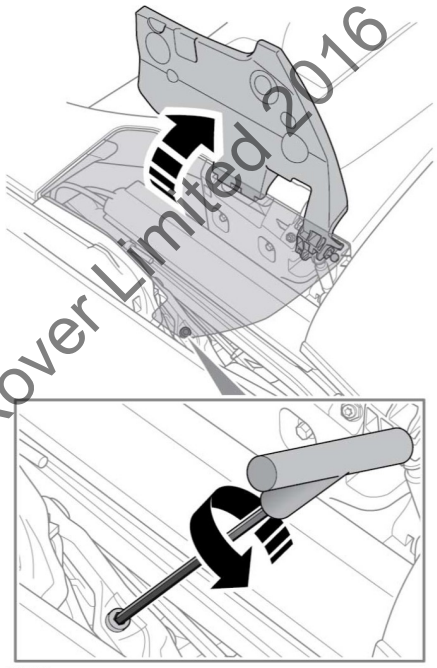
Insert the allen key tool through the gap in the trim panel, as illustrated. Rotate the release screw 7 turns counter-clockwise to release the down-lock mechanism.


E179369

Attach the T-bar to the appropriate end of the flat blade tool.

With the panel in the closed position, use the flat blade to lightly pry off the control rod ball socket.

Repeat this procedure on the other side of the vehicle.


E179370

Attach the T-bar to the appropriate end of the allen key tool.

Lift the panel. With the allen key, unscrew and remove the bolt.

Repeat this procedure on the other side of the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016



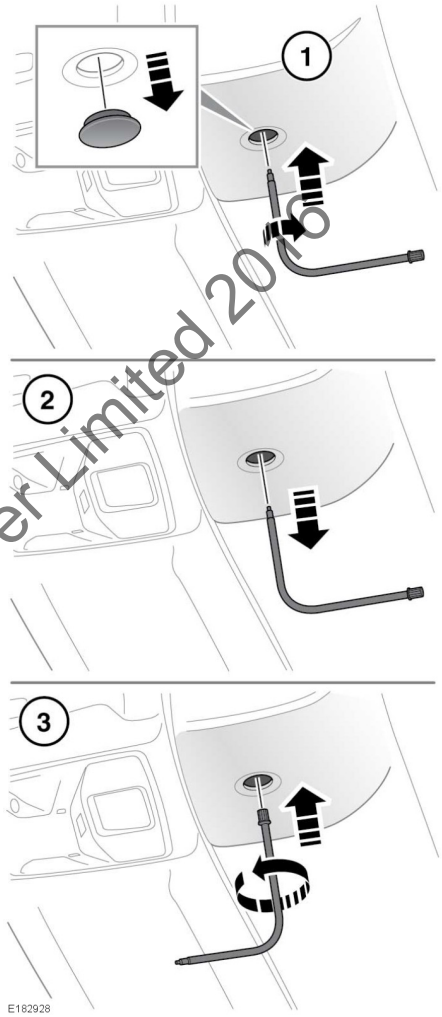
Carefully raise the roof to the closed position. An increase in effort is required to reach the fully closed position.

Note: *Make sure the roof's front latch pins are aligned into the roof header latch locks.*

To make sure that the convertible roof is fully closed, apply external downward pressure to each of the front latch pins. The latch pins are located at the front of the convertible roof.

Note: *Take care not to damage the convertible roof or any other vehicle component.*

Locking the roof



Make sure that the motor shaft is removed before attempting to turn the motor. Any attempt to turn the motor using the motor shaft may result in damage to the tooling and/or motor shaft.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Convertible roof

Care must be taken when screwing the tool into the motor shaft. Rotate clockwise, until a resistance is felt, and stop. Any attempt to over tighten may result in damage to the tooling and/or motor shaft.

1. Remove the access plug from the centre of the roof header trim. Insert the screw thread end of the L-bar tool into the motor shaft. To fully engage rotate clockwise until resistance is felt, it does not need to be tight.
2. Pull the tool to remove the motor shaft.

   Note: *A strong, positive downward pull is required.*

   Note: *Remove the motor shaft from the tool and store it in the vehicle.*
3. Apply external downward pressure to each of the front latch pins, located at the front of the convertible roof. Push the alternate, large serrated end of the L-bar tool into the motor and turn a complete revolution counter-clockwise. Remove the tool and replace the access plug.

   Note: *Take care not to damage the convertible roof or any other vehicle component.*
4. Return the tools to their stored position.

Note: *Do not attempt to operate the convertible roof until a repair has been carried out by a retailer/authorised repairer.*

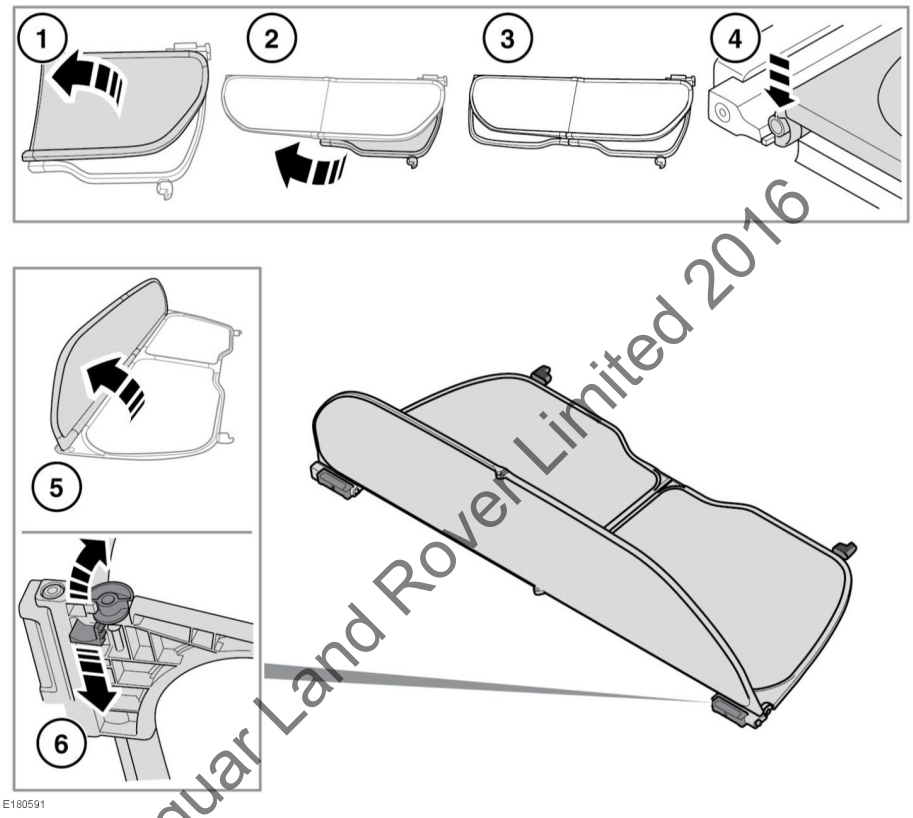
WIND DEFLECTOR

When travelling with the convertible roof in an open position, and to improve front passenger comfort, a wind deflector can be fitted to your vehicle.

Note: *For vehicles supplied with a wind deflector, it is stored in the rear loadspace.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Unfolding the wind deflector



E180591

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Unfold the wind deflector as illustrated in steps (**1**), (**2**), and (**3**).

Clip the ends of the wind deflector together (**4**) before raising it to the vertical position (**5**).

Note: *An audible click confirms that the catch is engaged.*

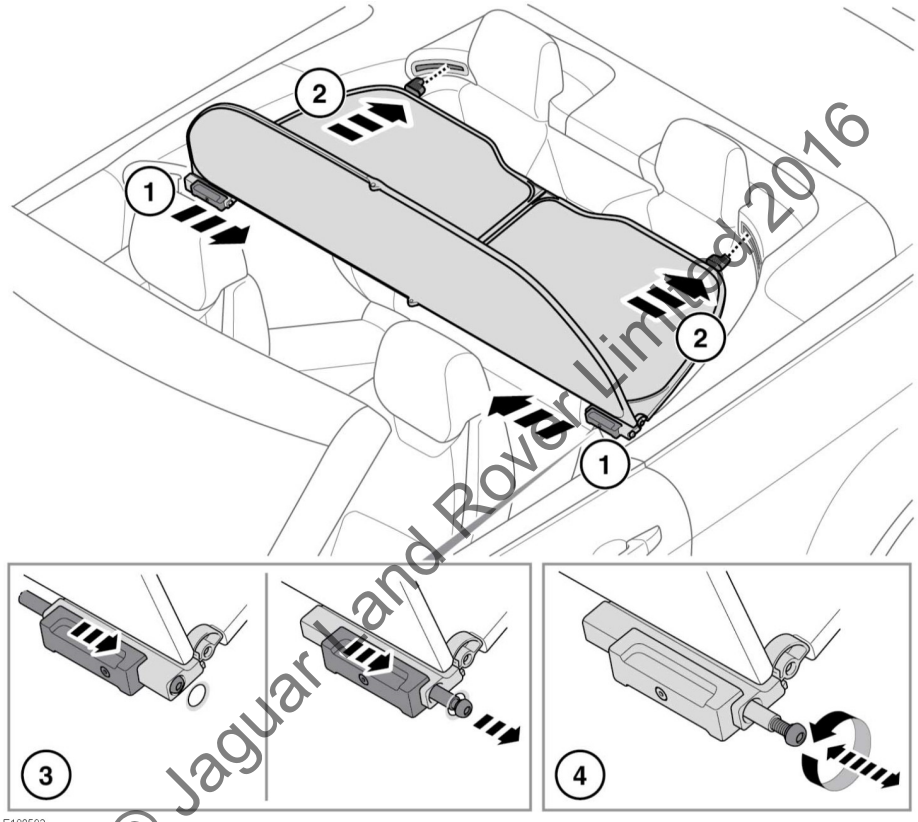
When re-folding the wind deflector, press and hold the release mechanism. Disengage the locking catch (**6**).

Convertible roof

Fitting the wind deflector

With the wind deflector fitted, passengers should not travel in the rear of the vehicle.

Do not place items on the wind deflector.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

1. Retract the wind deflector's front securing lugs.
2. Locate the rear securing lugs into the slots provided, as illustrated.
3. Locate the front securing lugs into the holes on each side of the vehicle.

   Note: *An audible click confirms that the lugs are engaged.*
4. Check that the wind deflector is securely in place.
   If necessary, adjust the length of the front securing lugs, using a suitable tool.

   Note: *Allow around 1 to 3 mm of free play.*

To remove the wind deflector, reverse the fitting procedure.

Note: *Make sure to store the wind deflector when it is not in use.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

TOWING WEIGHTS

For details of the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), the Gross Train Weight (GTW), and the front and rear axle weights, see **348, WEIGHTS**.

Note: *Include the trailer's nose weight when calculating the GVW. Use a proprietary nose weight gauge to determine the trailer's nose weight.*

Note: *When calculating the vehicle's rear axle load, the vehicle's payload weights must also be considered. Include the combined weights of: all the rear passengers, the loadspace, roof rack, accessory equipment, and the nose weight.*

Trailer	Variant	On-road (kg)	Off-road (kg)
Maximum towing mass of unbraked trailer.	All vehicles.	750	750
Maximum towing mass of braked trailer.	Convertible vehicles.	1 500	750
	All other petrol vehicles.	1 800	750
	Diesel with manual gearbox with 2 Wheel Drive (2WD).	1 500	750
	Diesel with manual gearbox with 4 Wheel Drive (4WD).	1 800	750
	Diesel with automatic gearbox.	2 000	750
Nose weight (certified).*	Convertible vehicles.	100	100
	All other vehicles*.	120	120
Nose weight (design).	All vehicles.	150	150
Tow bar mounted accessories.	All vehicles.	66.8	66.8

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

* The nose weight (certified) can be increased to the nose weight (design) (not Convertible). Make sure not to exceed the maximum rear axle load, the GVW, and the GTW.

For further information, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer and quote the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). See **343, LABEL LOCATIONS**.

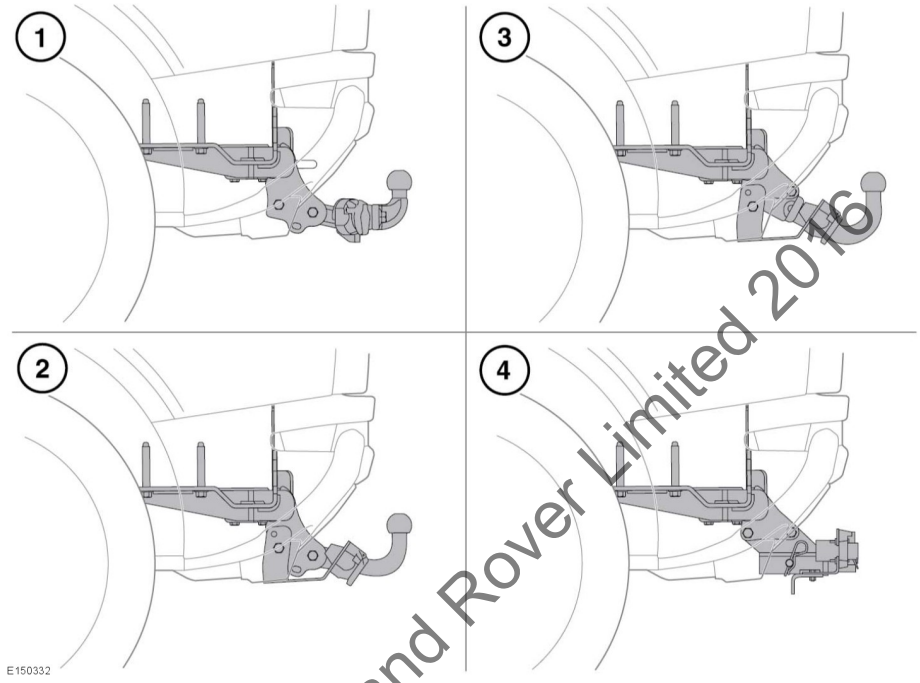
Europe only

The stated GVW can be increased by a maximum of 100 kg if the vehicle's maximum road speed is limited to 97 km/h (60 mph). See **348, WEIGHTS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Towing

TOW BALL OPTIONS



1. Bolt-on tow ball.
2. Fixed swan neck tow ball.
3. Detachable tow ball.
4. Trailer hitch tow bar (Australia only).

TRAILER STABILITY ASSIST (TSA)

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) does not operate in the event of the trailer jack-knifing.

The ability of TSA may be reduced when travelling on slippery surfaces.

Note: *TSA does not operate when Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is switched off.*

When a trailer is attached, TSA automatically detects when trailer sway is developing. TSA then gradually reduces the vehicle's speed, by cutting engine power and applying the brakes to help regain control.

HITCH ASSIST

Note: *Only use towing equipment that is approved by the vehicle manufacturer. Non-approved towing equipment may adversely affect the accuracy and performance of the vehicle's towing features.*

Hitch assist aids the process of reversing the vehicle to a trailer's tow hitch.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

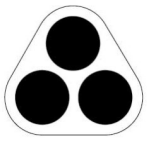
Operate as follows:

1. Select Reverse (**R**) to automatically display a rear-view image on the touch screen.
2. Dependent on the specification of the vehicle's camera system, use one of the following options:
   - Touch the **Hitch Assist** icon to display the guidance lines.
   - Touch the settings icon to display the **CAMERA SETTINGS** menu. Select **ON** from the **Hitch Assist** option, to display the guidance lines.
3. Reverse the vehicle towards the trailer.
4. As the vehicle closes to within 600 mm of the trailer's tow hitch, an automated zoom feature operates to enlarge the view.
5. Continue the manoeuvre until the vehicle and trailer are as close as required.

TOW ASSIST

Tow assist displays the predicted path of both the vehicle and the trailer, as coloured trajectory lines on the touch screen.

Note: *Only use towing equipment that is approved by the vehicle manufacturer. Non-approved towing equipment may adversely affect the accuracy and performance of the vehicle's towing features.*



E134952

Tow assist requires a tracking target sticker to be affixed to a connected trailer, in the same orientation as illustrated. To display the correct sticker location for the trailer, follow the on-screen instructions for the new trailer configuration menus on the touch screen.

Note: *The tracking target sticker must be affixed at a distance of between 1 m and 2 m from the rear of the vehicle. The tracking target sticker must be affixed to a flat vertical surface that is parallel to the rear of the vehicle. Tow assist does not operate if these conditions are not met.*

Tow assist automatically activates, when the vehicle detects a trailer's electrical plug is correctly attached to the vehicle's electrical towing socket. See **112, TRAILER ELECTRICAL CONNECTION**.

Switch the ignition off when connecting to the vehicle's electrical towing socket. After connection, switch the ignition on, to enable the vehicle to detect the connection.

Note: *If the ignition is switched on during connection, then opening and closing the driver's door enables the vehicle to detect the connection.*

When an electrical towing socket connection is detected, the touch screen guides the driver through a set of menus. Create a new trailer profile, or select an existing trailer profile.

When connecting a new trailer, the setup screen guides the driver through a series of configuration options for the connected trailer. When complete, the vehicle needs to be driven with the steering wheel in the straight ahead position, to calibrate the trailer. The status displays on the touch screen. Select **OK**, when complete.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Note: *Tow assist should not be used until the trailer calibration is complete.*

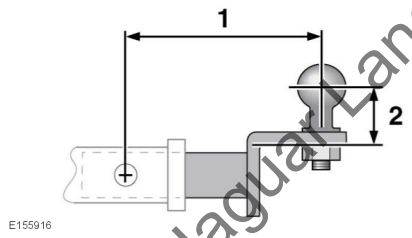
In the event of persistent problems with the configuration or calibration of a trailer, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

When a trailer configuration is created, or selected, the touch screen automatically displays the trailer reverse view, when Reverse (**R**) is selected. The trailer reverse view touch screen display has two options. Select **Rear Camera** for a full rear view, or select **Wing Mirror Cameras** for a kerb view of each side.

FITTING THE DETACHABLE TOW BALL

Fit and remove instructions are supplied with this accessory fit item. Make sure they are kept in a safe place.

TRAILER HITCH



When fitting a trailer hitch tow ball to a trailer hitch tow bar, the following dimensions must be adhered to:

1. The maximum length, when fitted, should be 178 mm.
2. To achieve the maximum ball height, a trailer hitch tow ball with a rise of 68 mm is recommended.

If required, consult a retailer/authorised repairer for the latest information.

TRAILER ELECTRICAL CONNECTION

Connect only approved electrical circuits, which are in good condition, to the vehicle's electrical tow bar socket. Failure to do so may result in damage, or affect the correct operation of the vehicle's electrical systems.

When a trailer's electrical connection is made, the instrument panel's trailer warning indicator flashes, when the vehicle's direction indicators are operated. If the trailer warning indicator does not flash, check the trailer's electrical connection. Also check the operation of the trailer's direction indicators. See **70, TRAILER DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)**.

The following information confirms if a trailer, or an LED lighting board, is compatible for use with this vehicle. If these conditions are not met, the vehicle will not detect the electrical connection of a trailer, or an LED lighting board.

Function	Minimum load		Maximum load	
	Amps	Watts	Amps	Watts
Brake lights.	1.75	21	5	60
Direction indicators.	1.75	21	5	60
Front side marker lights.	-	-	10	120

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Function	Minimum load		Maximum load	
	Amps	Watts	Amps	Watts
Rear side marker lights.	-	-	10	120
Reverse lights.	-	-	5	60
Fog lights.	-	-	5	60
Permanent battery feed.	-	-	15	180
Ignition feed.	-	-	15	180

ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

Do not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), maximum rear axle weight, maximum trailer weight, or nose weight. Exceeding any of these limits could cause instability and a loss of control, resulting in serious injury or death.

Do not loop the breakaway cable or safety chain over the tow ball, as it may slide off.

Make sure to perform the following essential towing checks:

- To maintain the vehicle's stability, the trailer's nose weight should not exceed 7% of the trailer's gross weight.
- The trailer's nose weight must be at least a minimum of 4% of the trailer's gross weight.
- When towing a trailer with more than one axle, load the trailer to achieve even weight distribution between the axles.
- When calculating the laden weight of the trailer, remember to include the weight of the trailer, plus the weight of the load.
- If the load can be divided between the vehicle and trailer, loading more weight into the vehicle generally improves stability. Do not exceed the vehicle's weight limits.
- Increase the rear tyre pressures on the towing vehicle to those for the maximum vehicle loading conditions.
- Make sure that a suitable breakaway cable, safety chain, or secondary coupling is used. Refer to the trailer manufacturer's instructions for guidance.
- Always connect the breakaway cable or safety chain to the provided connection point. Do not loop it over the tow ball.
- Make sure that the tow ball is secure.
- Check the operation of all the lights on the trailer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Towing

TOWING A TRAILER

Only fit towing accessories approved by the vehicle manufacturer. Always use the towing accessories correctly, according to the manufacturer's instructions. Using non-approved towing accessories may adversely affect the handling and stability of the vehicle, resulting in serious injury or death.

The vehicle's towing eyes and lashing points are not designed for towing a trailer. Never use them for this purpose. Doing so may cause them to fail, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never exceed the maximum weights for either the vehicle or the trailer. Doing so can cause accelerated wear and damage to the vehicle, and adversely affect the vehicle's stability and braking. Serious injury or death can also result from a possible loss of control, a vehicle rollover, or a crash.

Do not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), maximum rear axle weight, maximum trailer weight, or the trailer's nose weight. Doing so can cause accelerated wear and damage to the vehicle, and adversely affect the vehicle's stability and braking. Serious injury or death can also result from a possible loss of control, a vehicle rollover, or a crash.

Note: *When calculating the vehicle's rear axle weight, the vehicle's payload weights must also be included. Hence, add the combined weights of all the rear passengers, the loadspace, roof rails, accessory equipment, and the nose weight.*

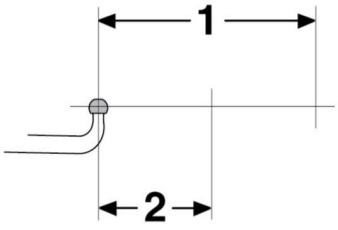
Note: *Include the trailer's nose weight when calculating the GVW.*

Note: *A reduction in the performance of the Air Conditioning (A/C) system is a normal function under high load towing conditions.*

Engine power output always reduces with increased altitude. At 1 000 m above sea level, and for every extra 1 000 m, deduct 10% from the Gross Train Weight (GTW). See **108, TOWING WEIGHTS**.

TOW BALL MOUNTED ACCESSORIES

Before fitting a tow ball mounted accessory, make sure that it has been approved by the vehicle manufacturer. The use of unsuitable equipment can result in severe damage to the tow ball and the tow bar.



E178990

Before fitting an accessory to the tow ball, observe the following guidelines:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

1. The attached accessory must not protrude more than 700 mm from the tow ball.
2. The centre of gravity of the mounted equipment and load combined should not exceed a distance of 390 mm from the tow ball. The maximum weight at this distance must not exceed 66.8 kg.

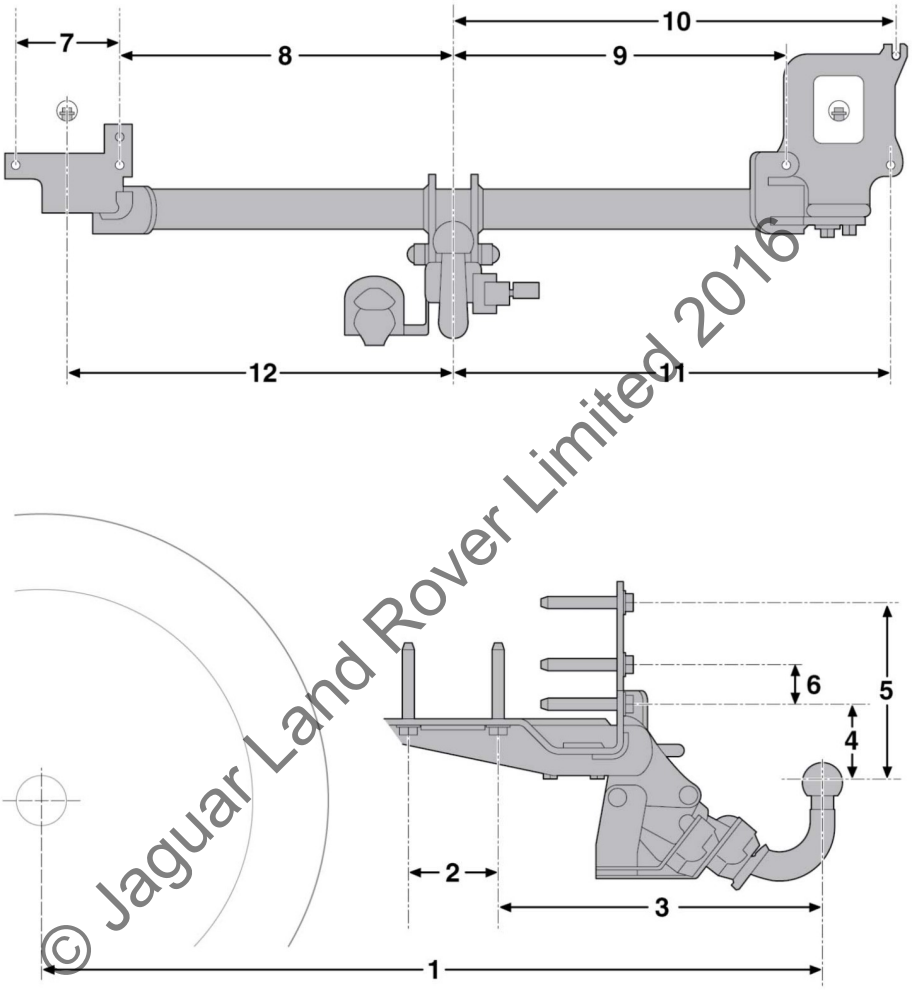
Note: *The forces exerted by the trailer's nose weight and tow ball mounted accessories are different in nature, so a separate limit applies to both.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

TOW BAR DIMENSIONS AND MOUNTING POINTS

Note: *The following dimensions refer to towing equipment officially released by the vehicle manufacturer.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016



E179966

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Towing

Dimension	mm
1	870
2	110
3	405
4	83
5	220
6	32
7	130
8	415
9	415
10	545
11	550
12	480

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

STARTING THE ENGINE

Never start the engine and leave it running when the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Exhaust gases are poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.

If the engine fails to start, do not continue cranking, as this will discharge the battery. Damage may also be caused to the catalytic converter due to unburnt fuel passing through the exhaust.

Note: *The smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container, or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone, laptop (including when inside a laptop bag), games console, etc. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting keyless entry, an engine start, or the engine start backup procedure.*

To start the engine:

1. Make sure a valid smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure Park (**P**) or neutral is selected.
3. Automatic transmission: Press the brake pedal firmly.
   Manual transmission: Press the clutch pedal firmly.
4. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

Note: *For vehicles with a diesel engine, the delay period before cranking begins is longer in low ambient temperatures. The extended delay period is due to extended glow plug operation. During this extended delay period, the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) must remain firmly pressed.*

Once the engine starts, release the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission), if it is safe to do so.

SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

Before switching off the engine, it is recommended that the vehicle is stationary. Make sure the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied and the transmission is in Park (**P**) (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission).

Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.

The engine now stops. The vehicle's ignition system also switches off.

To switch off the engine while the vehicle is moving:

When the vehicle is moving, it is not advisable to switch off the engine. However, if a situation arises where engine switch-off is urgent, the following procedure applies:

1. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button for longer than 2 seconds, or
2. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button twice within 3 seconds.

With either method, the message **Engine Stop Button Pressed** is displayed in the message centre.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Starting the engine

SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION

To switch on the vehicle's ignition system without starting the engine:

1. Automatic transmission: Make sure that a valid smart key is inside the vehicle and that the brake pedal is not pressed.

   If the brake pedal is pressed when the engine **START/STOP** button is pressed, the engine starts.

   Manual transmission: Make sure that a valid smart key is inside the vehicle and that the clutch pedal is not pressed.

   If the clutch pedal is pressed when the engine **START/STOP** button is pressed, the engine starts.

2. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button until the instrument panel warning lamps illuminate.
3. Release the engine **START/STOP** button.

ROLLING RESTART

If the engine is switched off while the vehicle is moving, a rolling restart can be initiated. To initiate a rolling restart:

- Automatic transmission: Select Neutral (**N**) and press the engine **START/STOP** button.
- Manual transmission: Firmly press the clutch pedal and simultaneously press the engine **START/STOP** button.

Note: *The engine **START/STOP** button is inhibited for 2 seconds after the engine has been switched off.*

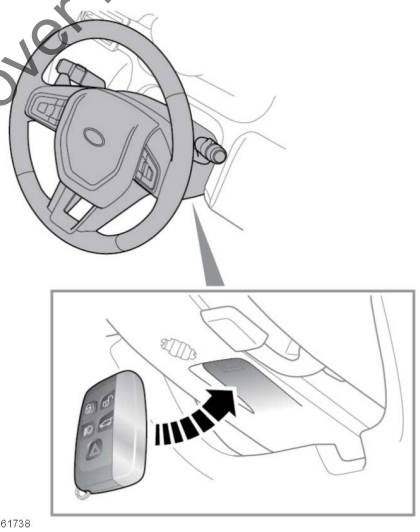
ENGINE START BACKUP

The engine start backup procedure can be used to disarm the alarm and start the engine if either of the following occur:

- The vehicle is unlocked using the emergency key blade.
- The smart key is not detected by the vehicle.

The engine start backup procedure can only be used if either of the following messages are displayed in the message centre:

- **Smart Key Not Recognised - Reposition**.
- **Place As Shown and Press Start Button**.



E161738

1. Position the smart key flat against the underside of the steering column, with the buttons facing downwards.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Note: *There are markings on the steering column to help locate the correct position.*

2. While holding the smart key in position:
   Automatic transmission: Firmly press the brake pedal.
   Manual transmission: Firmly press the clutch pedal.
3. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.

Once the engine starts, release the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission), if it is safe to do so.

If the smart key is not recognised, or the engine fails to start, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

IF THE ENGINE FAILS TO START

All vehicles

If the engine fails to start when the engine START/STOP button is pressed, and the vehicle has been in a recent collision, seek qualified assistance.

If the engine fails to start, and a valid smart key is inside the vehicle, a check must be made to determine the cause. To do this:

1. Switch on the vehicle's ignition. See **120, SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION**.
2. Check the instrument panel for any illuminated warning lamps and the message centre for warning messages. Seek qualified assistance, if necessary. See **64, WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS** and **59, WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES**.
3. Switch off the vehicle's ignition.

Alternatively, if the engine fails to start, the alarm system may need to be reset. To reset the alarm system, lock and unlock the vehicle. See **9, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE**.

If the engine still fails to start, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

Petrol vehicles only

If the engine persistently fails to start, carry out the following steps:

1. Make sure that a valid smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure that Park (**P**) or neutral is selected.
3. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button until the warning lamps in the instrument panel illuminate.
4. Firmly press the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission).
5. Slowly press the accelerator pedal and hold it in the fully pressed position.
6. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. The engine begins to crank.
7. Release the accelerator pedal when the engine starts.

Once the engine starts, release the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission), if it is safe to do so.

If the engine still fails to start, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

ENGINE PRE-HEATER

The fitting of an engine pre-heater does not eliminate the need for antifreeze.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Starting the engine

Engines are more difficult to start when the ambient temperature is very low. In geographical areas where temperatures below -10°C are experienced frequently, it is advisable to fit an engine pre-heater. The pre-heater has an insulated connector at the front of the vehicle, which is connected to a mains supply using a suitable extension cable. The pre-heater can remain in use overnight, if required. Typically, an engine pre-heater uses between 0.4 and 1 kWh.

For further information, consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

AUTO STOP/START

Always disable the auto stop/start system before wading. Failure to do so could cause damage to the vehicle.

The auto stop/start system is designed to improve fuel efficiency and is automatically activated when the vehicle's ignition is switched on. Unless it is required to support other vehicle systems, the engine switches off if the vehicle is stationary, e.g., at traffic lights. When the engine stops, it is referred to as an auto stop.

When the brake pedal is released, or a drive gear is selected, the engine automatically restarts. When the engine restarts, it is referred to as an auto start.

Operation of the auto stop/start system is indicated by a status icon in the message centre. See **70, AUTO STOP/START (GREEN)**.

Note: *When activated, the auto stop/start system does not always stop the engine when the vehicle is stationary. The system may restart the engine before setting off.*

TRIGGERING AN AUTO STOP

To trigger an auto stop in vehicles with an automatic transmission, drive forward with Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**) selected, and stop the vehicle. Fully press the brake pedal to make sure the vehicle is stationary.

To trigger an auto stop in vehicles with a manual transmission, drive forward and stop the vehicle. Fully press the brake pedal to make sure the vehicle is stationary. Select neutral and fully release the clutch pedal.

The following conditions prevent an auto stop:

- The external temperature is less than approximately 0°C.
- The external temperature is more than approximately 40°C.
- The engine or other vehicle systems have not reached their optimum operating temperatures.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- Demand from the climate control system requires the engine to be running, e.g., when in defrost mode.
- The vehicle's battery charge is low.
- The auto stop/start system is deactivated.
- After reversing, the vehicle speed has not exceeded 16 km/h (10 mph).
- A paddle shift has been used to select a gear (automatic transmission vehicles only).

TRIGGERING AN AUTO START

To trigger an auto start on vehicles with an automatic transmission, release the brake pedal with Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**) selected.

To trigger an auto start on vehicles with a manual transmission, fully press the clutch pedal before selecting a gear.

The engine also restarts if one of the following occurs:

- The auto stop/start system is deactivated.
- Reverse (**R**) gear is selected.
- Demand from the climate control system increases.
- The vehicle begins to move.
- The vehicle's battery charge becomes low.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

- The accelerator pedal is pressed (automatic transmission vehicles only).
- A paddle shift is used to select a gear (automatic transmission vehicles only).

DEACTIVATING AUTO STOP/START



To deactivate the auto stop/start system, press the auto stop/start button. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

When the auto stop/start system is deactivated the message centre momentarily displays the message **Auto Stop/Start Off**. A status icon is also displayed. See **70, AUTO STOP/START OFF (WHITE)**.

If the auto stop/start button is pressed while the system is unable to operate, the message centre momentarily displays the message **Auto Stop/Start not available**.

Note: *The auto stop/start system automatically reactivates the next time the vehicle's ignition is switched on.*

DRIVER EXIT

If the vehicle is left in a driveable condition with the engine running, the driver exit feature does not prevent the vehicle from moving.

The driver exit feature is only active when an auto stop has taken place and the engine is not running. To prevent the vehicle from being inadvertently left in a driveable condition, the vehicle detects when a driver is not present. If this is the case, the system automatically switches off the ignition system. Once the vehicle's ignition is switched off, the vehicle can be locked, if required. See **22, LOCK CONFIRMATION**.

Automatic transmission

If Drive (**D**), Sport (**S**), or Neutral (**N**) is selected, the driver exit feature switches the vehicle's ignition off if the following conditions exist:

- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled, and:
- The brake pedal is released.

If Park (**P**) is selected, the driver exit feature switches the vehicle's ignition off if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled.

Manual transmission

The driver exit feature switches the vehicle's ignition off if the following conditions exist:

- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled, and:
- The driver's door is opened.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that the vehicle is stationary. Select Park (P). Apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB). Switch the engine off. The vehicle can move unexpectedly with any other gear position selected, which may result in death or serious injury.

Never select **P** while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

Never select Reverse (**R**) while the vehicle is in forward motion. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

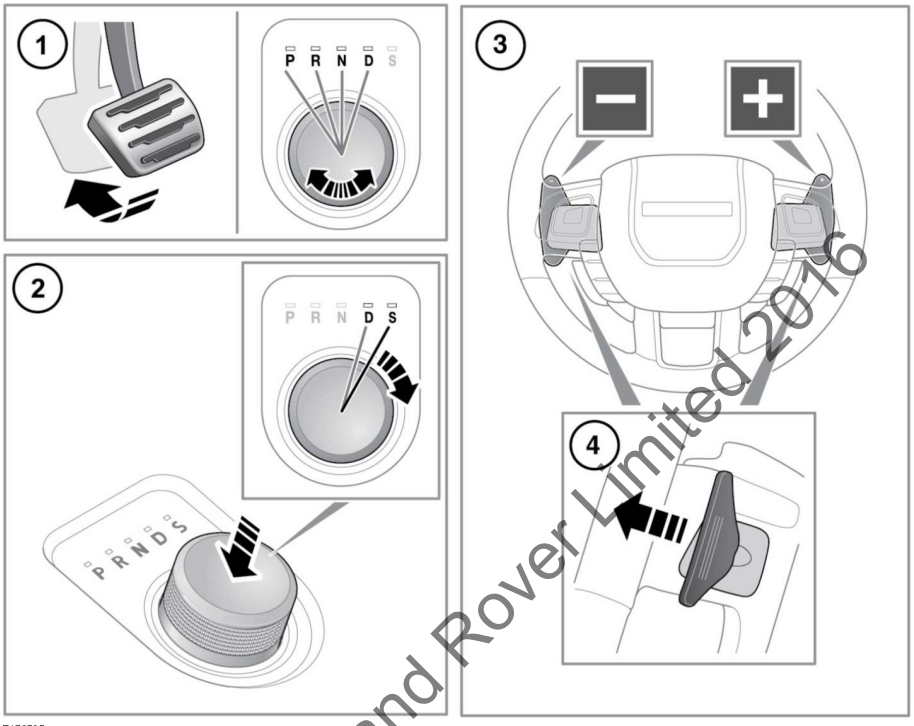
Never select a forward gear while the vehicle is moving backward. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

Do not press the accelerator pedal when making a gear selection. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

Do not allow the vehicle to remain stationary for a prolonged period, with a drive gear selected and the engine running. In this event, always select **P** or Neutral (**N**) and apply the EPB. The vehicle may move unexpectedly with any other gear position selected.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Transmission



E176795

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

The selection status of the gear selector and the steering wheel's paddle shifts, is displayed in the message centre.

When the engine starts, the gear selector elevates from its lowered, stored position and the transmission remains engaged in **P**.

1. To select Drive (**D**), **N**, **R** or **P**, press the brake pedal and then rotate the gear selector to the required position. The relevant indicator lamp, by the gear selector, illuminates to confirm selection.

When in **D**, gear changing is fully automatic. The gear change shift points are determined by the accelerator pedal position and the vehicle's current speed.
To achieve rapid acceleration (kickdown) while in **D**, quickly press the accelerator pedal to its full travel. When the accelerator pedal is relaxed, normal automatic gear changing resumes.

Note: *If pressure is applied to the gear selector before the brake pedal is pressed, the selected gear may not be available. In this situation, remove pressure from the gear selector, make sure that the brake pedal is pressed and then select the required gear again.*

2. To select Sport (**S**) mode from **D**, press the gear selector down and rotate to **S**. The relevant indicator lamp, by the gear selector, illuminates to confirm selection.

   Note: *Before selecting **D**, **R**, **N** or **P**, make sure that the vehicle is stationary and the brakes are applied.*
   The transmission remains in the lower gears for longer, improving mid-range performance.
   To deselect **S** mode, rotate the gear selector back to **D**.

3. Steering wheel paddle shifts: Allows manual gear selection, while the selector is in either the **D** or **S** positions. Lightly pull the left side paddle shift for down-shifts or lightly pull the right side paddle shift for up-shifts.

   Note: *The paddle shifts can be configured to be active in both **D** and **S**, or active in **S** only. Use the **Vehicle Settings** instrument panel menu. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.*
   The paddle shifts can be effective when rapid acceleration and engine braking are required.
   A gear shift indicator warning lamp illuminates briefly at the recommended (up-shift) gear change point. See **69, GEAR SHIFT (GREEN)**.
   With **D** selected, each manual gear change via the steering wheel paddle shifts, is temporary. It is held while the driver is accelerating, decelerating, cornering or continually requesting manual gear shift changes via the steering wheel paddle shifts.

   Note: *If continued use of the steering wheel paddle shifts, is required, select **S**.*

4. To manually change gear, briefly pull the relevant steering wheel paddle shift.
   To exit manual gear selection mode, pull and hold the right side paddle shift for approximately one second. The automatic transmission returns to operation in **D** or **S**, dependent on the current position of the gear selector. Alternatively, rotate the gear selector from **S** to **D**. This returns to automatic transmission operation in **D**.

If the gear selector is obstructed, remove the obstruction and then start the engine. The gear selector should elevate.

If the gear selector fails to elevate and there is no obstruction, a system fault is indicated. The gear selector can still be used in the lowered position. In this event, **P** is not automatically selected, when the engine is switched off. **P** must be selected manually. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer at the earliest opportunity.

LIMP-HOME MODE

If a transmission system fault is detected, a warning message is displayed in the message centre. In this event, only limited gears may become available. If possible, the vehicle should be carefully driven to the nearest place of safety. In this event, seek qualified assistance.

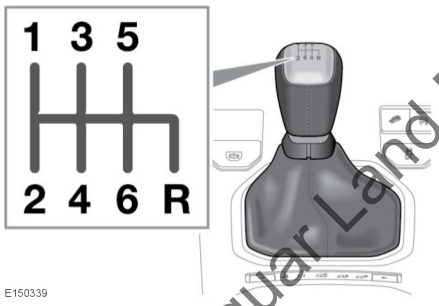
©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Note: *The driver should be aware that the vehicle's performance is also reduced and must take this into account when driving. The use of the steering wheel paddle shifts are also disabled.*

Some transmission faults may cause the gear selector to be locked in position, until the ignition is switched off. A flashing gear status in the message centre indicates that the driver's gear request cannot be engaged. In this event, select Neutral (**N**) and then select the required gear change again.

If the transmission is still unable to engage the requested gear, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION



Never attempt to engage reverse gear, while the vehicle is in forward motion. Doing so may result in serious transmission damage and costly repairs.

A gear shift indicator warning lamp illuminates briefly at the recommended (up-shift) gear change point. See **69, GEAR SHIFT (GREEN)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS

Adaptive dynamics continuously monitors the current road conditions and driving style, and automatically adjusts the vehicle's suspension settings accordingly. Adaptive dynamics also detects rough road and off-road conditions, and adjusts the suspension settings for greater ride comfort.

If the dynamic terrain response driving program is selected, then adaptive dynamics modifies the suspension settings for a sporting driving style.

If an adaptive dynamics fault message is displayed in the message centre, the vehicle can still be driven. The fault may be temporary, but if the fault persists, seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Brakes

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

If the red brake warning lamp illuminates, safely bring the vehicle to a stop, as quickly as possible, and seek qualified assistance. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

If the amber brake warning lamp illuminates, drive with care, avoiding heavy brake pedal application, and seek qualified assistance. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

Do not rest a foot on the brake pedal while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so can damage the braking system and reduce braking efficiency. The result can lead to a crash, causing serious injury or death.

Never allow the vehicle to coast (freewheel) with the engine switched off. The engine must be running to provide full braking assistance. The brakes still function with the engine switched off, but far more brake pedal pressure is required to operate them.

Never place non-approved floor matting or any other obstructions under the brake pedal. The result can be restricted pedal travel and reduced braking efficiency, leading to a crash, causing serious injury or death.

Driving through heavy rain or water can have an adverse effect on braking efficiency. Under such circumstances, it is recommended to lightly apply the brakes intermittently, to dry the brakes.

Do not pump the brake pedal at any time. Doing so interrupts operation of the braking system and may increase stopping distances.

Make sure to read and follow the important information instructions contained in the warnings listed. See **65, BRAKE (RED)** and **67, BRAKE (AMBER)**.

STEEP SLOPES

If the vehicle is stationary on a steep, slippery slope, it may begin to slide, even with the brakes applied. Without wheel rotation, the Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) cannot determine vehicle movement. To counteract this, briefly release the brakes, allowing wheel rotation, then re-apply the brakes to allow ABS to gain control.

EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)

If the brakes are rapidly applied, Emergency Brake Assist (EBA) automatically boosts the braking force to its maximum. The result is that EBA helps to bring the vehicle to a halt as quickly as possible.

EBA stops operating as soon as the brake pedal is released.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

An EBA fault is indicated by the amber brake warning lamp illuminating and a warning message displaying in the message centre. In this event, drive with care, avoiding heavy brake pedal application and seek qualified assistance. See **67, BRAKE (AMBER)**.

Note: *In the event of heavy braking, the hazard warning lights are automatically enabled.*

ELECTRONIC BRAKE-FORCE DISTRIBUTION (EBD)

Electronic Brake-force Distribution (EBD) controls the balance of braking forces supplied to the front and rear wheels. The result is that EBD helps to maintain the maximum braking efficiency.

If the vehicle has a light load, e.g., driver only and no luggage, EBD reduces the braking force applied to the rear wheels. If the vehicle is heavily laden, e.g., passengers and luggage, EBD increases the braking force to the rear wheels.

EBD system faults are indicated by the red brake warning lamp illuminating and a warning message displaying in the message centre. In this event, gently and safely stop the vehicle and seek qualified assistance. See **65, BRAKE (RED)**.

AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB)

The Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) system is a driving aid only. The driver is always responsible for driving with due care and attention, in a safe manner for the vehicle, the occupants, and other road users. The driver should observe all road signs, road markings and any potential emergency braking situations, and act appropriately.

The AEB system uses forward-facing cameras to detect real vehicles, plus other certified Euro NCAP target objects. AEB is not designed to detect any other objects, including non-industry approved targets.

In order for AEB to operate, it must be able to detect a clear image of the object and be able to determine its movement. If either of these does not occur, the AEB system may not operate.

Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every journey, no matter how short. Failure to do so greatly increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

Note: *Not all vehicles have the AEB system. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer for confirmation.*

AEB uses forward-facing cameras, located above the rear-view mirror, to help identify an imminent risk of collision with another vehicle travelling in front.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

In most instances, AEB helps reduce the severity of an impact. In some cases, AEB helps to stop the vehicle before an impact takes place.

Note: *AEB efficiency is dependent on the condition of the current driving surface, the vehicle's speed, tyres and braking system.*

Note: *Make sure the windscreen is kept clean and the camera's line of sight is not obstructed by labels, stickers, etc. Failure to do so can cause incorrect AEB operation.*

Note: *AEB calibration is required if the vehicle's windscreen is replaced, or the camera located above the rear-view mirror is moved or replaced. In these events, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.*

Note: *Where vehicles are parked outside, in full sunlight and in high ambient temperatures, the forward-facing camera may reach an internal temperature of 99°C. In this state, the warning message* ***AEB Unavailable*** *displays in the message centre and AEB does not operate. When the forward-facing camera cools to less than 88°C, normal operation is resumed, and the warning message extinguishes.*

AEB automatically switches on, every time the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

If required, AEB can be switched off via the **Vehicle Settings** menu in the instrument panel. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *When driving off-road, it is recommended to switch off the AEB system.*

Note: *When the vehicle's ignition is first switched on, AEB may require an initialisation period before it is fully functional. In this state, a message is displayed in the message centre. During this period, the efficiency of AEB is limited.*

AEB operates when the vehicle is travelling between 5 km/h (3 mph) and 80 km/h (50 mph). If AEB detects an imminent risk of collision with a vehicle travelling in front, it automatically applies the brakes. If the vehicle's speed is between 35 km/h (22 mph) and 80 km/h (50 mph), AEB also displays a warning message in the message centre. The messages are displayed just before the brakes are automatically applied.

After the vehicle has stopped, the brakes are only applied for a few seconds. After this period, the driver must resume full control of the vehicle.

If AEB engages, the driver can override AEB operation by turning the steering wheel, or pressing the accelerator pedal. AEB then disengages, to make sure that the driver remains in full control of the vehicle.

AEB will not operate if:

- The vehicle is negotiating a tight corner.
- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is switched off.
- The forward-facing cameras are dirty or obstructed.
- The vehicle's speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) or above 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Visibility is impaired due to severe weather conditions, e.g., heavy rain, fog, snow, etc.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

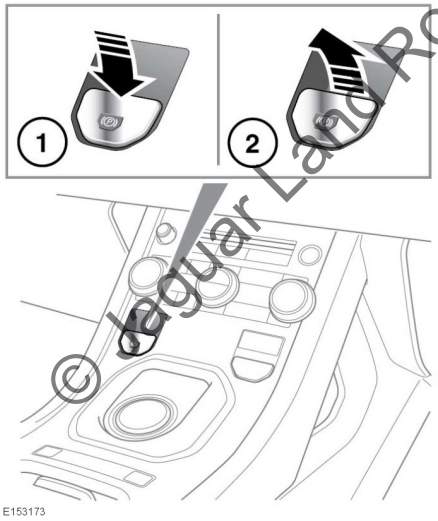
ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB)

Do not rely on the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to operate correctly, if the brake warning lamp illuminates. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

Do not rely on the EPB to operate correctly, if the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) warning lamp flashes. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

The EPB operates on the rear wheels, therefore, secure parking of the vehicle is dependent on being on a hard and stable surface.

Do not rely on the EPB to operate effectively, if the rear wheels have been immersed in mud or water.



The EPB switch is located on the centre console. Operate as follows:

1. With the ignition switched on, press the brake pedal and press down on the EPB switch, to release the EPB.
2. Pull the EPB switch up and release it, to apply the EPB. The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) warning lamp illuminates to confirm. See **66, ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED)**.

   Note: *The red Electric Parking Brake (EPB) warning lamp continues to illuminate for at least 10 seconds after the ignition has been switched off.*

The EPB automatically applies when Park (**P**) is selected.

Note: *To prevent automatic operation, with the vehicle stationary, press and hold the EPB switch in the release position before selecting **P**.*

The EPB applies automatically if the ignition is switched off and the vehicle's speed is below 3 km/h (2 mph).

Note: *To prevent automatic operation, when the vehicle is stationary, press and hold the EPB switch in the release position. Within 5 seconds, switch off the ignition and continue to hold the EPB switch for a further 2 seconds.*

If the EPB is operated when the vehicle's speed is less than 3 km/h (2 mph), the vehicle is brought to an abrupt stop. The stop lights do not illuminate.

Driving the vehicle with the EPB applied will cause serious damage to the braking system.

When stationary with the EPB applied and the transmission engaged in first gear or reverse, pressing the accelerator pedal gradually releases the EPB. The result is that the vehicle can be driven away smoothly.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

When shifting from **P** with the EPB applied, the EPB automatically releases to allow a smooth drive away.

Note: *Automatic EPB release for pulling away from standstill is only possible when the driver's door is closed, or the driver's seat belt is buckled.*

To override the EPB automatic release, pull the EPB switch up and hold.

In an emergency, applying and holding the EPB switch, gives a controlled reduction in the vehicle's speed. The vehicle can also be brought to a complete stop. The vehicle must be travelling at more than 3 km/h (2 mph), and the accelerator pedal must also be released. The brake warning lamp flashes, a warning chime sounds and a warning message displays in the message centre. The stop lights illuminate. Releasing the EPB switch, or pressing the accelerator pedal, releases the EPB.

If an EPB fault is detected, a warning message displays in the message centre. The amber brake warning lamp also illuminates. See **67, BRAKE (AMBER)**.

If a fault is detected during EPB operation, a warning message displays in the message centre. The red Electric Parking Brake (EPB) warning lamp also flashes.

EMERGENCY STOP SIGNAL (ESS)

The Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) system automatically activates the hazard warning lights during emergency braking. Other road users are then warned, to help reduce the risk of a collision.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) does not compensate for driver error or misjudgement. The vehicle should always be driven with due care and attention at all times. Drive in a manner that is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users.

In extremely low temperatures below -20°C, the vehicle may initially have reduced stability and braking performance. In these conditions, drive with extra caution.

DSC activates automatically when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

DSC helps to maintain the vehicle's stability in critical driving situations, e.g. during unstable driving behaviour such as understeer and oversteer. If required, DSC manipulates the engine's power output and applies the brakes at individual wheels. Some noise may be generated when the brakes are applied. DSC also activates if wheel spin is detected, to improve the vehicle's acceleration.

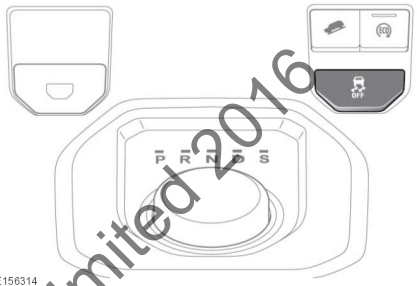
SWITCHING DSC OFF

Inappropriately disabling Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) may adversely affect the vehicle's stability and braking. The result can be a rollover, or a crash, leading to serious injury or death.

DSC must be switched off when traction devices are fitted.

In some driving conditions, it is appropriate to disable DSC to improve traction, these conditions include:

- Rocking the vehicle out of a hollow, or a deep rut.
- Pulling away in deep snow, or driving on a loose surface.
- Driving through deep sand, or mud.



E156314

To switch DSC off, press and briefly hold the DSC **OFF** button, located on the centre console. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

A chime sounds and the message centre temporarily displays the **DSC OFF** message to confirm. The DSC OFF warning lamp also illuminates. See **68, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)**.

Switching DSC off also reduces the level of Electronic Traction Control (ETC) intervention, possibly leading to increased wheel spin.

SWITCHING DSC ON

Note: *Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) activates automatically when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.*

Press and release the DSC **OFF** button to switch DSC on. See **135, SWITCHING DSC OFF**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

The message centre temporarily displays the **DSC ON** message to confirm. The DSC OFF warning lamp also extinguishes. See **68, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)**.

Some terrain response driving programs automatically switch DSC on. See **153, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

ELECTRONIC TRACTION CONTROL (ETC)

Electronic Traction Control (ETC) operates in conjunction with Dynamic Stability Control (DSC). See **135, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)**.

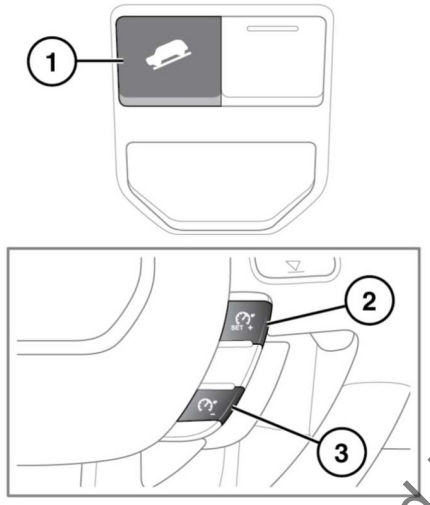
ETC assists if the vehicle's wheels lose traction, causing wheel spin. In this event, ETC operates the brake on the spinning wheel. If required, ETC also manipulates the engine's power output, until the wheel regains traction. The DSC amber warning lamp flashes when ETC activates. See **68, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Hill descent control (HDC)

HDC CONTROLS

Do not attempt a steep descent if Hill Descent Control (HDC) is inoperative or warning messages are displayed.



E177048

Note: *Dependent on the vehicle's specification, the HDC button also operates the All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) system. See* ***149, USING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)****.*

HDC restricts the vehicle's speed to a set limit when travelling downhill.

The HDC button is located on the centre console. The speed limits for HDC are adjusted via the control buttons mounted on the right side of the steering wheel. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

HDC operates in Drive (**D**), Reverse (**R**) and all the paddle shift gears, for vehicles with automatic transmission.

HDC operates in first, second, and reverse gears, for vehicles with manual transmission.

1. Press and release the button to switch HDC on. The HDC warning lamp illuminates to confirm. Press and release the button again to switch HDC off. The HDC warning lamp extinguishes to confirm. See **70, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) (GREEN)**.

   Note: *HDC is automatically selected by some of the terrain response special programs.*

   Note: *HDC is automatically deselected if the ignition is switched off for more than 6 hours.*

2. Press to increase the descent speed: The steering wheel control's **SET +** button increases the HDC system's descent speed in 1 km/h (0.6 mph) increments. Alternatively, press and hold the **SET +** button for larger incremental increases, up to the maximum permissible target speed.

   Note: *Each gear has a predetermined maximum speed.*

   Note: *The vehicle's speed only increases on a slope steep enough to increase momentum. Use of the* ***SET +*** *button may not increase the vehicle's speed on a gentle slope.*

3. Press to decrease the descent speed: The steering wheel control's **-** button decreases the HDC descent speed in 1 km/h (0.6 mph) increments. Alternatively, press and hold the **-** button for larger incremental decreases, down to the minimum permissible target speed.

   Note: *Each gear has a predetermined minimum speed.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

When HDC is enabled, a graphic displays in the message center showing the HDC system's currently set target speed. When HDC is unable to operate, the display is grayed out. The graphic also indicates the range of target speeds available with the currently selected gear.

If HDC is deselected while operating, the warning lamp extinguishes and HDC operation fades out, allowing the vehicle's speed to gradually increase.

HDC can be selected at any speed, but only operates at vehicle speeds of less than 50 km/h (31 mph). If this criteria has not been met, the HDC warning lamp flashes, indicating HDC has been selected, but is not operating.

If HDC is already selected and the vehicle's speed exceeds 50 km/h (31 mph), HDC is suspended. The HDC warning lamp flashes and a message displays in the message centre.

If the brake pedal is pressed when HDC is active, a pulsation might be felt through the brake pedal. When the brake pedal is released, HDC operation resumes.

If a HDC fault is detected, the **HDC FAULT SYSTEM NOT AVAILABLE** message displays in the message centre.

If the fault is detected while HDC is operating, HDC assistance then fades out. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.

GRADIENT RELEASE CONTROL (GRC)

Gradient Release Control (GRC) operates when the vehicle is pulling away from standstill on an incline, or a decline. When the vehicle's brakes are released, GRC automatically delays and graduates the brake release to allow the vehicle to pull away smoothly.

GRC automatically operates in forward and reverse gears. No driver intervention is required.

If the brakes are applied with Hill Descent Control (HDC) switched on, GRC activates to allow a smooth transition into HDC operation.

Note: *GRC does not do this if the terrain response sand program is enabled. See* ***154, SAND****.*

BRAKE TEMPERATURE

In extreme circumstances, prolonged use of Hill Descent Control (HDC) may cause excessive brake temperatures. In this event, the **HDC TEMPORARILY UNAVAILABLE** warning message displays in the message centre. HDC operation then fades out and becomes temporarily inactive.

When the brake temperatures have returned to normal, the message extinguishes and HDC operation resumes.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Cruise control

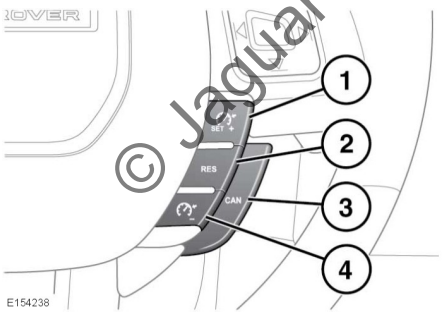
USING CRUISE CONTROL

⚠ **The driver must always make sure that a safe speed is maintained within the speed limit, taking account of traffic and road conditions.**
Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic or conditions where a constant road speed cannot be safely maintained, such as on roads that are winding, wet with rain or snow, slippery or unpaved.

⚠ **In certain conditions, such as a steep gradient, the vehicle's speed may exceed the set cruising speed. This is because engine braking is unable to maintain or reduce the vehicle's speed. Driver intervention may be required.**

Note: *Cruise control is not available when using Hill Descent Control (HDC) or when a terrain response special program has been selected, except for the grass/gravel/snow program.*

Note: *Do not use cruise control when driving off-road.*



Cruise control controls:

1. **SET+**: Press to set the speed or to increase the set speed. The cruise control warning lamp illuminates to confirm cruise control is operational. See **69, CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)**. The cruising speed can also be increased using the accelerator. When the desired speed is reached, press the button to set and maintain the new speed and then release the accelerator.

   Note: *Cruise control can only be engaged at speeds above 30 km/h (18 mph).*

2. **RES**: Press to resume the set speed.

   RES should be used only if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.

3. **CAN**: Press to cancel but retain the set speed in the memory.
   Cruise control is also cancelled if the brake pedal is pressed, the gear selector is moved to neutral, or if HDC or Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) are activated.

4. Press to decrease the set speed.

The system is operated by controls mounted on the steering wheel. The driver can also intervene, at any time, by use of the brake or accelerator pedals.

Note: *If the accelerator pedal is pressed to override cruise control for a period of more than 5 minutes, Cruise control is cancelled.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW

The adaptive cruise control system is designed to maintain a gap from the vehicle ahead or a set road speed if there is no slower vehicle ahead. A speed may be set at between 16 km/h (10 mph) and 180 km/h (112 mph). The set speed is displayed in the message centre.

The system acts by regulating the speed of the vehicle, using engine control and the brakes.

Adaptive cruise control is not a collision warning or avoidance system. Additionally, adaptive cruise control will not react to:

- **Pedestrians or objects in the roadway.**
- **Oncoming vehicles in the same lane.**

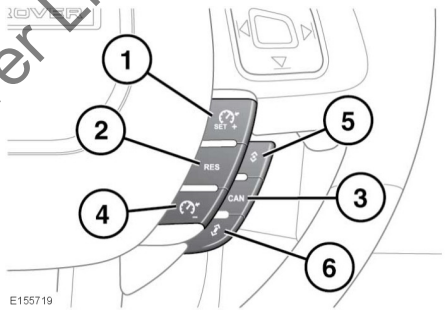
The adaptive cruise control system uses a radar sensor, which projects a beam directly forward of the vehicle to detect objects ahead.

To provide a clear view forward for the radar beam, the radar sensor is mounted at the front of the vehicle behind the grille or behind the duct in the lower cooling aperture (depending on engine specification).

- Use adaptive cruise control only when conditions are favourable, i.e., main roads with traffic moving in lanes.
- Do not use during abrupt or sharp turns, e.g., traffic islands, junctions, areas with many parked vehicles or areas shared with pedestrians.
- Do not use in poor visibility, specifically fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.
- Do not use on icy or slippery roads.
- It is the driver's responsibility to stay alert, drive safely and be in control of the vehicle at all times.
- Keep the front of the vehicle free from dirt, metal badges, or objects, including vehicle front protectors, which may prevent the radar sensor from operating.

USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

The adaptive cruise control system is operated by controls mounted on the steering wheel. The driver can also intervene, at any time, by the use of the brake or accelerator pedals.



Adaptive cruise control controls:

1. Press to set the vehicle's current speed as the set speed. The adaptive cruise control warning lamp illuminates to confirm adaptive cruise control is operational. See **69, CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)**. While adaptive cruise control is enabled, further pressing of the button raises the set speed above the vehicle's current speed. The speed of the vehicle gradually increases to reach the new set speed.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

2. **RES**: Press to resume the adaptive cruise control set speed after it has been disengaged.
3. **CAN**: Pull to cancel but retain the set speed in the memory.
4. Press to decrease the set speed. The speed of the vehicle gradually decreases to reach the new set speed.
5. Pull to decrease the follow mode gap. See **142, ENTERING FOLLOW MODE**.
6. Pull to increase the follow mode gap.

ENTERING FOLLOW MODE

When in follow mode, the vehicle may not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor will the vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a collision.

Once a set speed has been selected, the driver can release the accelerator pedal and the set road speed is maintained.

The adaptive cruise control system identifies if a vehicle enters the same lane, or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane. The system automatically adjusts the vehicle's speed to maintain the gap setting to the vehicle ahead. The vehicle is now in follow mode.

The follow mode warning lamp illuminates in the instrument panel, to confirm follow mode is operational. See **68, FOLLOW MODE (AMBER)**.

The message centre displays the gap set in the form of a vehicle with a varying number of bars in front of it.

The vehicle then maintains the constant time gap to the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle ahead moves out of lane or out of view.
- A new gap setting is chosen.

If necessary, the vehicle's brakes apply automatically, slowing the vehicle and maintaining the gap to the vehicle in front.

The maximum braking which is applied by adaptive cruise control is limited and can be overridden by the driver applying the brakes, if required.

Note: *Driver braking cancels adaptive cruise control.*

If the system predicts that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds while the adaptive cruise control system continues to brake. **DRIVER INTERVENE** is displayed in the message centre. Take immediate action.

When in follow mode, the vehicle automatically returns to the set speed when the road ahead is clear, for instance when:

- The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed above the set speed, or changes lane.
- The vehicle changes lane to either side or enters an exit lane.

The driver should intervene, if appropriate.

If a direction indicator is used, adaptive cruise control reduces the gap to the vehicle ahead so as to respond more quickly to the anticipated manoeuvre. If a manoeuvre is not actioned, the previous gap is restored after a few seconds. Enhanced response may not occur if adaptive cruise control detects that it is inappropriate, i.e., you are already too close to the vehicle ahead or you are already in another lane.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

FOLLOW MODE OFF

Follow mode can be disabled by pressing and holding the gap decrease button on the steering wheel controls. Press the button until the follow mode off warning lamp is displayed in the message centre. See **70, FOLLOW MODE OFF (GREY)**. The follow mode (amber) warning lamp extinguishes.

Note: *Follow mode on is the default setting for adaptive cruise control. Therefore follow mode off is automatically cancelled if adaptive cruise control is not used for a prolonged period of time. Follow mode off is also automatically cancelled if the ignition is switched off.*

To switch follow mode back on, briefly press either of the follow mode gap increase or decrease buttons. The previous gap settings resume and the follow mode (amber) warning lamp illuminates.

CHANGING THE FOLLOW MODE SET GAP

It is the driver's responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

Four gap settings are available. The selected gap setting is displayed in the message centre when the gap adjustment buttons are operated.

Each gap is indicated by an additional bar in front of the **vehicle** icon in the message centre. After the ignition is switched on, the default gap (gap 3) is automatically selected ready for adaptive cruise control operation.

If the terrain response, grass/gravel/snow mode is selected, then the longest gap (gap 4) is initially selected.

OVERRIDING THE SPEED AND FOLLOW MODE

Adaptive cruise control does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain separation from a vehicle ahead if the driver presses the accelerator pedal to override the system.

The set speed and gap can be overridden by pressing the accelerator pedal while cruising at a constant speed or in follow mode. If the vehicle is in follow mode when adaptive cruise control is overridden, the follow mode warning lamp extinguishes. **CRUISE OVERRIDE** is displayed in the message centre. When the accelerator is released, the adaptive cruise control function operates again. The vehicle's speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if follow mode is active.

QUEUE ASSIST

It is important that the driver is ready to intervene when approaching stationary vehicles. Because it is possible that if the vehicle's radar has not seen a stationary vehicle as previously moving, it is possible that queue assist will not stop the vehicle behind that stationary vehicle.

Queue assist is an enhancement of adaptive cruise control and, when adaptive cruise control is active, follows a vehicle ahead to a standstill. It is intended for use in lines of traffic on major roads, where minimal steering is required.

If a vehicle ahead slows to a halt, queue assist brings the vehicle to a stop and holds it stationary.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

While the vehicle is held stationary, queue assist requests the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to apply if:

- The driver cancels queue assist.
- The vehicle is stopped for more than 3 minutes.
- Driver intention to exit the vehicle is detected.
- A malfunction is detected.

As the vehicle ahead moves away, a brief press on the accelerator pedal resumes adaptive cruise control operation.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTO OFF

Adaptive cruise control disengages, but does not clear the memory when:

- The **CANCEL** button is pressed.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Neutral (**N**) is selected.
- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) activates.
- Electronic Traction Control (ETC) activates.
- Hill Descent Control (HDC) is selected.
- Certain terrain response modes are selected, i.e., sand and mud-ruts.
- The difference between the vehicle's current speed and the set speed is too great.
- The accelerator pedal is used to accelerate beyond the set speed for too long a period, i.e., more than 5 minutes. See **143, OVERRIDING THE SPEED AND FOLLOW MODE**.
- The maximum vehicle speed is reached.
- The maximum engine speed is reached. The maximum engine speed is 5 000 rpm for a diesel engine and 7 000 rpm for a petrol engine.
- The radar sensor is blocked by mud, snow, or ice.

Adaptive cruise control disengages, and the memory is cleared when:

- The ignition system is switched off.
- A fault occurs in the adaptive cruise control system.

RESUMING THE SPEED AND FOLLOW MODE

The **RES** button should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.

Pressing the **RES** button after adaptive cruise control has been cancelled, e.g. after braking, causes the system to become active again. This is provided that the systems memory has not been erased. The original set speed is resumed unless a vehicle ahead causes follow mode to become active. The set speed is displayed in the message centre. Queue assist can be resumed above speeds of 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: *When the set speed is resumed, the rate of acceleration is influenced by the previously set follow mode gap. A closer set gap promotes greater acceleration.*

Note: *When resuming a set speed while in a bend in the road, acceleration is reduced. A more severe bend reduces acceleration further. Remember that adaptive cruise control and queue assist are primarily for use when minimal steering is required.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

During some situations the adaptive cruise control system may provide the driver with an indication that intervention is required.

An audible warning sounds, accompanied by the message **DRIVER INTERVENE** in the message centre, if adaptive cruise control detects:

- A failure has occurred while the system is active.
- That using maximum adaptive cruise control braking only is not sufficient.

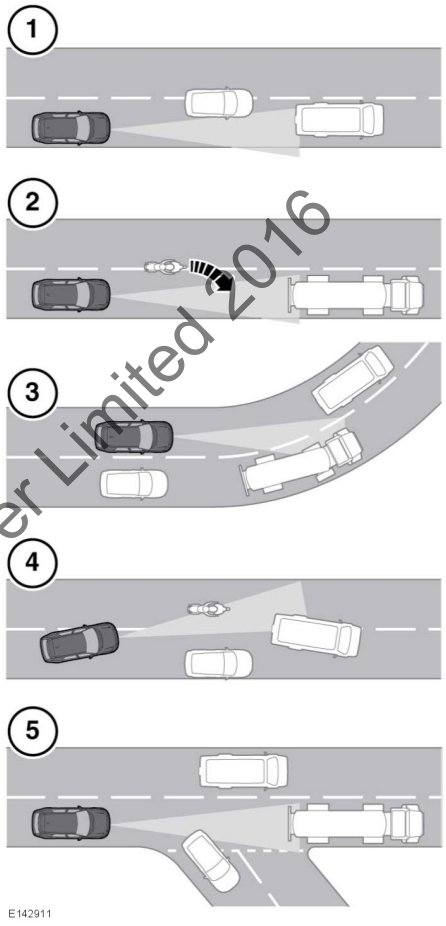
Note: *Adaptive cruise control only operates when the gear selector is in Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**).*

Note: *When adaptive cruise control is engaged, the accelerator pedal rests in the raised position. Fully release the pedal to allow normal adaptive cruise control operation.*

Note: *When braking is applied by the adaptive cruise control system, the vehicle's brake lights illuminate.*

Note: *When auto stop/start is fitted, it may operate during a queue assist stop. Press the accelerator pedal for longer than normal to restart the engine and move off.*

DETECTION BEAM ISSUES



Detection issues can occur:

1. When driving on a different line to the vehicle in front.
2. When a vehicle edges into the same lane as the vehicle being driven. The vehicle is only detected once it has moved fully into the same lane as the vehicle being driven.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

3. There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front, when going into and coming out of a bend.
4. When moving around a stationary vehicle. This may cause uncertainty as to which vehicle should be followed.
5. When the vehicle ahead turns out of the same lane as the vehicle being driven. This may cause uncertainty as to which vehicle should be followed.

In these situations, adaptive cruise control may operate unexpectedly. The driver should stay alert and intervene, if necessary.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL MALFUNCTION

If a fault occurs while adaptive cruise control or follow mode is operational, the adaptive cruise control system switches off. The system cannot be used until the fault is cleared. The message **DRIVER INTERVENE** is displayed briefly in the message centre, and is then replaced by the message **CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE**.

If a fault occurs with the adaptive cruise control system, or any related system, at any other time, the system will not be available. The message **CRUISE CONTROL NOT AVAILABLE** is displayed in the message centre. It is not possible to activate the adaptive cruise control system in any mode.

Accumulations of dirt, snow, or ice on the radar sensor or cover may inhibit adaptive cruise control operation. The fitting of a vehicle front protector or metallised badges may also affect the operation of the system. If this occurs in adaptive cruise control or follow mode, an alarm sounds and the message **DRIVER INTERVENE** is displayed briefly in the message centre. The message **RADAR SENSOR BLOCKED** is then displayed.

The message **RADAR SENSOR BLOCKED** may also be temporarily displayed if the radar's vision is impaired, e.g. in poor weather or when travelling through a tunnel.

Note: *The same messages may also be displayed while driving on open roads with few objects for the radar to detect.*

Clearing an obstruction allows the system to return to normal operation.

The adaptive cruise control system can detect obstructions when it's inactive, e.g. on initial start-up. In these circumstances, the message **RADAR SENSOR BLOCKED** is displayed in the message centre.

Tyres, other than those recommended for your vehicle, may have different circumferences. This can affect the correct operation of the adaptive cruise control system.

FORWARD ALERT FUNCTION

⚠ **The forward alert function may not react to slow moving vehicles.**

⚠ **The forward alert function uses the same radar sensor as adaptive cruise control. The same performance limitations apply. See 141, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW.**

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

The forward alert function provides limited detection and warning of objects close ahead, while the vehicle is moving forward. When the function is active, a warning lamp displays in the instrument panel. See **69, FORWARD ALERT (GREEN)**.

If a vehicle or object is detected in the user defined sensitivity area, a warning tone sounds and the message **FORWARD ALERT** displays in the message centre. If this occurs, the driver should take appropriate action immediately.

The sensitivity of the forward alert function can be adjusted, when the adaptive cruise control system is switched off.

To reduce the sensitivity, press the **< - >** button on the adaptive cruise control steering wheel controls. When pressed, the current setting is displayed in the message centre, accompanied by the message **FWD ALERT < - - - >**. Press the **< - >** button again, to reduce the sensitivity.

To increase the sensitivity, press the **< - - - >** button on the adaptive cruise control steering wheel controls. When pressed, the current setting is displayed in the message centre, accompanied by the message **FWD ALERT < - - - >**. Press the **< - - - >** button again, to increase the sensitivity.

Note: *The new forward alert function setting is retained when the vehicle's ignition is switched off.*

The forward alert function can be switched on and off via the **Driver assistance** menu in the instrument panel. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

ADVANCED EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST

The Advanced Emergency Brake Assist (AEBA) system may not react to slow moving vehicles. The system does not react to stationary vehicles or vehicles travelling in the opposite direction.

Warnings may not appear if the distance to the vehicle ahead is very small or if steering wheel or pedal movements are large, e.g., to avoid a collision.

The system utilises the same radar sensor as adaptive cruise control and forward alert. The same limitations of performance apply.

AEBA is only fitted on vehicles with adaptive cruise control, and functions even if adaptive cruise control and forward alert are switched off.

AEBA is available at speeds above approximately 7 km/h (5 mph). It improves braking response during emergency braking, when a moving vehicle is detected close ahead.

If the risk of a collision increases after the **FORWARD ALERT** warning is displayed, AEBA is activated. The brakes are automatically applied gently, in preparation for rapid braking (this may be noticeable). If the brake pedal is then pressed quickly, full braking is implemented, even if only light pressure is applied to the pedal. See **130, EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)**.

Note: *Braking performance is only improved if the driver applies the brakes.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

If there is a fault with the system, **FORWARD ALERT UNAVAILABLE** is displayed in the message centre. The vehicle can still be driven and the braking system still operates, but without AEBA assistance. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer to have the fault rectified.

INTELLIGENT EMERGENCY BRAKING (IEB)

The Intelligent Emergency Braking (IEB) system may not react to slow moving vehicles.

IEB does not react to stationary vehicles or vehicles that are not travelling in the same direction as the vehicle.

Warnings and automatic braking may not occur if the distance to the vehicle ahead is very small, or if the steering wheel and pedal movements are large, e.g., to avoid a collision.

IEB uses the same radar sensor as adaptive cruise control and forward alert. The same limitations of performance apply. See 141, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW.

Intelligent Emergency Braking (IEB) is only fitted on vehicles with adaptive cruise control, and functions even if adaptive cruise control and forward alert are switched off.

The purpose of the IEB feature is to reduce the impact speed with a slower vehicle ahead when a collision becomes unavoidable.

The IEB feature is available at all speeds.

If an imminent risk of collision occurs, an audible warning is given. If a collision becomes unavoidable, IEB applies the brakes at up to maximum pressure. After IEB has activated, **IEB System Was Activated** is displayed in the message centre. The system is inhibited from further operation until reset by a retailer/ authorised repairer.

Note: *The distance required to slow or stop the vehicle is dependent on the condition of the vehicle's tyres and the current road surface.*

If the radar sensor is blocked by snow or heavy rain, e.g., or there is a fault with the system, **IEB Not Available** may be displayed in the message centre. The vehicle can still be driven and the braking system still operates, but without IEB. If the radar sensor is not considered to be blocked, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) OVERVIEW

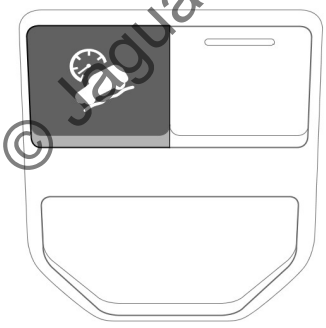
Use extreme care when manoeuvring the vehicle in a reverse direction.

All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) helps the driver to manoeuvre the vehicle on slippery surfaces, e.g., ice, snow, grass, gravel, sand, mud, etc. ATPC operates in either a forward or a reverse direction at low speeds. ATPC is useful when pulling away from a standstill, ascending or descending an incline, and when driving on unstable and slippery driving surfaces.

USING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)

Do not attempt a steep descent if All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is not enabled, or if any warning messages are displayed in the message centre.

The driver must maintain full control of the steering and brakes at all times.



E188926

For vehicles with ATPC, the Hill Descent Control (HDC) button performs multiple functions. The button alternates between both the ATPC and HDC features, and also enables or disables each feature. See **138, HDC CONTROLS**.

Note: *Park assist, wade sensing, and auto stop/start are disabled while ATPC is in operation. The vehicle's cruise control and speed limiter systems are also disabled.*

With both features switched off, the button sequence is as follows:

1. Press and release the button to enable ATPC. An instrument panel warning lamp illuminates to confirm. See **66, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) (AMBER)**.
2. Within 4 seconds, press and release the button again to enable HDC. An instrument panel warning lamp illuminates to confirm. See **70, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) (GREEN)**.

   Note: *If the second press of the button is after 4 seconds, ATPC switches off. If required, start the sequence again.*

   Note: *ATPC is automatically deselected if the ignition is switched off for more than 6 hours.*
3. When required, press and release the button to disable. The relevant warning lamp extinguishes to confirm.

Note: *The driver's seat belt must be buckled and all of the doors must be completely closed to enable ATPC.*

Note: *ATPC is also disabled during operation of the park assist or wade sensing features.*

When enabled, ATPC defaults to descent control mode, i.e., the system only limits the vehicle's downhill speed, using the brakes.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

All terrain progress control (ATPC)

Descent control mode should be used in the event that the vehicle is to make a descent:

- Select the required position for the gear selector.
- Release the vehicle's brakes to allow gravity to make the vehicle progress, up to the minimum feature speed of 1.8 km/h (1.1 mph).
- ATPC maintains this speed, unless ATPC detects the use of the accelerator or brake pedals, or the **SET+** button on the steering wheel controls. See **138, HDC CONTROLS**.

  Note: *Descent control mode resumes when the accelerator pedal, or the brake pedal, is released, and the steering wheel's **SET+** button is not used.*

  Note: *If the steering wheel's **SET+** button is used, then ATPC changes to full function mode. See **149, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) OVERVIEW**.*

Full function mode controls the vehicle's speed via the use of both the brakes and engine torque.

Full function mode should be used for all other manoeuvres that require the use of ATPC. For example, making an ascent, pulling away from a standstill, and driving on unstable and slippery driving surfaces.

Note: *Full function mode does not operate with the gear selector in the Neutral (**N**) position. In this event, a message displays in the message centre.*

Note: *Press and hold the brake pedal, while using the **SET+** button when the vehicle is stationary.*

ATPC can also be enabled while the vehicle is moving, with no brakes applied.

Note: *If the vehicle's brakes are firmly applied, during operation of ATPC, the system exits full function mode and reverts to descent control mode.*

Note: *Light and gentle application of the brake pedal, during ATPC operation, lowers the vehicle's target speed. When the brake pedal is fully released, ATPC maintains the speed at which the brake pedal was released.*

Note: *The driver can override ATPC operation at any time, using the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal.*

Note: *If the vehicle's speed exceeds 30 km/h (18.6 mph), ATPC operation is suspended. ATPC is then in standby mode, until the vehicle's speed is less than 30 km/h (18.6 mph).*

Note: *If the vehicle's speed exceeds 80 km/h (50 mph), ATPC is disabled. If required, ATPC will have to be switched on again.*

When ATPC is enabled and the brake pedal is fully released, the system helps to provide controlled and progressive assistance for the vehicle to:

- Pull away from a standstill, in a forward or reverse direction on level ground, and uphill or downhill.
- Perform low speed manoeuvring in a forward or reverse direction.
- Make progress and maintain a selected target (set) speed, up to a maximum of 30 km/h (18.6 mph).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

In the event that the vehicle's brake temperatures exceed the normal operating limits, a warning message displays in the message centre. In this event, ATPC fades-out and becomes temporarily inactive. When the brakes have returned to normal operating temperatures, the message extinguishes and ATPC resumes normal operation.

ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) SETTINGS

When All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is enabled, the desired set target speed for the vehicle can be set and adjusted. Use the control buttons mounted on the right side of the steering wheel. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

- **SET+**: Press to enable ATPC to recognise that the desired set target speed for the vehicle, is to be set and adjusted. Then, press repeatedly (or press and hold) to increase the set target speed, up to a maximum speed of 30 km/h (18.6 mph). Alternatively, while making progress, press the **SET+** button for the vehicle's current speed to be the set target speed.

  Note: *If the vehicle is at a standstill, press and hold the brake pedal while using the **SET+** button.*

  Note: *Light and gentle application of the accelerator pedal temporarily overrides the current set target speed. When the accelerator pedal is fully released, ATPC reverts back to the previously selected set target speed.*

  Note: *The set target speed is displayed in the instrument panel.*

  Note: *Selecting very low speeds when pulling away on slippery surfaces, can affect the vehicle's ability to make progress. For improved pulling away performance, it is recommended to select a set target speed that is sufficient to maintain the vehicle's progress.*

- **-**: Press repeatedly (or press and hold) to decrease the desired set target speed, down to the minimum feature speed of 1.8 km/h (1.1 mph).

  Note: *Light and gentle application of the brake pedal also lowers the set target speed. When the brake pedal is fully released, ATPC maintains the speed at which the brake pedal is released. If the brake pedal is pressed when ATPC is active, a slight pulsation movement might be felt through the brake pedal.*

- **CAN**: Press to cancel the set target speed. ATPC then exits full function mode and reverts to descent control mode. See **149, USING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)**.

- **RES**: Press to resume the set target speed, if the set target vehicle speed has been lowered by gently applying the brake pedal.

  RES should only be used if the driver is aware of the set target speed and intends to return to it.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

All terrain progress control (ATPC)

When the vehicle is travelling at speeds between 30 km/h (18.6 mph) and 80 km/h (50 mph), ATPC operation is suspended. The system enters into standby mode and the ATPC warning lamp flashes. ATPC operation resumes when the vehicle's speed is less than 30 km/h (18.6 mph), but does not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph). If the vehicle's speed exceeds 80 km/h (50 mph), ATPC disables and the warning lamp extinguishes. If required, ATPC will have to be switched on again.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION

Before driving off-road, it is essential that inexperienced drivers become fully familiar with the vehicle's controls. In particular, Hill Descent Control (HDC) and the terrain response driving programs. See **138, HDC CONTROLS**.

Use the touch screen for information and guidance for when each terrain response program is suitable for different types of driving surface. Select **4x4i** from the touch screen's **EXTRA FEATURES** menu, then select **Off-Road Information** and follow the on-screen instructions. See **175, EXTRA FEATURES**.



E161767

Use the buttons, located on the centre console, to move through the different terrain response driving programs. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

The currently selected terrain response driving program's LED indicator lamp illuminates to confirm the selection. The message centre also displays the selected program's icon and a temporary confirmation message.

Note: *Changing between the terrain response driving programs may alter various vehicle settings. For example, the engine's revolution speed may alter on selection of a different program, while at a constant accelerator pedal position. The adaptive dynamics suspension and the steering system may also feel heavier or lighter. The changes are not dramatic but are noticeable.*

The driver is advised to experiment with the available settings in an environment that does not affect other road users.

GENERAL PROGRAM (SPECIAL PROGRAMS OFF)



The general program is compatible with all on and off-road conditions. Select the general program when driving on surfaces which are similar to a hard road surface. For example, dry cobbles, tarmac, dry wooden planks, etc.

The general program returns all of the vehicle's systems to their normal settings. Hill Descent Control (HDC) remains active if it was previously selected manually.

Select the general program when the need for any other terrain response driving program has passed.

The general program allows vehicles with active driveline to automatically switch between 2 Wheel Drive (2WD) and 4 Wheel Drive (4WD), dependent on the current driving conditions.

Note: *Permanent 4WD is maintained in all other terrain response driving programs.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

GRASS/GRAVEL/SNOW



Select the grass/gravel/snow program when driving on a firm surface that is covered with loose, or slippery material.

For deep snow and gravel, it is recommended to select the sand program. If the vehicle loses traction, then switch off Dynamic Stability Control (DSC). DSC should be switched on again, as soon as the difficulty is overcome. See **135, SWITCHING DSC OFF**.

MUD/RUTS



Select the mud/ruts program for terrain that is muddy, rutted, soft or uneven.

SAND



Select the sand program for terrain which is predominantly soft. For example, dry sand, deep gravel, etc.

If the vehicle loses traction, then switch off Dynamic Stability Control (DSC). DSC should be switched on again, as soon as the difficulty is overcome. **135, SWITCHING DSC OFF**.

If the terrain is damp or wet sand, and deep enough to cause the wheels to sink, then select the mud-ruts program.

DYNAMIC



Select the dynamic program to exploit the vehicle's full on-road potential.

The dynamic program coordinates the vehicle's control systems to help enhance traction, handling and driveability. The driver becomes more involved, which helps to deliver a high performance driving experience.

Note: *The dynamic program is a driving style setting, rather than a type of terrain response setting.*

DRIVER OVERRIDE OPTIONS

Hill Descent Control (HDC) automatically engages for some terrain response driving programs. If required, HDC can be manually switched off or on. HDC status is displayed in the message center. See **138, HDC CONTROLS**.

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) automatically engages for some terrain response driving programs. If required, DSC can be manually switched off or on. See **135, SWITCHING DSC OFF**.

SYSTEM DIFFICULTIES

Incorrect use of a terrain response driving program impairs the vehicle's response to the current terrain. The vehicle's suspension and transmission systems may also be damaged.

If a temporary fault is detected, then selection of the required terrain response driving program may not be possible. If the fault persists, consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.

In the event of a permanent fault, all the terrain response programs LED indicator lamps are extinguished. Warning messages are also display in the message centre. In this event, consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.

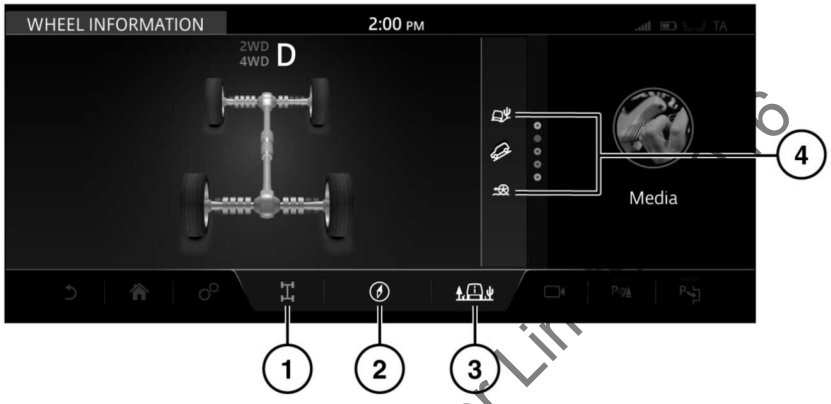
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

If a participating vehicle system becomes temporarily inoperable, the general program is automatically selected. Once the system operation resumes, then the previously selected terrain response driving program is reactivated, unless the ignition has been switched off in the meantime.

Inappropriate selection of a terrain response driving program, causes the selected program's LED indicator lamp to flash amber. The message centre also displays further information. If appropriate action is not taken within 60 seconds, the warnings cease and the message centre displays the currently active program.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

OFF-ROAD INFORMATION



E188316

The **4x4i** extra feature allows access to 4 Wheel Drive (4WD) information and guidance features for off-road driving.

Note: *The number of **4x4i** features is dependent on the specification of the vehicle.*

Select **Off-Road Information** from the **4x4i** extra feature. See **175, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Touch the relevant icon to dispaly the required information:

1. **WHEEL INFORMATION** icon: Touch to display information about the vehicle's wheels, transmission, and driveline:
   - The current automatic transmission gear selection.
   - The status of the active driveline system, i.e., the automatic switching between 4WD and 2 Wheel Drive (2WD).
   - The highlighted increments on the displayed axles indicate the constantly varying distribution of the transmission's driveline torque, currently supplied to each wheel.
   - The displayed front wheels on the graphic move to indicate the current steering angle.
   - The differential lock symbols display increments to indicate the current status of the locking torque applied to the vehicle's driveline.

     Note: *Dependent on the specification of the vehicle.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

2. **COMPASS** icon: Touch to display the direction orientation of the vehicle. The current latitude, longitude, and altitude also display.
3. **TR INFORMATION** (terrain response) icon: Touch to display information and guidance for the currently selected terrain response driving program.

   Note: *Make sure that the vehicle is stationary, with the ignition switched on.*
4. Highlighted icons indicate other vehicle features that are currently enabled. For example, Hill Descent Control (HDC) and the currently selected terrain response driving program.

   Note: *The number of available icons is dependent on the specification of the vehicle.*

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS

Various vehicle dimensions can be displayed on the touch screen.

Select **Vehicle Dimensions** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** menu. See **175, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Note: *Not all vehicles have this feature.*

LOW TRACTION LAUNCH

Low traction launch helps to further enhance low speed manoeuvring and pulling away from a standstill, in adverse conditions.

Select **Low Traction Launch** from the **4x4i** extra feature on the touch screen. Follow the on-screen instructions. See **175, EXTRA FEATURES**.

The operation of low traction launch is further enhanced if the grass/gravel/snow driving program is enabled. See **154, GRASS/GRAVEL/SNOW**.

Low traction launch also operates if the general driving program is selected. See **153, GENERAL PROGRAM (SPECIAL PROGRAMS OFF)**.

To allow the low traction launch feature to be enabled, make sure that:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- Either the grass/gravel/snow or the general driving program is enabled.
- All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is not enabled. See **149, USING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)**.

Low traction launch only operates at vehicle speeds below 30 km/h (19 mph).

Low speed manoeuvres, and pulling away from a standstill, are complete when the vehicle's speed reaches 30 km/h (19 mph). Low traction launch is then automatically disabled.

Low traction launch is also disabled if:

- ATPC is enabled.
- The dynamic, mud/ruts, or sand driving programs are selected.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed to its full travel (kickdown).
- A system fault is detected. In this event, a warning message displays on the touch screen and in the message centre.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

DRIVE ASSIST

Drive assist is a surround camera feature that assists the driver with forward vehicle guidance while driving off-road. Drive assist displays the area directly ahead of the vehicle that may not be visible to the driver.

Select **Drive Assist** from the **4x4i** extra feature. See **175, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Note: *Drive assist may not operate correctly in certain conditions. For example, on top of a hill, if low light levels are present, or the cameras are dirty or obscured.*

Drive assist is disabled if Reverse (**R**) gear is engaged. A rear-view camera image displays on the touch screen.

Drive assist is suspended if the vehicle's speed exceeds 30 km/h (19 mph). A message displays on the touch screen. Normal operation resumes when the vehicle's speed is less than 28 km/h (17 mph).

The touch screen camera view displays three images, from the front camera and each door mirror camera. Touch either of the door mirror camera views for a two image display. Only the selected door mirror camera view and the front camera view are displayed.

WADE SENSING

Wade sensing should not be used during off-road driving. Rapid increases in water depth cannot be detected in time to warn the driver.

When entering water from a steep gradient, the water level may rise rapidly.

Wade sensing cannot detect accurate water levels if a layer of ice or snow exists on the surface of the water.

Parking aid does not operate when wade sensing is active.

The wade sensing sensors are located on the underside of the door mirrors. The sensors must be kept clean and free from snow, ice, mud, and other debris. Failure to keep them clean can result in sensor miscalculation.

If the door mirrors are in the fold position, wade sensing operates but gives false information.

Wade sensing aids the driver while driving through water. The touch screen displays the currently detected water level and the vehicle's maximum wading depth.

When the detected water level approaches the vehicle's maximum wading depth, warnings display on the touch screen and in the instrument panel. Audible warning tones are also emitted.

Select **Wade Sensing** from the **4x4i** extra feature. See **175, EXTRA FEATURES**.

If wade sensing limitations are exceeded, the touch screen image turns grey and the water level no longer displays.

Wade sensing operation is suspended when the vehicle's speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph) or the gradient exceeds 10°. Wade sensing automatically reactivates when the vehicle's speed returns to 10 km/h (6 mph). If the vehicle's speed exceeds 30 km/h (19 mph) for 30 seconds, wade sensing automatically switches off.

Note: *The door mirrors must be in the normal (unfolded) position for correct wade sensing operation.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Note: *Wade sensing does not operate if the vehicle has fixed side steps. However, the system does operate if the vehicle has fixed side tubes.*

Note: *The parking aid, park assist, and auto stop/start systems are all disabled when wade sensing is operating.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

BLIND SPOT MONITOR

The blind spot monitor system is a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style and use of the door mirrors and rear-view mirrors. The system may not function under all speeds, weather, and road conditions. Drive safely at all times and use the door mirrors and rear view mirrors to avoid accidents.

The blind spot monitor system may not be able to give adequate warning of vehicles approaching very quickly from behind.

The blind spot monitor system may not be able to detect all vehicles and may also detect objects such as roadside barriers, etc. Drive safely at all times and use the door mirrors and rear-view mirrors to avoid accidents.

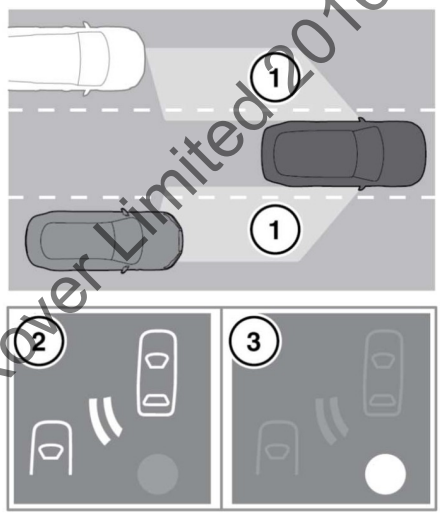
The blind spot monitor system does not correct errors of judgement in driving.

The radar sensors may be impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow, or road spray. The blind spot monitor system's ability to reliably detect a vehicle within the driver's blind spot may be affected.

Make sure that the warning icons and indicators in the door mirrors are not obscured by stickers or other objects.

Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper, that may interfere with the radar sensors.

The blind spot monitor system monitors a zone that covers the area adjacent to the vehicle, which is not easily visible to the driver. The radars on each side of the vehicle identify any overtaking vehicle within the driver's blind spot area. The system disregards other objects which may be stationary or travelling in the opposite direction, etc.



E171264

1. Driver's blind spot area.
2. Door mirror vehicle icon: The amber warning icon illuminates in the door mirror when an overtaking vehicle is detected.
3. System disabled indicator: The amber indicator illuminates in the door mirror when the system is not active.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

When an overtaking vehicle is detected by the blind spot monitor system, an amber warning door mirror vehicle icon illuminates in the relevant door mirror to alert the driver. There is a potential hazard in the vehicle's blind spot and, therefore, a lane change might be dangerous.

The radar monitors the area extending from the door mirrors rearward. The radar monitoring extends to the width of a typical carriageway lane. The radar monitoring is approximately 6 m behind the rear wheels and up to 2.5 m from the side of the vehicle. The blind spot monitor system is designed to work most effectively when driving on multi-lane roads.

Note: *The radar sensor is approved in all RTTE countries.*

Note: *The blind spot monitor system covers an area of a fixed lane width. When the lanes are narrower than a typical carriageway lane, objects travelling in non-adjacent lanes may be detected.*

Note: *When overtaking vehicles are detected on both sides simultaneously, the warning icons in both mirrors illuminate.*

The blind spot monitor system automatically switches on and becomes active when the vehicle is travelling at more than 10 km/h (6 mph) in a forward gear. When the system initiates, it performs a self-check. During the self-check, the warning icons in the mirrors illuminate alternately for a short period of time.

The amber indicator (**3**) remains illuminated until the vehicle's forward speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph).

The blind spot monitor system is automatically disabled and the amber system disabled indicator illuminates in the door mirrors when:

- Reverse (**R**) gear is selected.
- Park (**P**) is selected for vehicles with an automatic transmission.
- The vehicle's speed is below 6 km/h (4 mph).

The blind spot monitor system can be enabled or disabled through the instrument panel menu. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *When a trailer is connected to a Jaguar Land Rover approved trailer socket, the blind spot monitor system is disabled. When the trailer's electrical plug is not connected to the socket, or a non-approved towing system is fitted, the blind spot monitor system remains active. However the system does not operate as intended.*

Note: *The blind spot monitor system may provide inaccurate results if the sensors are misaligned due to a bumper modification, a minor collision, or an impact.*

CLOSING VEHICLE SENSING

Closing vehicle sensing is a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style and use of the door mirrors and rear-view mirrors.

The radar sensors may be impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow, or road spray. The system's ability to reliably detect a vehicle within the driver's blind spot may be affected.

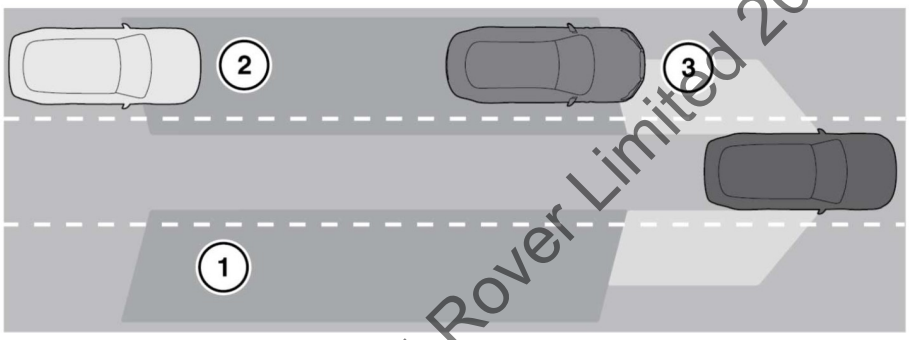
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Closing vehicle sensing does not correct errors of judgement in driving.

Make sure that the warning icons and indicators in the door mirrors are not obscured by stickers or other objects.

Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper, that may interfere with the radar sensors.

In addition to the functionality provided by the blind spot monitor system, closing vehicle sensing monitors a larger area behind the vehicle. Closing vehicle sensing is designed to perform best on multi-lane roads with free-flowing traffic. The feature is operational above 10 km/h (6 mph) in a forward gear.



E171282

1. Monitored area behind and to the sides of the vehicle: Closing vehicle sensing monitors up to a distance of 70 m and approximately 2.5 m from each side of the vehicle, the width of a typical carriageway lane.
2. Detected vehicle in the monitored area: When a vehicle is detected approaching rapidly, an amber warning icon flashes in the relevant door mirror to alert the driver.
3. Driver's blind spot area: When the detected vehicle reaches the area monitored by the blind spot monitor system, the amber warning icon illuminates continuously. Normal operation of the system continues.

Note: *When rapidly approaching vehicles are detected on both sides simultaneously, the amber warning icons in both door mirrors flash.*

Note: *Closing vehicle sensing covers an area of a fixed lane width. When the lanes are narrower than a typical carriageway lane, objects travelling in non-adjacent lanes may be detected.*

Note: *Closing vehicle sensing disables when the vehicle is negotiating a tight radius bend.*

Note: *Closing vehicle sensing disables when a trailer is attached.*

Note: *When the blind spot monitor is disabled, closing vehicle sensing is also disabled.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Note: *The radar sensor is approved in all RTTE countries.*

BLIND SPOT MONITOR SENSORS

The blind spot monitor system is automatically disabled if either of the sensors become completely obscured. An amber indicator dot is displayed in the door mirror and the message centre displays the message **BLIND SPOT MONITOR SENSOR BLOCKED**.

Note: *Blockage testing initiates only when the vehicle's speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph). Testing takes at least 2 minutes of accumulated travelling above this speed, to determine that the sensor is blocked.*

When the sensors become blocked, check that there is nothing obscuring the rear bumper and that it is clear from ice, frost and dirt.

When a fault with a radar sensor is detected, an amber warning system disabled indicator dot is displayed in the door mirror. The message centre displays the message **BLIND SPOT MONITOR NOT AVAILABLE**.

Note: *Even if the detected fault affects the radar sensor on only one side of the vehicle, the whole system is disabled. When the fault is temporary, the system operates correctly once the engine has been switched off and then on again.*

When a fault in the system occurs, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING

The lane departure warning system is a driving aid only. Responsibility remains the driver's to drive with due care and attention. Drive in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users. The driver should still observe all other road signs and road markings.



The lane departure warning button is located in the lower switch panel at the driver's side of the fascia. Press to disable or enable the system. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

When the system is enabled, an icon illuminates in the message centre to confirm operation. The vehicle's position within the lane displays graphically in the icon. As the vehicle moves within the lane, the icon displays any change of direction and lane edges illuminate or change colour. Green is used for tracking information. Red is used for warnings.

The lane departure warning system can also be switched on or off via the instrument panel menu. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *When the ignition is switched off and on again, the lane departure warning system settings remain as previously set.*

The system uses the forward-facing camera, located in the base of the rear-view mirror.

Note: *Make sure the windscreen area in front of the rear-view mirror is kept clean and free of obstructions, e.g., stickers, debris, mud, snow, ice, etc.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

The driver is alerted when the vehicle crosses either of the lane markings that it is travelling within, without activation of the appropriate direction indicator. The system alerts the driver via one of the following methods:

- Steering wheel vibration.
- Red warning icons displayed in the message centre.

Note: *The lane departure warning system only provides warnings to the driver. The lane departure warning system does not assist in changing the direction of the vehicle or operate any of the vehicle's systems.*

Note: *The lane departure warning system does not detect unmarked edges of the road.*

The lane departure warning system is active between 60 km/h (37 mph) and 180 km/h (112 mph). Warnings are suppressed if driver intervention is detected, as follows:

- Operation of the accelerator pedal.
- Significant movement of the steering wheel.
- Operation of the brakes.
- Activation of the appropriate direction indicator.

Lane departure warning system limitations

- The lane in use must be wider than 2.5 m or less than 5.2 m.
- Not active in off-road conditions.
- Not available when the sand or mud-ruts terrain response programs are selected.

The performance of the lane departure warning system may also be affected in the following conditions:

- Driving in adverse conditions. For example, heavy fog, rain, snow, etc.
- Driving over worn, damaged, or temporary lane markings, e.g., road works, etc.
- Driving toward very bright lights.
- Driving very close to another vehicle.
- Tight deviations of the roads and their gradients.

When the system detects a fault or is not available, the general warning or information message (amber) is displayed in the message centre. See **68, GENERAL WARNING/INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)**.

LANE KEEP ASSIST

Lane keep assist is a driving aid only. Responsibility remains the driver's to drive with due care and attention. Drive in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users. The driver should still observe all road markings.

Low tyre pressure and/or steering tracking out of alignment affects lane keep assist. Both of these conditions may apply an effect where constant steering adjustment is required.

Lane keep assist is an enhancement of the lane departure warning system.

Lane keep assist aids the driver to keep the vehicle in the current carriageway lane, e.g., while driving on a multi-lane road. When the vehicle becomes too close to lane markings on either side, without the direction indicators being used, the driver is made aware of it.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

A rotational force is automatically applied to the steering wheel. The force can be felt by the driver and it indicates that a steering correction should be made. The rotational force can be overridden to make a lane change without use of the direction indicators.

When an override is made, and a lane change is made without use of the direction indicators, lane departure warning alerts are triggered. See **163, LANE DEPARTURE WARNING**.

When the lane departure warning system is switched on, lane keep assist can be selected via **Driver Assistance** in the instrument panel menu. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

When the ignition is switched off and on again, the last choice of lane departure warning or lane keep assist is reinstated.

Lane keep assist is disabled when a fault is detected. A message is displayed in the message centre. When the fault does not clear after the ignition is switched off and on again, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

DRIVER FATIGUE ALERT

The purpose of the driver fatigue alert feature is to evaluate driving technique for signs of driver fatigue.

When the feature determines if the driver is fatigued, the message centre displays the warning, **TAKE A BREAK!**, for 1 minute, accompanied by an audible chime. When driving continues for more than 15 minutes after the first warning, without taking a break, a further warning is given. The warning continues until the **OK** button on the steering wheel menu control is pressed.

The driver fatigue alert feature is always active at vehicle speeds between 60 km/h (37 mph) and 180 km/h (112 mph).

The driver fatigue alert feature can be switched off via **Driver Assistance** in the instrument panel menu. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

When the driver fatigue alert feature develops a fault, a double warning icon is displayed in the message centre. The driver fatigue alert feature is unavailable until the problem is rectified. When the fault does not clear after the ignition is switched off and on again, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

The traffic sign recognition system is a driving aid only. Responsibility remains the driver's to drive with due care and attention. Drive in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users. The driver should still observe all road signs and road markings.

The traffic sign recognition system uses the forward-facing camera, located in the rear-view mirror. The camera detects speed signs, no overtaking signs, and variable overhead speed signs. Symbols of the detected signs are displayed in the message centre and the Head-Up Display (HUD). Traffic signs with extra information, e.g., reduced speed limits, are also detected and compared with the vehicle's operating systems. When no speed limit signs are detected, relevant speed limit information from the navigation system is displayed in the message centre and the HUD.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Note: *When the standard road navigation is not available, the traffic sign recognition system uses the forward-facing camera only. In this circumstance, system performance may be limited.*

Note: *Make sure that the windscreen area in front of the rear-view mirror is kept clean and free of obstructions. For example, stickers, debris, mud, snow, ice, etc.*

The traffic sign recognition system can be switched on and off via **Driver Assistance** in the instrument panel menu. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The system operates up to the vehicle's maximum speed.

The three basic functions of the traffic sign recognition system are as follows:

- **Speed Limit Detection**: A corresponding sign is displayed in the message centre.
- **Speed Alert**: When the vehicle's speed is greater than, or equal to, the detected speed limit, a warning is displayed. The message centre displays a flashing red ring around the detected speed limit sign. Speed alert can be switched on or off, or the settings can be adjusted to display three different settings:
  - When the vehicle's speed equals the detected speed limit.
  - When the vehicle's speed is 10 km/h (5 mph) above the detected speed limit.
  - When the vehicle's speed is 20 km/h (10 mph) above the detected speed limit.
- **No Overtaking Zone**: When a no overtaking sign is detected, the system also displays a corresponding sign in the message centre.

Note: *The traffic sign recognition system does not detect road markings or situations with no signage, e.g., railway crossings, etc.*

Traffic sign recognition limitations

The system may provide false information or function incorrectly in the following conditions:

- The windscreen area in front of the camera is covered by a sticker, misted over, dirty, covered in snow or mud, etc.
- Travelling in adverse weather conditions. For example, heavy fog, rain, snow, etc.
- Travelling in an area not covered by the navigation system.
- Driving toward very bright lights.
- Concealed or covered signage.
- Non-conforming road signs.
- Navigation information is incorrect.

SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM

Responsibility remains the driver's to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them when manoeuvring the vehicle.

Some overhanging objects or barriers, which could cause damage to the vehicle, may not be detected by the camera.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

The camera must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., ice, frost, snow, leaves, mud, or insects. Failure to keep the camera clean may result in miscalculation or false indications. See **289, SENSORS AND CAMERAS**.

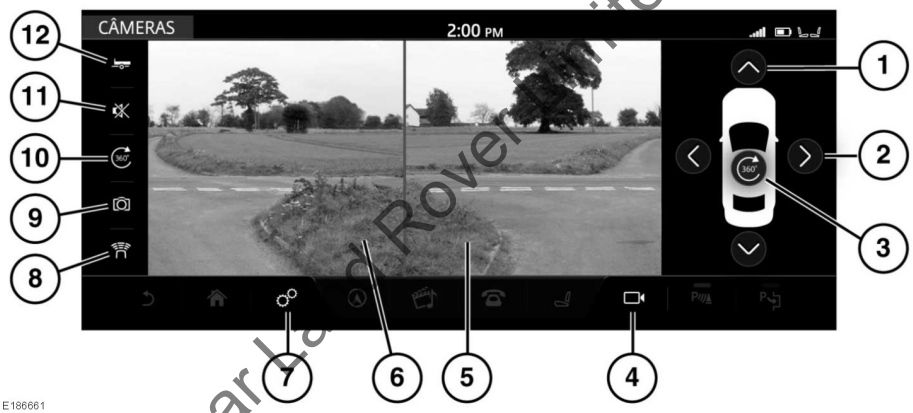
Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper that may interfere with the camera.

The surround camera system cameras are located as follows:

- In the centre of the front lower grille.
- Above the rear number plate or in the centre of the rear bumper.
- Underneath each of the door mirrors.

Note: *The quality of the camera views may vary in different lighting conditions.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016



E186661

1. Front camera: Touch to enable the front camera view and forward vehicle guidance.
2. Camera selection arrows: The arrows around the vehicle highlight when selected.
3. Plan view: Touch to display a 360° plan view of the vehicle and its immediate surroundings, using all of the cameras. Forward vehicle guidance is also activated.
4. Cameras icon: Touch to select the cameras feature.
5. Right side or rear camera view split-screen image: When presented as a split image, touching either image switches to a full screen view of that image.
6. Left side or front camera view split-screen image: When presented as a split image, touching either image switches to a full screen view of that image.

7. Settings icon: Touch to select the **Camera Settings** menu.
   - **Hitch Assist**: (available only when a tow ball is fitted): Select **ON** or **OFF**.
   - **Parking Guidance**: Select **ON** or **OFF**.
   - **Parking Aid Graphics**: Select **ON** or **OFF**.
   - **360° PDC Plan View**: Select **ON** or **OFF**.

   Note: *Depending on the vehicle specification, the* ***Camera Settings*** *menu may include further camera settings. When the list includes six or more feature settings, a scroll bar displays.*
8. **Parking aids** icon: Touch to switch the parking aid graphics on or off.
9. **Camera selection** icon: Touch to select a different camera view.

   Note: *A maximum of two views display at any one time, instead of the 360° views. To change a camera view if two views are already selected, first deselect one of the views and then make another selection.*
10. **Surround camera** icon: Touch for a 360° view, using all of the cameras.
11. **Volume** icon: Touch to mute the volume of the parking aid warning tones.
12. **Tow assist** icon: Touch for trailer setup.

Camera shortcuts



The function of the **Camera** icon (**4**) varies. Depending on the selected gear and the vehicle's road speed, the icon gives the following options:

- When in a forward gear, at vehicle speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph):
  - Touch once to select the **T Junction View**.
  - Touch twice to select the **Rear Junction** view.
  - Touch a third time to return to the **T Junction View**.
- When in Neutral (**N**) or Park (**P**):
  - Touch once to select the **Plan View**.
  - Touch twice to select the **T Junction View**.
  - Touch a third time to select the **Rear Junction** view.
- When in Reverse (**R**) gear:
  - Touch once to select the **Rear Junction** view.
  - Touch twice to select the **T Junction View**.
  - Touch a third time to return to the **Rear Junction** view.

Pan and Zoom tools

When in a full screen view of a camera image, touch the image to display the pan and zoom tools. The tools allow the image to be viewed at three levels of detail and can be manipulated left, right, up, and down. Double tap the image to jump to the middle level of zoomed detail and allow the same pan and zoom functionality.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

FORWARD VEHICLE GUIDANCE

Forward vehicle guidance provides touch screen views of the area directly ahead of the vehicle, that may not be visible to the driver. Also displayed is the projected forward steering path, based on the current steering wheel position. Object detection ahead is also included when front parking aid sensors are active. The feature can be useful when manoeuvring through a narrow gap or around obstacles.

Forward vehicle guidance activates when the plan view, or front camera view, is selected from the **CAMERAS** screen. The projected forward steering path and object detection ahead displays when the vehicle is in a forward gear or in (**N** Neutral. The vehicle must be travelling at less than 16 km/h (10 mph).

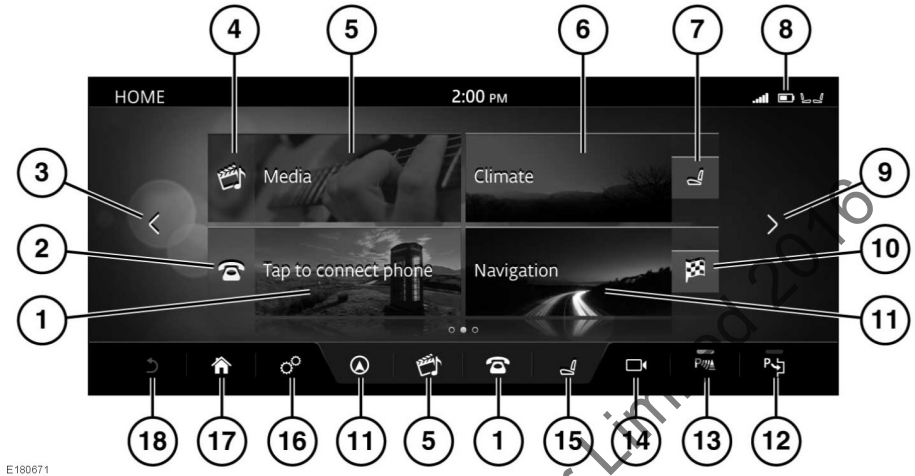
The projected steering path and object detection can be enabled or disabled via the **Camera Settings** menu.

Note: *When a fault is detected with the front parking aid sensors, a message is displayed on the touch screen. When all of the sensors are clean and, after restarting the engine the issue persists, contact a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Touch screen - Home

TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU



E180671

In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust, or view the system when it is safe to do so.

Do not adjust the touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving.

Always run the engine during prolonged use of the touch screen. Failure to do so may discharge the vehicle's battery and prevent the engine from starting.

Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the touch screen.

1. **Phone**: Touch to select the **PHONE** screen.
2. Phone shortcut: Touch to select **Voicemail** when a phone is connected, or the **PHONE** screen when no phone is connected.
3. Left arrow: Touch the arrow, or swipe the screen to the right, to select the **MY HOME** screens.
4. Media shortcut: Touch to select the media shortcut:
   - CD, **Bluetooth®** and USB: Alternate between play and pause.
   - Radio: Station mute.
5. **Media**: Touch to select the **MEDIA** screen. If the media system is already switched on, touch to select the current media source menu.

   Note: *When the system is active, current information for the media being played is displayed.*
6. **Climate**: Touch to select the **FRONT CLIMATE** control screen. See **206, CLIMATE CONTROL**.
7. Seats shortcut: Touch to select the **SEATS** screen.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

8. **Status** icons: Display the status of a vehicle feature or application. See **172, TOUCH SCREEN STATUS ICONS**.
9. Right arrow: Touch the arrow, or swipe the screen to the left, to select the **EXTRA FEATURES** screens.
10. Navigation shortcut: Touch to set a destination or to cancel guidance if a destination is already set.
11. **Navigation**: Touch to select the **NAVIGATION** assistance map.
12. **Park assist** icon: Touch to switch the **PARK ASSIST** screen on or off. For vehicles without park assist fitted, touch to switch the screen on or off. For vehicles with park assist, the screen can be switched off via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
13. **Parking aids** icon: Touch to switch the **360° PDC** screen on or off.
14. **Camera** icon: Touch to select the **CAMERA** screen.
15. **Seats** icon: Touch to select the **SEATS** screen.
16. **Settings** icon: Touch to select **Home Settings**, via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
17. **Home** icon: Touch to select the **PREVIEWS** screen.
18. **Return** icon: Touch to return to a higher menu level.

    Note: *The **return** icon is disabled on the **HOME** screen.*

TOUCH SCREEN SIDE PANEL

The touch screen's side panel allows features to be displayed and controlled independently of the main view. See **178, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

The following features can be displayed, alongside the main view:

- **Media**: Displays the currently selected media source, and enables tracks, channels, or stations to be changed and the sound to be muted.
- **Navigation**: Displays either the current location or the set destination, the estimated time of arrival and the distance to the destination.
- **Phone**: Displays a list of recent calls, details of the current call in progress, **end call** icon and **mute call** icon.
- **Weather**: Displays the temperature and a description of the current weather, and the weather for the set destination and favourite locations.
- **News**: Displays the headlines of the selected news channel and enables news stories to be read out.

  Note: *The weather and news are features that utilise InControl Pro Services. See **256, INCONTROL PRO SERVICES**.*

For more detailed information, touch the centre of the feature to shortcut to the main display.

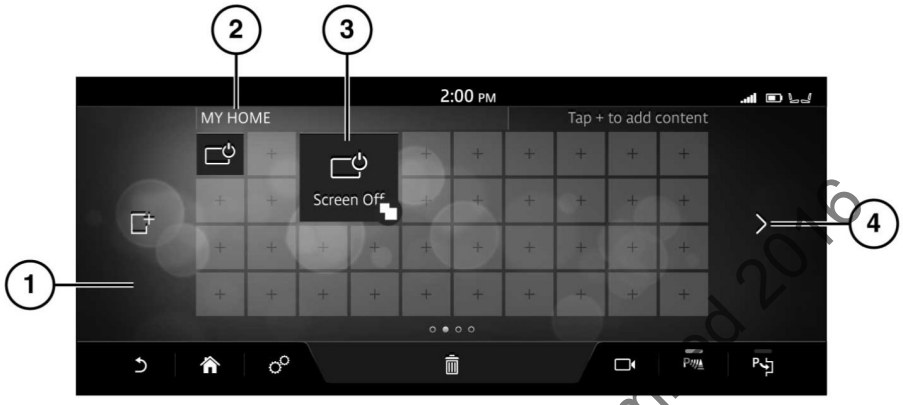
INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO

"http://goo.gl/xE6q0h"

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Touch screen - Home

MY HOME SCREEN



E179779

Note: *Screen shown is in edit mode.*

The **MY HOME** screen enables the user to display and arrange widgets and shortcuts to applications.

1. **MY HOME** screen: Multiple screens are available.
2. Personalised **MY HOME** screen name: Touch to edit.
3. Widgets and shortcuts: These are available in different sizes and can be moved to different locations.
4. Left and right arrows: Touch the arrows, or swipe the screen, to view all of the **MY HOME** screens, or to return to the **HOME** screen.

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO

http://goo.gl/3PFIEb

TOUCH SCREEN STATUS ICONS

The icons displayed at the top of the screen provide information about the status of the vehicle feature or application.

Phone signal strength indicator.

Phone battery level indicator.

Status of the heated or climate seats.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016



Traffic Alerts.



Wi-FI signal.



Connecting.



Phone set to divert incoming calls.



Network connection status.

TOUCH SCREEN USE

Do not use excessive pressure when selecting items on the touch screen.

Definitions for the various button taps and touch screen gestures used in this handbook:

- Touch: Briefly touch the screen's surface with a fingertip.
- Touch and hold: Touch the screen's surface for an extended period of time.
- Swipe: Move a fingertip over the screen's surface in a fast linear movement.
- Drag: Touch an object and move it with a fingertip over the screen's surface, without losing contact.
- Pinch: Spread two fingers apart on a map or image to zoom in. Pinch two fingers together on a map or image to zoom out.

EDITING SHORTCUTS, WIDGETS AND SCREENS

Adding a widget: Touch and hold the screen to display edit mode. Touch any of the **+** symbols on the screen and select from the available categories in the footer. Scroll through the gallery of widgets using the direction arrows, or swipe the screen. Touch to select a widget. The widget is then displayed on the **MY HOME** screen.

Moving a widget: Touch and hold the screen to display edit mode. Drag the widget to a new location. To move the widget to another **MY HOME** screen, drag it to the side of the screen.

Resizing a widget: Touch and hold the screen to display edit mode. When the widget has been selected, moved to a new location, or newly created, a resize toggle is displayed. Touch the toggle to resize the widget.

Delete a widget: Touch and hold the screen to display edit mode. Drag the widget to the delete bar.

Edit a personalised screen name: Touch and hold the screen to display edit mode. Touch the screen name and enter text using the keyboard. Touch **OK** to complete.

Moving a screen: Touch the **home** icon to display the **PREVIEW** screen for the **HOME**, **MY HOME** and **EXTRA FEATURES** screens. Touch the preview to display the chosen screen. Touch and hold the screen to display the **EDIT PREVIEWS** screen. Touch and drag the screen preview to the required position.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Adding a screen: While in the **PREVIEW** screen, touch and hold the screen to display the **EDIT PREVIEWS** screen. Touch the **+** symbol to create a new **MY HOME** screen. When adding or moving a widget, it can be dragged to the left side of the screen to create a new **MY HOME** screen.

Note: *A maximum of four **MY HOME** screens can be added.*

Deleting a screen: While in the **PREVIEW** screen, touch and hold the screen to display the **EDIT PREVIEWS** screen. Touch and hold the chosen **MY HOME** screen, and drag it to the delete bar and release.

TOUCH SCREEN CARE

Do not use abrasive cleaners on the touch screen. For approved cleaning products, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

Follow the cleaning instructions. See **291, CLEANING SCREENS AND DISPLAYS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

EXTRA FEATURES

In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust, or view the system when it is safe to do so.

Allows extra features to be enabled and disabled or the settings adjusted. Touch the extra feature to launch the required application or setting screen:

- **Eco Data**: The Eco data system is designed to help the driver maximise fuel economy by providing vehicle data and driving tips.
  Real-time Eco data can also be displayed in the Instrument panel.
- **Cameras**.
- **InControl Apps**.
- **Live**Part of InControl Pro Services.
- **Seats**.
- **Valet**.
- **Contacts**.
- **Bluetooth**.
- **4x4i**.

Note: *The number of extra features varies, depending on the specification of the vehicle.*

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO

http://goo.gl/k7BGo0

SELECTING VALET MODE

Valet mode allows the vehicle to be driven and locked by a parking attendant, without giving access to the loadspace and glovebox. Valet mode also prevents operation of the touch screen, to prevent access to phone numbers or navigation addresses. Only essential driver assist features are available, such as cameras, parking aid, etc.

Valet mode can be activated via the **Master PIN** (set in **GENERAL SETTINGS**). Alternatively use a temporary PIN (if the Master PIN is unknown), to allow someone other than the owner to set valet mode.

When set with the Master PIN, only the Master PIN can unlock valet mode. When set with a temporary PIN, the temporary PIN or the Master PIN unlocks valet mode.

To select valet mode:

1. Touch **Valet** in the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen. See **175, EXTRA FEATURES**.
2. Enter the **Master PIN** or a memorable four digit temporary PIN. When a temporary PIN is used, it has to be entered a second time to confirm the PIN. To cancel the PIN, touch the **return** icon. If the confirmation PIN is incorrectly entered, then a prompt to re-enter the PIN a second time appears. See **177, GENERAL SETTINGS**.
3. The **VALET MODE** screen is displayed to indicate that a PIN has been accepted and valet mode is active.

The loadspace and glovebox are now securely locked in valet mode and the **Valet Mode On** screen is displayed.

Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

DESELECTING VALET MODE

To deselect valet mode:

1. When re-entering the vehicle, touch the touch screen.
2. Enter the Master PIN or temporary PIN (if used to set the valet mode) and touch **OK**.

The **Home screen** is displayed to indicate that the PIN has been accepted and valet mode has been deactivated.

- The loadspace and glovebox are returned to the previously set security requirement.
- The touch screen is enabled.

Note: *If the Master PIN is forgotten, valet mode can only be deactivated by a retailer/authorised repairer.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

GENERAL SETTINGS

Accessing the touch screen settings allows the adjustment of general system settings.

Touch the **settings** icon from any screen, followed by **All Settings** and then **General**.

The **General** settings menu is divided into categories:

- **Time and Date**.
- **Display**.
- **Screensaver**.
- **Master PIN**.

  Note: *The default Master PIN is **1926**. Change the Master PIN to a personal PIN as soon as possible.*
- **Legal information**.
- **Data Collection** (only when set).

Touch to display the list of settings for the required system.

SYSTEM SETTINGS

Touch the **settings** icon from the **HOME** screen, followed by **All Settings** and then **Features**.

The **Features** settings menu is divided into categories.

- **Home**.
- **Navigation**.
- **Media**.
- **Phone**.
- **Climate**.
- **Seats**.
- **Connectivity**.
- **Cameras**.
- **InControl Apps**.
- **Live**: Part of InControl Pro Services.
- **Voice**.
- **Bluetooth**.

Touch to display the list of settings for the required system.

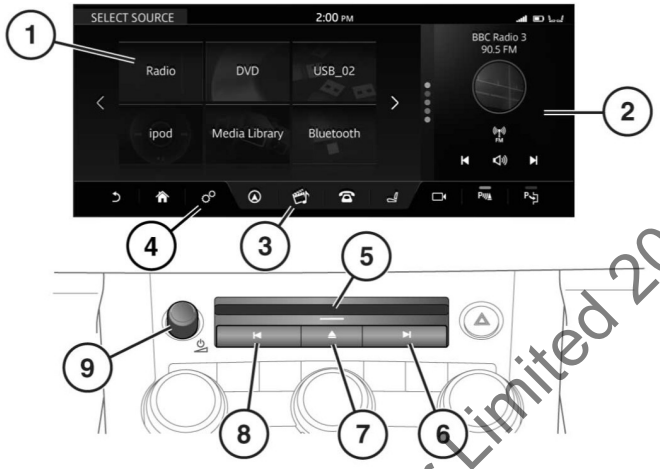
Note: *The list varies, depending on the specification of the vehicle.*

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO

http://goo.gl/RikSgO

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

MEDIA CONTROLS



E183064

In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust, or view the system when it is safe to do so.

Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage hearing.

1. Media source: Touch to select the media source.
2. Side panel: Displays the last used feature.
3. **Media** icon: Touch to select the media system. If the media system is already switched on, touch to select the media source.
4. **Settings** icon: Select **Audio Settings** or specific media settings, via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. See **180, AUDIO SETTINGS**.
5. CD or DVD loading slot: The player accommodates one disc at a time. Insert a disc into the loading slot until resistance is felt. The players mechanism completes the loading.
6. Seek up:
   - Press and release to auto-seek up the frequency to the next radio station, or to select the next track on the chosen audio source, CD, MP3, etc. Also press and release to select the next TV channel on the channel list, or the next DVD chapter.
   - Press and hold to activate radio manual seek mode or to scan forward through the current audio source track.

With radio manual seek mode activated, a further press and release changes the frequency in single increments. A further press and hold scans forward through the current waveband until the button is released.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

7. Eject button: Press to eject the CD or DVD.
8. Seek down:
   - Press and release to auto-seek down the frequency list to the next radio station, or to select the previous track, or the start of the current track on a chosen audio source, CD, MP3, etc. Also press and release to select the previous TV channel on the channel list, or the previous DVD chapter.
   - Press and hold to activate the radio's manual seek mode or to skip backward through the current audio source track.

   With radio manual seek mode activated, a further press and release changes the frequency in single decrements. A further press and hold scans backward through the current waveband until the button is released.
9. Power and volume control:
   - Press to switch the media system on and off.
   - Rotate to adjust the volume level (displayed on the touch screen).

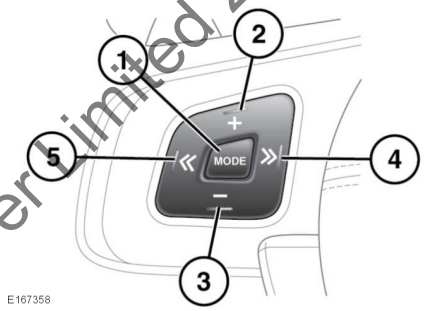
Note: *The media system operates with the ignition switched on or off, but always switches off when the ignition is switched off. Switch the media system on again, if required.*

Note: *If the volume is turned to zero while a media source is playing, the media pauses play. Play resumes when a greater volume is selected.*

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO

http://goo.gl/8hy8d3

AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.

1. **MODE**: Press to scroll through the grouped media sources.
2. Volume up: Press to increase the volume for any source.
3. Volume down: Press to decrease the volume for any source.
4. Seek up:
   Press and release:
   - To select the next radio favourite.
   - To select the next track on the chosen media source: CD, MP3, etc.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

- When the phone is in use, press to scroll up lists of calls or contact entries.
- To select the next TV channel on the channel list or the next video or DVD chapter.

Press and hold:

- To seek up to the next radio station.

5. Seek down:
   Press and release:
   - To select the previous radio favourite.
   - To select the start of current track or the previous track on the chosen media source: CD, MP3, etc.
   - When the phone is in use, press to scroll down lists of calls or contact entries.
   - To select the previous TV channel on the channel list, or the previous video or DVD chapter.

   Press and hold:
   - To seek down to the next radio station.

AUDIO SETTINGS

To view, touch the **settings** icon from any screen and then **Audio Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. To adjust the sound settings:

- Touch **+** or **-** to adjust the **Bass**, **Treble**, or **Subwoofer** levels. Alternatively, touch the slider bar and drag, or touch anywhere on the bar, and release.

To adjust the balance and fade settings:


Front.


Left.


Right.


Rear.


Home point.


Sound focal point.

Touch the arrows to move the sound focal point to the desired area of the vehicle. Alternatively, touch the sound focal point and drag it to the required position, or touch anywhere on the vehicle graphic, and release. To return to the default setting, touch the home point.

To adjust the surround sound settings:

- If **Meridian Surround** or **Meridian Reference** is available, touch **Meridian**, **Dolby Pro Logic IIx** or **DTS Neo:6** to select **Surround Sound**. Select **Stereo** to switch **Surround Sound** off.

Note: *Surround sound options are not available for certain sources where the surround sound mode is set automatically.*

LOADING DISCS

To prevent CD mechanism damage, do not insert any object other than a CD or DVD into the disc slot. Objects, such as coins, tickets, and cards, cause mechanism errors and permanent damage to the device.

Do not force the disc into the slot.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

- Do not use irregular shaped CDs or DVDs, and those with a scratch protection film or self-adhesive label attached.
- Do not use mini-sized CDs, even with an adaptor.
- Recordable (CD-R) discs and re-writable (CD-RW) discs may not function correctly.
- Recordable (DVD-R or DVD+R) discs may not function correctly.
- Dual-format and dual-sided discs (DVD Plus, CD-DVD format) are thicker than normal CDs and so playback cannot be guaranteed and jamming may occur.

Only use an approved CD cleaning kit.

Only use high quality 12 cm circular discs.

The player accommodates one CD or DVD disc at a time. When a CD is loaded, the ripping media option is available.

Select **Media Settings**, via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.

CONVERSATION ASSIST

Conversation assist uses the vehicle's sound system and the front and rear microphones to enhance the conversation over the vehicle's interior noise.

The conversation assist feature controls are located in the **VOLUME SETTINGS** screen.

Select **All Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu, and then **Features**. Next select **Media**, followed by **Volume Settings**. See **177, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

Conversation assist offers three options:

1. **Off**: Touch to switch the system off.
2. **Normal**: Touch to select the normal volume level.
3. **High**: Touch to select the high volume level.

When active, front passenger voices are reproduced through the rear speakers and rear passengers voices are reproduced through the front speakers. The system is disabled when at a standstill and progressively increases with vehicle speed and background noise.

Note: *The system is disabled when at a standstill, during phone calls, or at higher volumes, e.g. when loud music is playing.*

GRACENOTE® END USER LICENSING AGREEMENT

Gracenote Terms of Use

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to do disc or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended end-user functions of this application or device.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

This application or device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licence to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licence ends, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its rights under this agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote **Privacy Policy** for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

© 2013. Gracenote, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

LICENSING



E180920



E135227



E145346



E132539

Manufactured under licence from Dolby Laboratories.

Dolby, Dolby Audio, Dolby Digital, Pro Logic, and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.



E132540

Manufactured under licence, under U.S. Patent number's: 5451942, 5956674, 5974380, 5978762, 6487535, 7003467 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS, the Symbol, and Neo:6 are registered trademarks, & DTS Digital Surround and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



E132541



E132542

Manufactured under licence, under U.S. Patent number's: 5451942, 5956674, 5974380, 5978762, 6487535 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS and the Symbol are registered trademarks, & DTS 2.0+ Digital Out and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



E132544

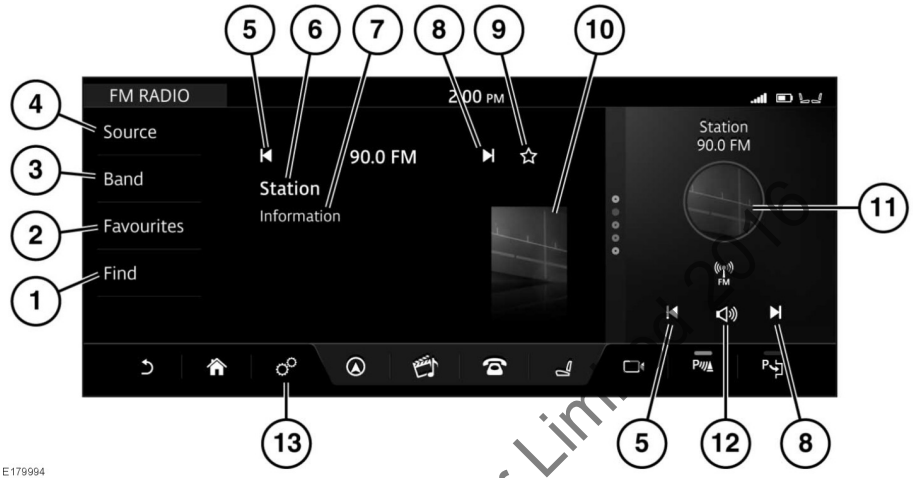
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Music and video recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit: **www.gracenote.com**.

CD, DVD, Blu-ray Disc, and music and video-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDB, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

AM/FM RADIO CONTROLS



E179994

In the interest of safety, only operate, or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.

Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage hearing.

1. **Find**: Touch to display options for finding a required station, frequency, or genre.
   - **STATION LIST**: Touch to display a list of available stations on the selected waveband.
   - **FREQUENCY INPUT**: Touch to display the keypad. Enter the required frequency.
   - **GENRE**: Touch to display a list of available genres. Select the required genre from the list.
2. **Favourites**: Touch to display a single list of **AM**, **FM** and **DAB** favourite stations. Touch the **favourite** icon to add or delete the selected station from the favourites list. Touch the station's frequency or name to select that station and play it.
   To rearrange the order of the list, touch the **edit** icon. Drag and drop selected items, to the desired position. Touch **OK** to confirm.
3. **Band**: Touch to view and select a radio band: **AM**, **FM**, or **DAB**. The radio tunes to the last used station on that radio band.
4. **Source**: Touch to display all media sources.
5. Seek down:
   - Touch, or swipe the touch screen to the right, to seek down to the previous radio station.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2020

- Touch and hold to seek down through the radio stations.

6. Station information display: Touch anywhere on the stations's name or frequency to access the **FREQUENCY INPUT** keypad. Enter the required frequency.

   Note: *The keypad only allows the input of possible frequencies valid for the vehicle's market.*

7. Broadcasting station information display: Touch to view further information. Touch again to close the information display.

   Note: *If unavailable, a generic image is displayed.*

8. Seek up:
   - Touch, or swipe the touch screen to the left, to seek up to the next radio station.
   - Touch and hold to seek up through the radio stations.
9. **Favourites** icon: Touch to add stations to, or delete from, the **Favourites** list. When the tuned station is set as a favourite this is highlighted.
10. Artist or station image: Touch to view further information. Touch again to close the information display.
11. AM or FM radio shortcut: Touch to view the **AM** or **FM RADIO** screen.
12. **Mute** icon: Touch to mute the volume.
13. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu, and then select **AM/FM Settings**. Touch to activate or deactivate the following features: **RDS**, **Traffic Alerts (TA)**, **News**, **Station List Order**, **Alternate Frequency** (AF) and **Regionalisation**. See **186, RADIO DATA SYSTEM (RDS)**.

Note: *The media system provides a two channel radio, enabling occupants to listen to two different radio stations at the same time (not available in all markets).*

Note: *Electronic devices used within, connected to, or within close proximity to the vehicle, may affect the performance of this system, e.g., radio reception, etc.*

Mexico only

Operation of Radio equipment is subject to the following two conditions:

1. The device/system does not cause harmful interference.
2. The device or system must accept any interference, including any undesired operation.

RADIO DATA SYSTEM (RDS)

The radio is equipped with a Radio Data System (RDS), which enables the media system to receive extra information with normal FM radio signals.

Note: *Not all FM radio stations broadcast RDS information.*

Touch the **settings** icon to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **AM/FM Settings** to view or alter the **RDS** settings.

- **RDS**: Select **ON** or **OFF**.
- **Traffic Alerts (TA)**: Provides local travel information.
- **News**: Provides news information.
- **Station List Order**: Lists stations by name or frequency.
- **Alternative Frequency**: Select to allow the radio to automatically retune to a stronger Alternative Frequency (AF) for the current station. This is useful on a journey where the vehicle travels through different transmitter areas.

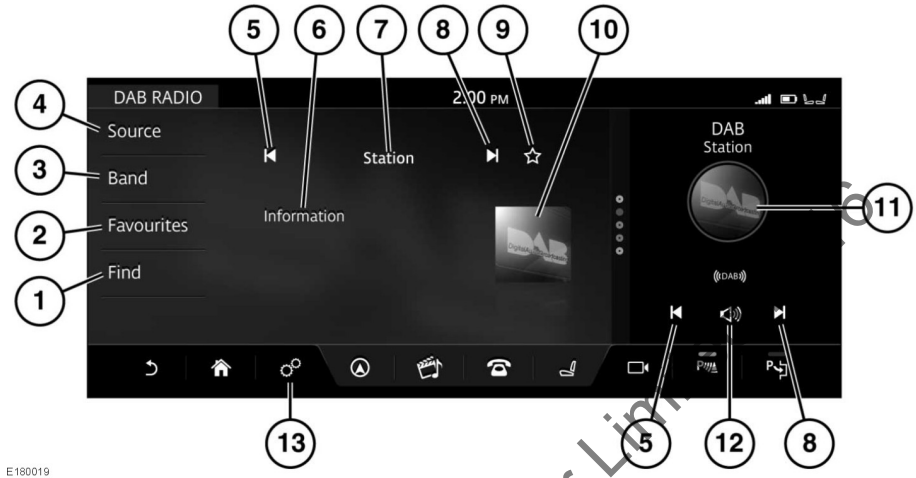
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

- **Regionalisation**: When **ON**, then no regional switching occurs. It allows AF switching when AF is **ON**, to other station frequencies with identical content.
  When regionalisation is **OFF** and AF is **ON**, it allows AF switching to other station frequencies with similar content.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

DAB radio

DAB RADIO CONTROLS



In the interest of safety, only operate, or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.

Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage hearing.

1. **Find**: Touch to display options for finding a required station.
   - **DAB STATION LIST**: Touch to view a list of available stations. The list is arranged in alphabetical order. Select the up or down arrows to scroll through the list.
   - **DAB GENRE**:Touch to list available genres. These are stations grouped into categories: **Pop Music**, **Travel**, etc.
   - **SEARCH**: Touch to search using the keyboard. Enter the required station name and select **OK**.
2. **Favourites**: Touch to display a single list of **AM**, **FM**, and **DAB** favourite stations. Touch the **favourites** icon to add or delete the selected station from the favourites list. Touch the station's frequency or name to select that station and play it.
   To rearrange the order of the list, touch the **edit** icon. Drag and drop selected items to the desired position. Touch **OK** to confirm.
3. **Band**: Touch to view and select a radio band: **AM**, **FM**, or **DAB**. The radio tunes to the last used station on that radio band.
4. **Source**: Touch to display all media options.
5. Seek down:
   - Touch, or swipe the touch screen to the right, to select the previous station.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

6. Station information: Touch to view DAB information.
7. DAB station display: Displays the current station.
8. Seek up:
   - Touch, or swipe the touch screen to the left, to select the next station.
9. **Favourites** icon: Touch to add stations to, or delete from, **RADIO FAVOURITES**. When a tuned station is set as a favourite, this is highlighted.
10. Artist or station image: Touch to view further information. Touch again to close the information display.

    Note: *If unavailable, a generic image is displayed.*
11. DAB radio shortcut: Touch to view the **DAB RADIO** screen.
12. **Mute** icon: Touch to mute the volume.
13. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **DAB Settings**. Touch to activate or deactivate the following features: **Link to FM Stations**, **Frequency Band**, and **Announcements**. See **189, DAB RADIO SETTINGS**.

Note: *The media system provides a two channel radio, enabling occupants to listen to two different radio stations at the same time (not available in all markets).*

Note: *Electronic devices used within, connected to, or within close proximity to the vehicle, may affect the performance of this system. For example, radio reception, etc.*

DAB RADIO SETTINGS

In **DAB Settings**:

- **Link to FM Stations**: Can be switched on via the **DAB Settings** screen. When the DAB signal strength, for a station, falls below an acceptable level, this is activated. The media system automatically switches to the FM version of this station, when the option is available.
- Choose **Frequency Band** if moving to a region that uses a different digital band. Available formats are:
  - **Band 3**.
  - **Band L**.
  - **Band 3 & Band L**.
  - **Band 3 China**.
  - **Band 3 China & Band L**.
- Select **Announcements**, e.g., **Traffic**, **News**, etc., from the list. The selected announcement interrupts the current programme, when broadcast.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS

Portable media devices can be connected to the media hub located in the centre console cubby box. Optical discs can be inserted into the CD/DVD drive located in the centre console.

Compatible portable devices include:

- USB mass storage devices e.g., a memory stick. Devices must use FAT or FAT32.

  Note: *External hard drives are not recommended to be left inside the vehicle for extended periods, as it could reduce the life of the device.*
- Optical media: album CDs or DVDs.
- iPod: iPad, iPod Touch, iPhone, iPod Nano, iPod Classic Gen4, Gen5, and Gen6 are supported. Full functionality for older devices cannot be guaranteed. iPod Classic Gen1, Gen2, Gen3, and iPod Shuffle are not supported.
- Media devices that support HDMI or MHL.

If connecting an iPod, mass storage or **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device, use the touch screen to operate and search the device. Many of the controls are similar to those available for CD playback.

Please disconnect the iPod when leaving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in the iPod battery discharging.

Note: *The media system plays MP3, WMA, WAV, AIFF, M4A, FLAC, AAC, AMR, LPCM, and ALAC files. Other formats are available.*

To maximise playback quality, it is recommended that lossless compression is used for any media files on USB. Failing this, it is recommended that compressed files utilise a minimum bit rate of 192 kb/s. A higher bit rate is strongly recommended.

Note: *iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries.*

Note: *Some MP3 players have their own file system that is not supported by this system. To use an MP3 player, set it to* ***USB Removable Device*** *or* ***Mass Storage Device*** *mode.*

Bluetooth® connections

For information on pairing and connecting a **Bluetooth** wireless technology device. See **194, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE MEDIA PLAYER**.

For further information on **Bluetooth** wireless technology. See **235, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.

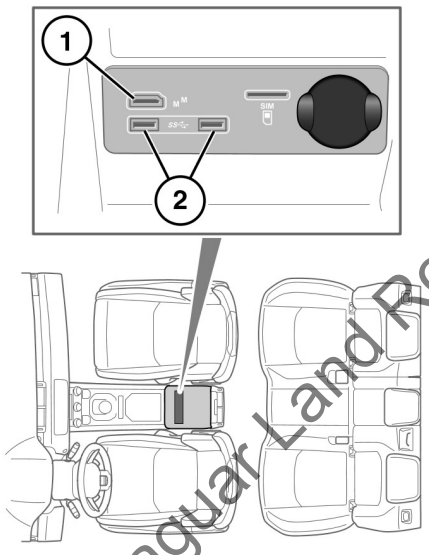
For a list of compatible **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices, please refer to the Land Rover website at: **www.landrover.com**.

The **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices listed have been tested for compatibility with Jaguar Land Rover vehicles. Performance varies, based on the device's software version and battery condition. Devices are warranted by their manufacturer, not the vehicle manufacturer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE

Read the manufacturer's instructions for any device, before it is connected to the media system. Make sure that the device is suitable. Comply with any instructions regarding connection and operation. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle's media system or the media device.



E187974

Connect the device into the appropriate socket:

1. HDMI/MHL socket.
2. USB sockets.

Note: *Use the cable supplied with the media device to connect to the USB socket.*

Note: *High quality cables are recommended to be used with Apple devices, as this enhances operation.*

Note: *A USB hub cannot be used to connect more than one USB device to the media system.*

Note: *Devices connected to the USB ports are charged. Devices that are fully discharged do not play.*

Note: *Higher-rated devices that require more than 7.5W to charge may not display an indicator when charging. These devices are charged without the indicator being displayed.*

Note: *HDMI devices are not charged.*

Note: *Apple devices should be updated to the latest iOS version, otherwise, full support cannot be guaranteed.*

Note: *Options, such as* ***Repeat*** *and* ***Shuffle****, relate to the device currently playing. The options do not apply to any subsequent device. Previous* ***Repeat*** *and* ***Shuffle*** *selections deactivate when a new queue has been created.*

Note: *The available sockets vary, according to vehicle specification.*

E180361

The SuperSpeed USB Trident Logo is a registered trademark of USB Implementer Forum, Inc.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

PORTABLE MEDIA CONTROLS



In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.

Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage hearing.

See **178, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

Portable media includes **Media Library** (internal storage), CD, iPods, iPads, iPhones, USB mass storage, HDMI, MHL and **Bluetooth**® wireless technology devices.

1. **Queue**: Opens the current queue of tracks selected from the portable media devices. To add a track, album, artist, or genre to the queue, touch and hold the respective item at any time. A pop-up list gives further instructions.

   Note: *Selecting a track, album, artist, or genre not currently in the queue to play, causes the current queue to be erased.*

2. **Find**: Touch to select the **artist**, **album** or **song** icon to display results in alphabetical order. Select the **more** icon to display a list of further available options: **Playlists**, **Genres**, **Videos**, **Folder Browse**, etc.
   - Select **Folder Browse** to view the contents of the connected device, which are displayed as dictated by the file structure.
   - Select a file to start playback. Select a folder or sub-folder to view their contents.
   - To return to the **MEDIA LIBRARY** screen, touch the **return** icon.
3. **Source**: Displays all media sources.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

- The list of media devices is dynamically populated, based on whether they are connected.

Note: *Sound quality and volume levels available from connected media devices may vary widely.*

4. Track information display: Touch the displayed text to view a list of tracks in the album. Touch again to return to the current track information display. Information is also displayed in the instrument panel.

   Note: *Only connected devices that support ID3 tags shall have the information displayed.*

5. Interactive time progress bar: Touch or drag to move forward or backward through the current track.

   Note: *Only connected devices that support the interactive time progress bar shall have this function.*

6. Album image display: Touch to view the list of tracks on the album, the queue list, or information for the current track. Touch again to revert back to the previous view or press the **return** icon.

   Note: *ID3 tag information is displayed. If unavailable, a generic image is displayed.*

7. Media library shortcut: Touch to view the **MEDIA LIBRARY** screen.
8. Skip or scan forward:
   - Touch and release to skip forward to the next track.
   - Touch and hold to scan forward through the current track. Playback is resumed, when released.
   - Swipe the touch screen to the left to skip to the next track.
9. Pause or play: Select to pause playback. Select again to resume playback.
10. Skip or scan backward:
    - Touch and release to skip back to the previous track.
    - Touch and hold to scan backward through the current track. Playback is resumed, when released.
    - Swipe the touch screen to the right to skip to the previous track.
11. **More like this** icon: Select to automatically generate a smart playlist based on similar tracks. Touch, at any time, to create a new list based on the track currently being played.

    Note: *Loading time is dependent on content type.*

    Note: *When a CD is selected, the **more like this** icon is replaced by a **rip** icon. Notification is displayed when ripping of the CD is complete.*

12. **Repeat** icon: Touch to repeat the current track continuously. The **repeat** icon is highlighted when active. Touch again to cancel.
13. **Shuffle** icon: Touch to shuffle the current music queue continuously. The **shuffle** icon is highlighted when active. Touch again to cancel.
14. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SYSTEM SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **Media** to manage the vehicle's memory (import and delete files) and change the CD rip settings.

PLAYING A PORTABLE DEVICE

If using a USB mass storage device or compatible Apple device, control playback using the touch screen controls.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

If using a **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device, control playback using the touch screen. Some controls may be unavailable, depending on what the device and the media player system supports.

If using any media device via the HDMI/ MHL socket, control playback from the device itself.

It is recommended not to use a hard disc drive via the USB link while the vehicle is in motion. These devices are not designed for in-vehicle use and may be damaged.

CONNECTING MULTIPLE DEVICES

Multiple devices can simultaneously be connected to the portable media interface and switch between them using the touch screen. Select **iPod**, **USB**, **Bluetooth**, or **HDMI/HML** to switch between inputs.

After changing to a newly-docked device, upon return to a previous device, playback is resumed from the point at which it was left (USB and iPod only).

See **191, CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE**.

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE MEDIA PLAYER

Note: *The process of pairing and connecting the media device with the vehicle, using the media device, varies depending on the type of media device.*

1. Switch on the ignition and make sure that the touch screen is active.
2. From the **MEDIA CONTROL** screen, touch the **settings** icon. Select **All Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Next, select **Features**, followed by **Bluetooth**.
3. The **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen displays. Select **Pair New Device**.
4. The vehicle's **Bluetooth**® wireless technology system remains discoverable while in the pairing screen.
5. Using the media device, search for devices.
   On some media devices, this is referred to as a new paired device. See the device's operating instructions for further information.
   The vehicle's name is displayed as the default discoverable name.
6. When the vehicle's discoverable name is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions.
   Select **Yes** when prompted, to confirm the pairing. On some media devices, this completes the pairing.
   Alternatively, on other media devices, the vehicle's system displays a PIN. When prompted, either enter the PIN on the device, or select **Yes** to confirm that the PIN displayed matches the vehicle's PIN.
7. Once the media device is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message displays. Either, select the **return** icon or return to the previously selected media, and then select **Source**.
8. Select the media device from the displayed media options.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Note: *If, when playing media through a wireless connected Apple device, the Apple device is then also connected to a USB port, the wireless connection is disabled. To reconnect via wireless, the USB connection needs to be disconnected and the Apple device reconnected via the* ***BLUETOOTH SETTINGS*** *screen.*

Note: *Apple devices with a large quantity of media on them can take a considerable amount of time to sync. During this time, playback can only be accessed from the Apple device's media player and not via voice commands.*

Note: *After the Apple device has been synced with the media system, the device can then be controlled via the media system or operated by the voice system. If the Apple device's track list is updated after the device was previously synced, the device needs to be re-synced to the media system. During this time, the Apple device's voice commands become temporarily unavailable.*

For further information on **Bluetooth®** wireless technology. See **235, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.

CHANGING/DISCONNECTING A DEVICE

To connect or disconnect a paired **Bluetooth®** device:

1. Touch the **settings** icon to select **All Settings** via the **SYSTEM SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Next, select **Features**, followed by **Bluetooth**.
2. The **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen displays. Select **Paired Devices**.
3. Paired devices are listed. Select **Connect** or **Disconnect**.

To unpair a paired **Bluetooth** device:

1. Select **All Settings** via the **SYSTEM SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Next, select **Features**, followed by **Bluetooth**.
2. The **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen displays. Select **Paired Devices**.
3. Paired devices are listed. Select the device's name, followed by **Forget Device**.

To forget all paired **Bluetooth** devices:

1. Select **All Settings** via the **SYSTEM SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Next, select **Features**, followed by **Bluetooth**.
2. The **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen displays. Select **Forget All Devices**.

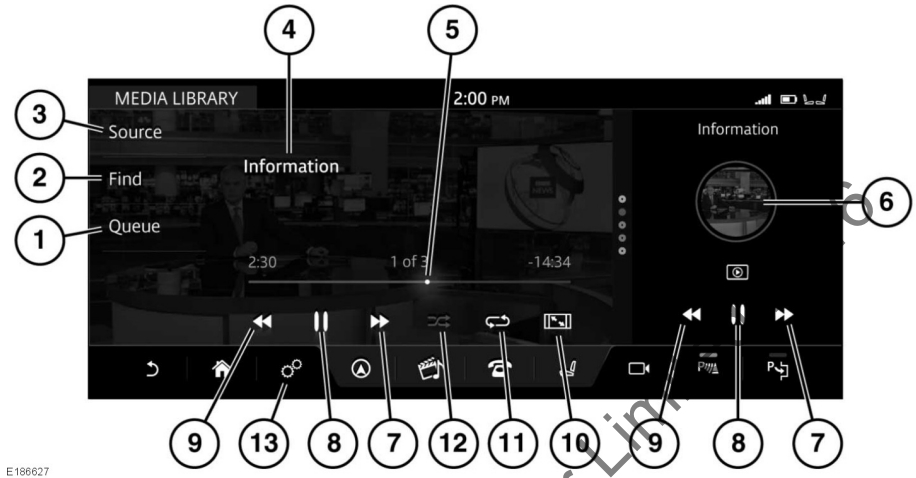
IMPORTING/RIPPING MEDIA

The vehicle's internal storage, which is used for navigation data, speech data, and metadata databases, also allows media to be stored by:

- Importing media from USB memory devices, via the **MEDIA PLAYER SETTINGS** screen.
- Ripping media from CDs.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

VIDEO MEDIA PLAYER CONTROLS



E186627

In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust, or view the system when it is safe to do so.

Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage hearing.

Note: *The system plays MPEG1, MPEG2, WMV9, VC-1, H.264, H.263, MPEG4 ASP, RAW, VP6, and VP8 files.*

Note: *To maximise the playback quality, it is recommended not to playback video files with a resolution greater than 1 080p.*

Note: *The quality of video playback may be affected by the USB 3 memory device's speed.*

1. **Queue**: Opens the current queue of videos selected from the relevant device.
2. **Find**: Touch to search, or select from the list of videos. The list is displayed in alphabetical order.
3. **Source**: Touch to display all media sources.

   Note: *The media sources, e.g., DVD or USB 3 memory devices, are displayed, only if they are inserted or connected.*
4. Video playback: Touch to select full screen mode or wait for the preview screen to time-out. Touch the screen again to view the controls at any time.
5. Interactive time progress bar: Touch or drag to move forward or backward through the current video track.
6. Media library shortcut: Touch to view the **MEDIA LIBRARY** screen.
7. Skip or scan forward:
   - Touch and release to skip forward to the next video track.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

- Touch and hold to scan forward through the current video track. Playback is resumed, when released.
- Swipe the touch screen to the left, to skip to the next video track.

8. Pause or play: Select to pause playback. Select again to resume playback. A second touch stops and resets the video.
9. Skip or scan backward:
   - Touch and release to skip backward to the previous video track.
   - Touch and hold to scan backward through the current video track. Playback is resumed, when released.
   - Swipe the touch screen to the right, to skip to the previous video track.
10. **Zoom** icon: Select to zoom in or out between the two available options.
11. **Repeat** icon: Touch to repeat the current video continuously. The **repeat** icon is highlighted when active. Touch again to cancel.
12. **Shuffle** icon: Touch to shuffle the current video queue. The **shuffle** icon is highlighted when active. Touch again to cancel.
13. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SYSTEM SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **All Settings**. Select **Features** and then **Media**.

VIDEO MEDIA INHIBIT WITH VEHICLE MOVING

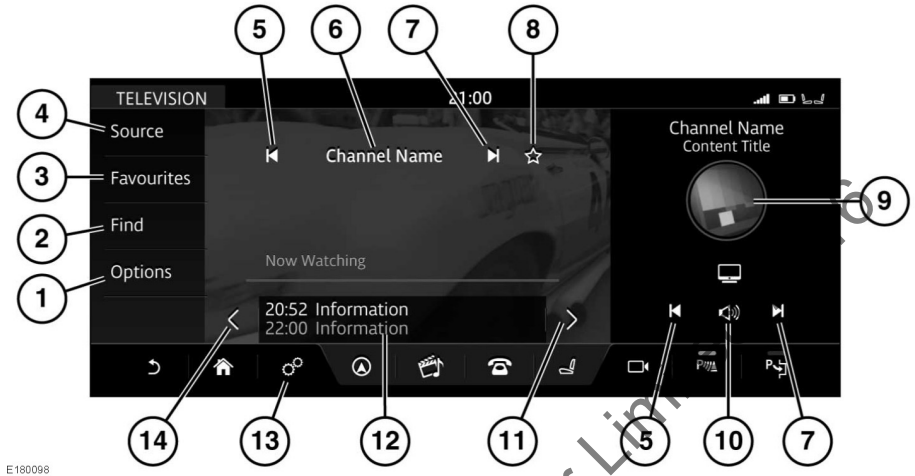
When the vehicle is moving, the video picture is automatically inhibited. A relevant safety message is displayed on the touch screen.

FULL SCREEN VIEW

When full screen mode is selected, the seek controls operate in the same manner as they do in preview mode.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

TELEVISION CONTROLS



In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust, or view the system when it is safe to do so.

Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage hearing.

Note: *While continuing to work closely with partners to develop TV standards worldwide, we cannot guarantee the TV feature in all countries at all times.*

1. **Options:** Touch to display various TV options.
   - Touch the **zoom** icon to zoom in from **16:9** or **4:3** to fit the screen. Touch again to zoom out.
   - Touch the **audio** icon to access available alternative audio tracks for the current broadcast.
   - Touch the **video** icon to access available alternative video feeds for the current broadcast.
2. **Find**: Touch to display **CHANNEL LIST** to find a TV channel.
   - **CHANNEL LIST**: Select the up or down arrows to scroll through the list or swipe the touch screen up or down. Touch the name of the channel to tune to and view that channel.

   Note: *The TV system is continually checking the availability of channels. Not all the channels in the list, may actually be available. For example when driving through different transmitter regions.*
3. **Favourites**: Touch to display a single list of favourite stations. To rearrange the order of the list, touch the **edit** icon in the footer. Drag and drop selected items to the desired position. Press **OK** to confirm.
4. **Source**: Touch to display all radio and media options.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

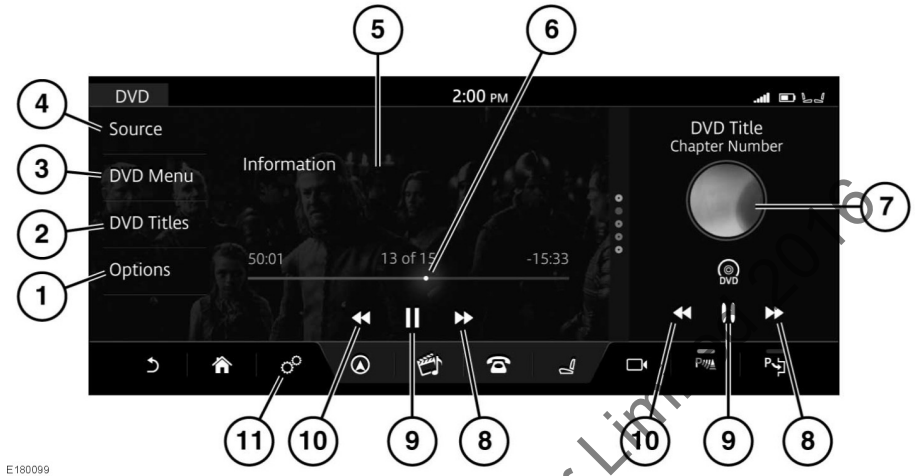
5. Seek down: Touch, or swipe the touch screen to the right, to tune to and view the previous channel in the TV channel list.
6. Current channel and programme title display.
7. Seek up: Touch, or swipe the touch screen to the left, to tune to and view the next channel in the TV channel list.
8. **Favourites** icon: Touch to add to, or delete from, the **Favourites** list.
9. Television shortcut: Touch to view the **TELEVISION CONTROLS** screen.
10. **Mute** icon: Touch to mute the volume.
11. Seek up: Touch to browse to the next TV programme on the programme schedule list. Touch the programme to select it.
12. Programme schedule: Shows the TV programme currently playing and what is coming up next.
13. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu and then select **TV Settings**. Select the **Parental Lock**, **BCAS Serial Number**, **Channel Lock**, **Genre Lock** or **Rating Lock** options.
14. Seek down: Touch to browse to the previous TV programme on the programme schedule list. Touch the programme to select it.

The audio and video options are operated via the media system. See **178, MEDIA CONTROLS**, or steering wheel controls. See**179, AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

DVD player

DVD PLAYER CONTROLS



In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust, or view the system when it is safe to do so.

Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage hearing.

Note: *When the vehicle is moving the video picture is automatically inhibited. See* ***197, VIDEO MEDIA INHIBIT WITH VEHICLE MOVING***

1. **Options**: Touch to access **Zoom In/ Out**, **Audio**, **Angle**, and **Subtitle** options.

   Note: *The options displayed are dependent on the inserted DVD options.*
2. **DVD Titles**: Touch to display a list of DVD titles.
3. **DVD Menu**: Touch to access the DVD menu.
   - **Top Menu**: Only displayed if supported by the DVD.
   - **Resume**: Touch to resume play.
   - Menu navigation keys: Touch to move up or down through the menu options.

   Note: *The DVD menu can also be selected by touching the screen in full screen mode.*
4. **Source**: Touch to display all media options.
5. DVD information: Touch to select full screen mode. Touch the screen again to view the controls at any time. Alternatively, swipe the touch screen to search for the previous or next chapter.
6. Interactive time progress bar: Touch or drag to move forward or backward through the current DVD.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

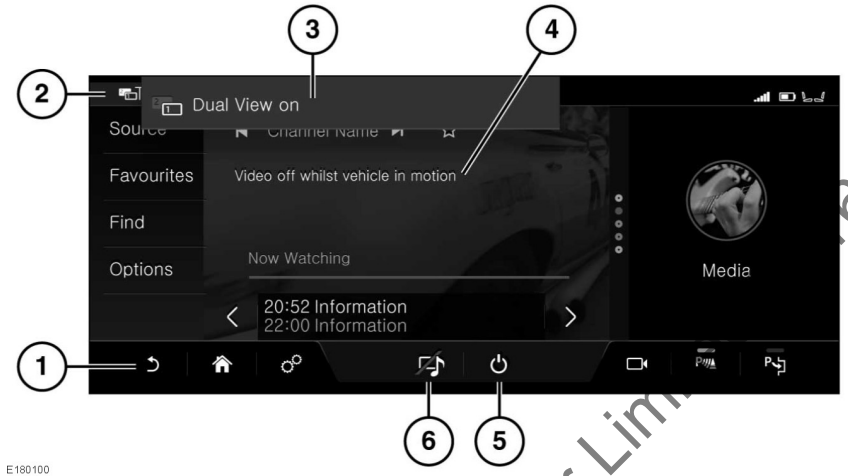
7. DVD shortcut: Touch to view the **DVD** screen.
8. Seek up: Touch and release to view the next DVD chapter. Touch and hold to fast forward.
9. Pause or play: Touch to pause playback. Touch again to resume playback.
10. Seek down: Touch and release to view the previous DVD chapter. Touch and hold to rewind.
11. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SYSTEM SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **All Settings** and then **Features**. Next, select **Media** to activate or deactivate the following features: **Auto Play DVD on Loading** and **Parental Control**.

The media controls are operated via the media system. See **178, MEDIA CONTROLS**, or the steering wheel. See **179, AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS**. Information of the CD/DVD loading slot and eject button can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **180, LOADING DISCS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Dual view

DUAL VIEW CONTROLS



1. **Return** icon: Touch to show media in full screen view for the passenger and return the driver to their previous screen.
2. **Dual view** icon: Indicates the screen being operated for the passenger.
3. Information banner: Momentarily displayed when dual view is switched on.
4. When the vehicle is being driven, moving images are inhibited from the driver's view.

   Note: *Moving images are reactivated when the vehicle is stationary.*
5. **Power** icon: Touch to switch off dual view mode.

   Note: *Alternatively, press and hold the dual view icon to switch off.*
6. **Audio** icon: Touch for the passenger to select a dual view source, e.g., media player. Viewing of the same screen as the driver, e.g., navigation, is still available with this option selected.

Note: *If the dual view controls are not used for over 10 seconds, the display reverts to full screen view. Press the* ***dual view*** *icon again to view the controls.*

DUAL VIEW

Dual view allows the front passenger to view or listen to media, while the driver is using an alternative system, e.g., radio or navigation.



1. While in the selected screen e.g. navigation, touch the **dual view** icon.

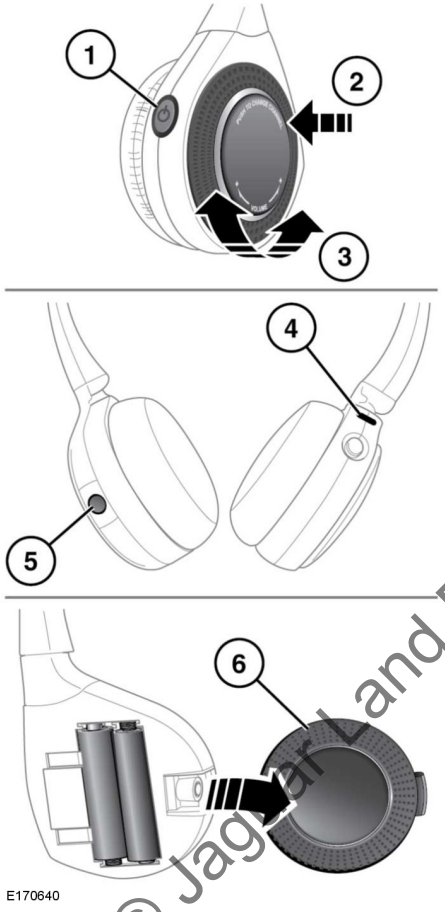
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

2. The **SELECT SOURCE** screen is displayed. Select the chosen media source, e.g., media player. This is displayed, along with the dual view controls in the footer.
3. Touch the **settings** icon for the passenger to make changes to the selected media source.
4. Touch the **return** icon, when changes are complete, to give the previous view back to the driver. The selected source view remains visible to the passenger.
5. If the passenger wants to take control of the touch screen, the **settings** icon and then the **dual view** icon should be touched. This takes both the passenger and the driver back to the selected media source and displays the dual view controls in the footer. To return to dual view, touch the **return** icon or wait for a period of 10 seconds, the display will then return to dual view.

Note: *The dual view controls are also displayed on the driver's view.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

HEADPHONES



E170640

1. Power button: Press to switch the headphones on or off.
2. Channel button: Press to change the media channel.
3. Volume control: Rotate to adjust the headphone volume.
4. The status LED indicator lamp:
   - When a signal is being received, the lamp illuminates continuously.
   - When a signal is not being received, the lamp flashes.
   - When the battery power is low, the lamp flashes and then extinguishes after a short delay.
5. The battery access cover's securing screw.
6. The battery access cover.

When the battery power is low, the headphones emit a beeping sound every 90 seconds.

To replace the batteries, use the following procedure:

1. Remove the battery access cover's securing screw (**5**).
2. Pull the battery access cover (**6**) away from the headphones.
3. Remove the used batteries.
4. Fit the new AAA batteries.

   Note: *Make sure that the polarity of the batteries matches that shown inside the headphone's battery compartment.*
5. Replace the battery access cover and fit the battery access cover retaining screw.

   Note: *The headphones do not operate if the batteries are fitted incorrectly.*

   Note: *Under normal usage, the expected battery life is six months.*

   Note: *Always use good quality batteries of the same type.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

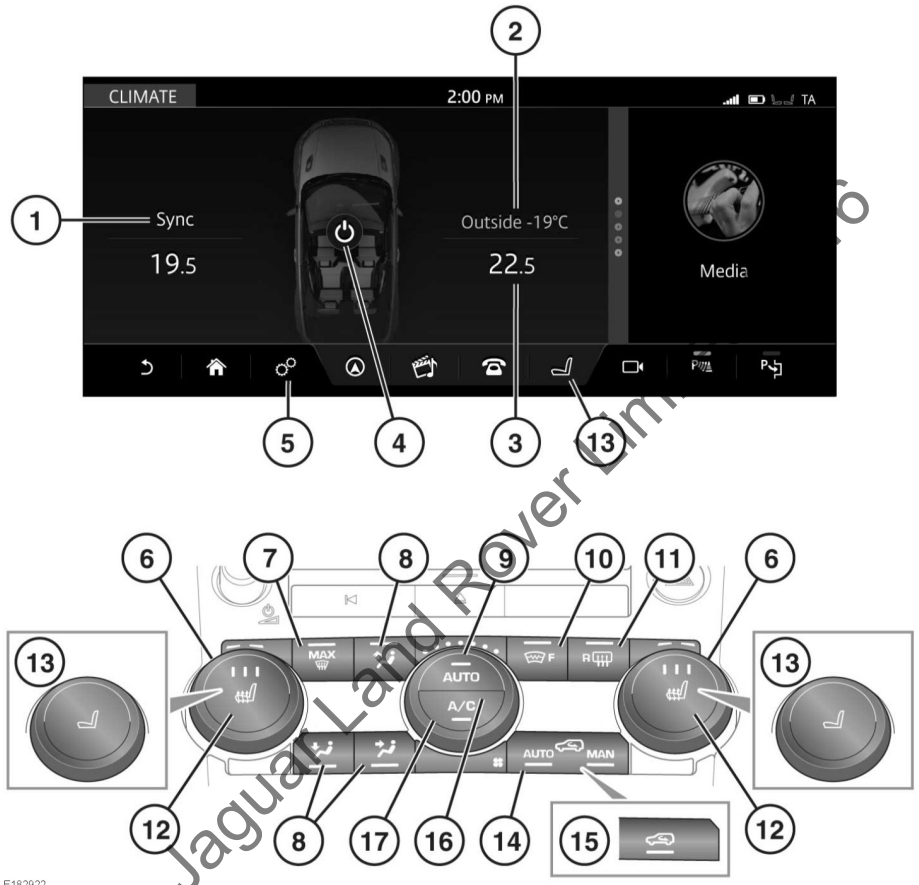
Headphones



Used batteries must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on battery disposal from a retailer/authorised repairer and/or the local authority.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

CLIMATE CONTROL



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.

Do not adjust the touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

To access the **CLIMATE** screen, select **Climate** from the **HOME** screen. See **170, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**.

Control the climate as follows:

1. **Sync**: Select to synchronise the front and rear passenger climate settings to the driver's settings.
2. External temperature display.

Note: *When the external temperature is low enough that ice may be present on the road, an amber snowflake warning lamp illuminates in the instrument panel. See* ***68, EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER)****.*

3. Temperature display.
4. **Power** icon: Select to switch the climate control system on or off.
5. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu and then select **Climate Settings**. See **209, CLIMATE SETTINGS**.
6. Temperature controls: Rotate to adjust the temperature.
7. **MAX**: Press to switch maximum defrost for the windscreen on or off.

   Note: *In low temperatures, it is advisable to close the centre face-level vent and direct air flow from the outer face-level vents towards the side windows. Directing air flow towards the side windows helps to keep the side windows clear of ice.*
8. Air distribution: An LED illuminates in the selected switches.

   Note: *More than one setting may be selected, at a time, to achieve the desired distribution.*
9. **AUTO** control: Press to switch automatic operation on. Dependent on the vehicle's specification, the various options for **AUTO** mode can be set via the **CLIMATE SETTINGS** menu.

   Note: ***AUTO*** *mode is the recommended normal operating mode. The Air Conditioning (A/C) and heating and ventilation controls automatically provide an optimum environment at the selected temperature.*
10. Heated front screen: Press to switch on or off. If left on, it deactivates after a timed period, dependent on the outside temperature.

    Note: *In cold ambient conditions, the heated front and rear screen switch on automatically when the engine is started. This function can be switched on or off via the* ***Climate Settings*** *screen. See* ***209, CLIMATE SETTINGS****.*

    Note: *The heated front and rear screens operate only when the engine is running.*
11. Heated rear screen: Press to switch on or off. If left on, it deactivates after a timed period, dependent on the outside temperature.

    Do not attach labels to the rear screen. Do not scrape or use abrasive materials to clean the inside of the rear screen.
12. Heated seats. See **211, HEATED SEATS**.
13. Climate seats. See **212, CLIMATE SEATS**.
14. Recirculation (vehicles fitted with an air quality sensor):

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

- Automatic recirculation is switched on by default. The **AUTO** LED indicator illuminates. The system automatically selects fresh and recirculated air, dependent on pollution and cabin humidity information received from the air quality sensor.
- Press the **AUTO/MAN** button for a single timed recirculation. The **MAN** LED indicator illuminates.
- Press and hold the **AUTO/MAN** button until the **MAN** LED indicator flashes, to activate the latched (continuous) recirculation. The **MAN** LED indicator illuminates constantly.
- To return to automatic recirculation, briefly press the button again.

15. Recirculation (vehicles not fitted with an air quality sensor):
Press repeatedly to cycle through the options:
    - Press briefly to activate the timed recirculation. The button LED indicator illuminates when recirculation is on.
    - Press and hold the button to activate latched (continuous) recirculation. The button LED indicator flashes and then illuminates constantly.
    - To cancel recirculation, press the button briefly.

    Note: *Prolonged use at low temperatures may cause the windows to mist.*

16. **A/C**: Press to switch the Air Conditioning (A/C) system on or off. The A/C system can be switched on or off independently from the other climate control functions.
17. Blower speed control: In manual mode, rotate to select the required fan speed for the selected zones. Illuminated LEDs display the blower speed.

    Note: *The climate control system can operate in manual or automatic mode. In manual mode, the climate functions are selected and adjusted by the operator. In automatic (**AUTO**) mode, the climate control system controls and adjusts the climate functions to maintain the required climate in the vehicle.*

    Note: *The blower speed is automatically set in **AUTO** mode. Adjusting the blower speed cancels **AUTO** mode.*

Note: *Some of the buttons have an LED indicator lamp that illuminates to confirm selection.*

Note: *Some functions are not available on all vehicles.*

Note: *If the climate control system is switched off, pressing an **AUTO** button or the defrost button switches the climate control system on.*

Note: *Water expelled by the A/C system may collect underneath the vehicle when parked. This is not a cause for concern.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO

http://goo.gl/g4HUaq

AUTOMATIC RECIRCULATION

The climate control system monitors exterior air pollution, and selects recirculation if it reaches a predetermined level. Automatic recirculation only operates when the **Air Purity** function is active. The sensitivity of the air quality sensor can be set via the **CLIMATE SETTINGS** screen. See **209, AIR QUALITY SENSOR**.

CLIMATE SETTINGS

To view the **CLIMATE SETTINGS** menu, select the **Settings** icon, then select **Climate Settings** from the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. See **206, CLIMATE CONTROL**.

- Automatic heated screens: Automatic operation of the front and/or the rear heated screens can be enabled or disabled.
- **Air Purity**: The air quality sensor, for automatic recirculation, can be adjusted. See **209, AIR QUALITY SENSOR**.
- **Auto Air Flow**: The blower speed for automatic operation can be set to **Soft and Quiet**, **Balanced**, or **Powerful and Fast**.

AIR QUALITY SENSOR

The sensitivity of the air quality sensor can be adjusted by changing the **Air Purity** level.

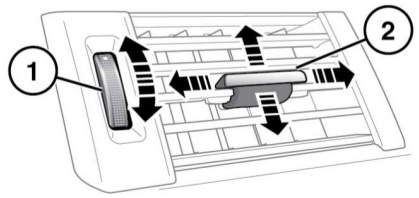
To adjust the **Air Purity** level:

1. Select the **Settings** icon, and then select **Climate Settings** from the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. See **206, CLIMATE CONTROL**.
2. Select **Air Purity**, and then select the appropriate level: **Low**, **Medium**, or **High**.
   To deactivate, touch **OFF**.

AIR VENT OPERATION

Do not insert or attach items to the vents, e.g., pens, air fresheners, etc.

Do not use excessive force while operating the vent control or the thumbwheel.



E155740

The air vents can be opened using the following procedure:

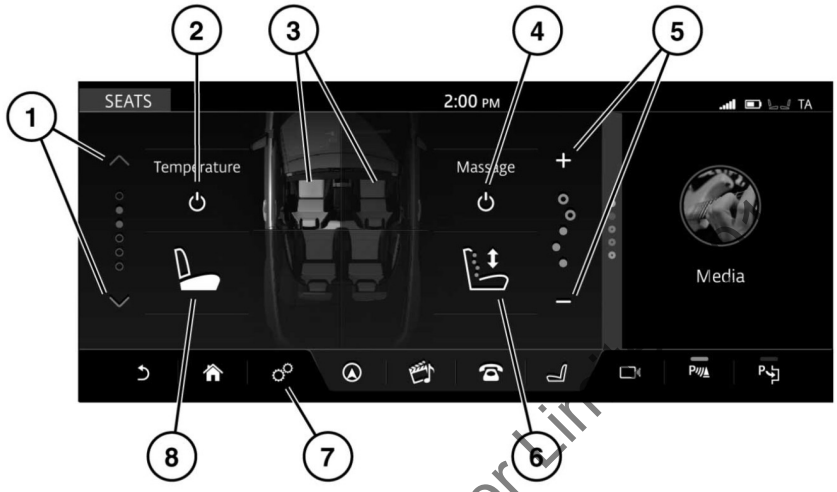
1. To open the vent, rotate the thumbwheel fully upwards, from the bottom (closed) position to the top (open) position.
2. After the vent has been opened using the thumbwheel, use the direction control to adjust the direction of air flow.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Note: *The vent can only be fully closed again using the thumbwheel. The vent can be closed regardless of the position of the directional control.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT



To access the **SEATS** screen, select the **seats** icon on the **HOME** screen. See **170, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**.

1. Temperature control: Touch the up arrow to increase the seat temperature or the down arrow to decrease the seat temperature. See **212, CLIMATE SEATS** or **211, HEATED SEATS**.
2. **Power** icon: Touch to switch the heated or climate seat feature on or off.
3. Seat selection: Touch to select the required seat.
4. **Power** icon: Touch to switch the seat massage function on or off. See **212, SEAT MASSAGE**.
5. Massage intensity control: Touch to increase or decrease the intensity of the selected massage program.
6. Massage program control: Touch to select the seat massage program.
7. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu and then select **Climate Settings**. See **209, CLIMATE SETTINGS**.
8. **Seat zone** selection icon: Select the required seat zone position for heating and cooling.

HEATED SEATS

Note: *Heated seats only operate when the engine is running.*

Press the relevant heated seat button to switch the required heated seat on at the maximum setting. The three LED indicators in the button illuminate.

Press a second time to set the heated seat at the medium setting. Two LED indicators illuminate.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

Press a third time to set the heated front seat at the lowest setting. One LED indicator illuminates.

Press a fourth time to switch off.

Note: *Heated front seats can also be controlled via the touch screen. See* ***212, CLIMATE SEATS****.*

CLIMATE SEATS

Note: *The climate seats only operate when the engine is running.*

The **FRONT SEATS** menu can be accessed in a number of ways:

- Press a heated or climate seat button, located below the touch screen. See **206, CLIMATE CONTROL**.
- Or, touch the **seat** icon on the **HOME** screen. See **170, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**.
- Or, touch **Seats** on the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen. See **175, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Select the required seat position. Touch the **power** icon to switch the selected seat temperature on or off. See **211, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.

To adjust the seat temperature:

- Touch the red arrow to increase the temperature.
- Touch the blue arrow to reduce the temperature.

Alternatively, swipe the red or blue scale up or down to the required temperature.

To select the seat zone:

- Touch the **seat zone** icon.
- Select the zone: **Top**, **Base** or **All**.

Seat zone selection is also available by touching the selected seat position on the vehicle graphic.

SEAT MASSAGE

Note: *Seat massage only operates when the engine is running.*
Seat massage may not operate when the vehicle's interior temperature is below 0°C or above 50°C.

Seat massage can be controlled via the front touch screen. See **211, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.

To access the seat massage controls:

- Select the **seats** icon on the **HOME** screen.
- Or, select **Seats** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen. See **175, EXTRA FEATURES**.

To adjust the seat massage program:

- Select the required seat position. Press the massage **power** icon to switch the selected seat massage on or off.
- Select the seat massage program.
- Touch the appropriate icon for **Wave**, **Up**, **Down**, **Shoulder**, or **Lumbar** massage.
- Touch the **+** or **-** icon to vary the intensity of the selected program. Alternatively, swipe the scale up or down to the required massage intensity.

To set **Auto Massage**, see **213, SEAT SETTINGS**.

Note: *The massage program operates for 10 minutes.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

SEAT SETTINGS

SEAT SETTINGS can be accessed via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. See **177, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

The following options can be selected:

- **Auto Massage**: Switch the automatic massage feature **On** or **Off**.
- **Time delay**: Touch to select the time delay options. A time delay for the seat massage can be set from the start of a journey.

AUXILIARY HEATER

⚠ **Do not operate the auxiliary heater when refuelling the vehicle. Doing so may cause fuel vapours to combust, causing a fire or explosion.**

⚠ **Do not operate the auxiliary heater while the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Doing so can cause a build up of highly toxic fumes, which may cause unconsciousness or death.**

The auxiliary heater is powered by fuel drawn from the vehicle's tank. The auxiliary heater operates at low ambient temperatures and helps to boost the temperature of the engine's coolant. Raising the temperature of the engine's coolant improves the cabin heating and engine starting performance. It can also be controlled by the timed climate control system or from the timed climate remote control.

When the auxiliary heater is operating, exhaust fumes from the heater may be visible exiting from under the front of the vehicle. Exhaust fumes from the auxiliary heater is normal and is not a cause for concern.

TIMED CLIMATE

⚠ **Do not operate the timed climate system when refuelling the vehicle. Doing so may cause fuel vapours to combust, causing a fire or explosion.**

⚠ **Do not operate the timed climate system while the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Doing so can cause a build up of highly toxic fumes, which may cause unconsciousness or death.**

The timed climate system, when in operation, provides a comfortable temperature inside the cabin in advance of using the vehicle. The timed climate system can also maintain a temperature when leaving the vehicle for a short period of time.

The timed climate system draws in fresh air to cool the cabin, or operates the auxiliary heater to heat the cabin. Heating and cooling of the cabin is selected by the timed climate system and is dependent on the external ambient temperature.

The timed climate system can be controlled via the touch screen, or it can be operated using the timed climate remote. The touch screen control has options for either timed or manual settings.

The timed climate system may not operate, or switches off automatically, in the following scenarios:

- If the fuel level is low.
- If the vehicle's battery charge is low.
- If the coolant temperature is at, or above, its required temperature.
- If the system has been in operation for 30 minutes.

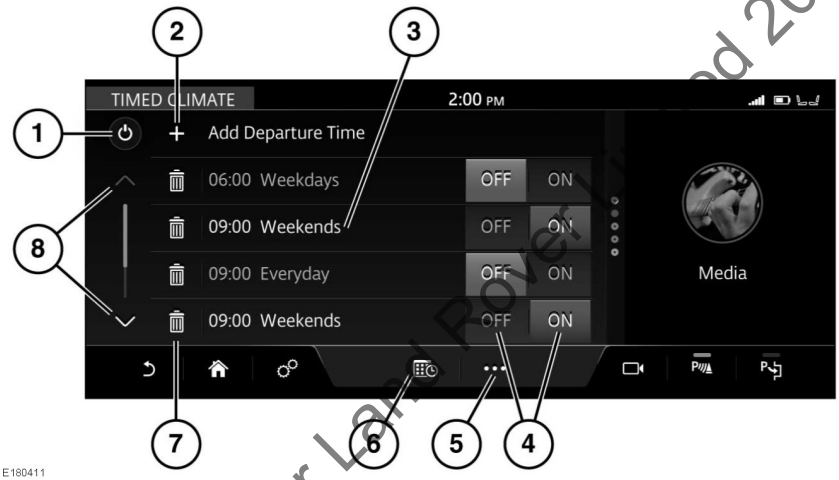
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

TIMED CLIMATE TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS

The touch screen can be used to either preset activation times or to operate the system manually.

When the system is operating, the LED in the climate control **AUTO** or **A/C** button flashes. **AUTO** indicates the engine or cabin are being heated. **A/C** indicates the cabin is being ventilated. The choice of operation is automatically determined by the system, depending on the external temperature.

Note: *The system ceases operation if the engine is started.*



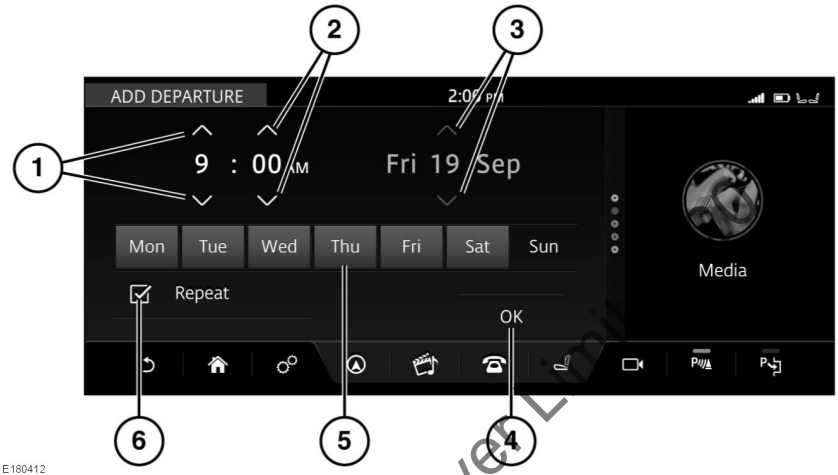
To access the **TIMED CLIMATE** screen, select **Timed Climate** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** page. See **175, EXTRA FEATURES**.

To control the timed climate system via the touch screen:

1. **Power** icon: Touch to switch the timed climate system on or off.
2. Add: Touch to access the **ADD DEPARTURE** screen.
3. Departure time: Touch to edit a departure time.
4. **ON** or **OFF**: Touch to switch a stored departure time on or off.
5. Manual operation menu: Touch the **...** icon, followed by **Heat Now** or **Vent Now** to manually operate the timed climate system. Touch **Heat Now** or **Vent Now** in the **TIMED CLIMATE** screen to switch off the timed climate system.
6. **Calendar** icon: Touch to view the active departure times for the next 7 days.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

7. Delete: Touch to delete the stored departure time.
8. Scroll bar: Touch the up and down arrows to scroll through the stored departure times.



E180412

Select the **ADD DEPARTURE** screen from the **TIMED CLIMATE** screen.

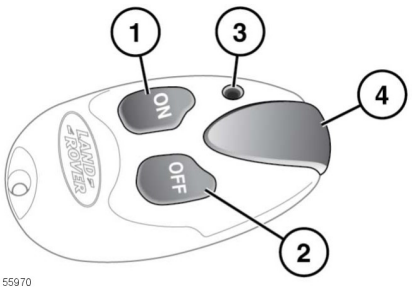
To set a single or repeated departure time:

1. Hour: Touch to adjust the hour.
2. Minute: Touch to adjust the minutes.
3. Day: Touch to adjust the day.
4. **OK**: Touch **OK** to set the departure time and days.
5. Day selection: Touch to select the days that require the repeated departure time.
6. **Repeat**: Touch to enable the departure time to be repeated on other days. Touch again to cancel repeated departure times.

Note: *Make sure that the required departure times are switched on or off, as required, on the* ***TIMED CLIMATE*** *screen.*

Note: *The time format, 12 or 24 hour clock, is determined by the time settings currently selected in the* ***GENERAL SETTINGS*** *menu. See* ***177, GENERAL SETTINGS****.*

USING THE TIMED CLIMATE REMOTE



E155970

1. **ON** button.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

2. **OFF** button.
3. LED (operation indicator).
4. Antenna.

   Note: *Avoid touching the antenna when operating the* ***ON*** *or* ***OFF*** *buttons.*

The timed climate remote control has an approximate range of 100 m. There is no need to point the timed climate remote control at the vehicle.

Press and hold the **ON** button for approximately 2 seconds. The LED illuminates to confirm that a timed climate program has been initiated. The LED flashes once every 2 seconds to indicate that the timed climate program is active.

The timed climate program continues for 20-30 minutes, after which it switches off automatically to prevent the vehicle's battery from discharging. It also switches off automatically if the engine is started.

The LED operation indicator signals various states and conditions for the remote timed climate, as follows:

- Illuminates red for 2 seconds when the **OFF** button is pressed, to indicate that the program has stopped.
- Flashes green for 2 seconds then stops when the **ON** button is pressed, to indicate that no action has been taken.
- Flashes red for 2 seconds then stops when the **OFF** button is pressed, to indicate that no action has been taken.
- Illuminates orange for 2 seconds before showing green or red, to indicate that the remote battery is low.
- Flashes orange for 5 seconds to indicate that no action has been taken. The timed climate remote control battery should be replaced.

ADDITIONAL REMOTES

Additional remote controls can be programmed to operate the timed climate system. A maximum of 3 remote controls can be programmed to the vehicle. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer to purchase additional remote controls and have them programmed to the vehicle.

REPLACING THE REMOTE BATTERIES



With the back of the timed climate remote control facing upwards, use a coin, or a similar implement, to rotate the battery cover. Lift the cover off to reveal the battery compartment. Remove the old battery and, making sure the correct polarity is maintained, insert a replacement 3.3 volt, CR1/3N battery. Replace the cover and rotate it to lock.

Note: *Avoid touching the new battery. Moisture or oil from fingers can reduce battery life and corrode the contacts.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

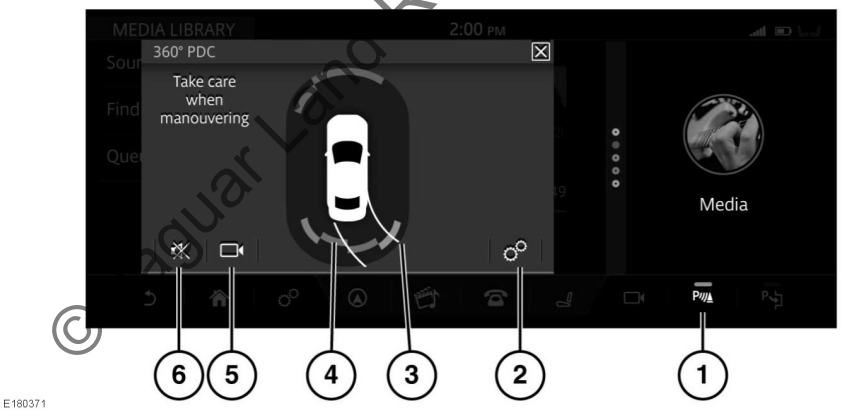
USING THE PARKING AID

The sensors for the parking aid system do not detect moving objects, such as children and animals, until they are dangerously close. Responsibility remains the driver's to drive with due care and attention during low speed manoeuvres.

The sensors for parking aid system may not detect some obstructions. For example, narrow posts or small objects close to the ground. Objects above sensor level may not be detected, e.g., when approaching a flatbed truck the protruding part of the flatbed is not detected.

Accessories that are fitted to the front or rear of the vehicle, particular care must be taken when using the parking aid. Accessories that are mounted in a position where it obstructs operation of a sensor or sensors will only detect the distance from the bumper to the accessory. The accessory then displays as an obstacle. Any obstacle beyond the detected accessory may not be indicated on the touch screen display.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016



E180371

Parking aid features.

1. Parking aid icon: Touch to activate the **Parking aid** feature.
2. Settings icon: Touch to select the **Parking aid settings** menu.
3. Vehicle steering trajectory lines: Projected reversing path based on the current steering wheel position.
4. Parking aid sensor detection zones:

- Grey blocks indicate objects detected that do not pose a threat i.e. not in a collision path with the vehicle.
- Coloured blocks indicate objects detected that pose collision threats.

5. Cameras icon: Touch to select the **Cameras** feature.
6. Volume icon: Touch to lower the volume of the beeps for the parking aid system.

Note: *When a trailer is connected to a Jaguar Land Rover approved trailer socket, the rear parking sensors are disabled. When the trailer's electrical plug is not connected to the socket, or a non-approved towing system is fitted, the parking sensors do not operate as intended.*

The parking aid system automatically activates when Reverse (**R**) gear or Neutral (**N**) gear is selected.

The parking aid system assists the driver while manoeuvring the vehicle at low speed in confined spaces. When active, object tracking along the front, sides, and rear of the vehicle is displayed on the touch screen. The front, side, and outer rear sensors monitor a fixed distance around the vehicle. The inner rear sensors monitor a greater distance at the rear of the vehicle. The four side sensors provide the 360° parking aid monitoring along the vehicle's sides, creating a virtual detection zone.

Note: *The 360° parking aid feature is not available in some markets.*

While the vehicle is passing an object within its sensor range, the vehicle's integrated systems calculate its trajectory. The trajectory is displayed on the touch screen in the parking aid monitored area. When a detected object is calculated to be a collision threat, it is displayed as coloured blocks. A warning tone is given, which increases in speed as the vehicle approaches the object. The tone becomes continuous when the object is within 300 mm of the vehicle.

Other detected objects are displayed as grey blocks.

While the vehicle is stationary, the sensors for 360° parking aid do not detect objects or people approaching from the side. Also, at vehicle start-up, the vehicle has no sensor information about side objects or people. In both of these situations, **!** is displayed on the touch screen in these virtual detection zones.

Note: *At vehicle start-up, the front sensors may not detect low objects, even if they were detected during the original parking manoeuvre.*

When a forward gear is selected, the sensors remain active until the vehicle's speed reaches 16 km/h (10 mph), at which point the system is disabled.

To manually enable the front and side sensors while moving in a forward direction, touch the parking aid icon (**1**). The icon illuminates while the parking aid system is enabled. Touch the icon again to disable. The LED extinguishes.

Note: *The parking aid system is disabled if the vehicle's speed exceeds 16 km/h (10 mph).*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

The parking aid system can be set to activate automatically, when the vehicle's speed falls below 16 km/h (10 mph). Or the system can be activated automatically when Drive (**D**) is selected with an automatic transmission.

To enable the auto on feature, on the touch screen select, the **Settings** icon to access the parking aid settings pop-up menu. Select **Automatic PDC ON**.

Note: *The sensors must be kept clean to maintain accuracy and performance. See* ***289, SENSORS AND CAMERAS****.*

PARKING AID VOLUME

To adjust the volume of the parking aid warning tones, rotate the media volume control while the tones are active. See **178, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

Touch the **Volume** icon on the touch screen, in the parking aid or camera features to reduce the volume for that manoeuvre only.

PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The parking aid system is not available when:

1. Vehicle speed is greater than 16 km/h (10 mph).
2. Park (**P**) is selected.
3. Wade sensing is active.
4. There is a system fault.

When a parking aid system fault is detected, the message centre displays a message. When the fault is not rectified after an ignition cycle, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

PARKING AID SYSTEM FAULT

When a parking aid system fault is detected, a long high-pitched tone sounds and the touch screen parking aid icon flashes. The touch screen displays a parking aid message. When all of the sensors are clean and, after restarting the engine, the issue persists, contact a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO

http://goo.gl/ogmMy3

PARK ASSIST

Park assist is a driving aid only. Responsibility remains the driver's to drive with due care and attention during parking manoeuvres.

Park assist sensors may not detect moving objects, such as children and animals, until they are dangerously close. Always use extreme caution when manoeuvring, and always use the mirrors.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Parking features

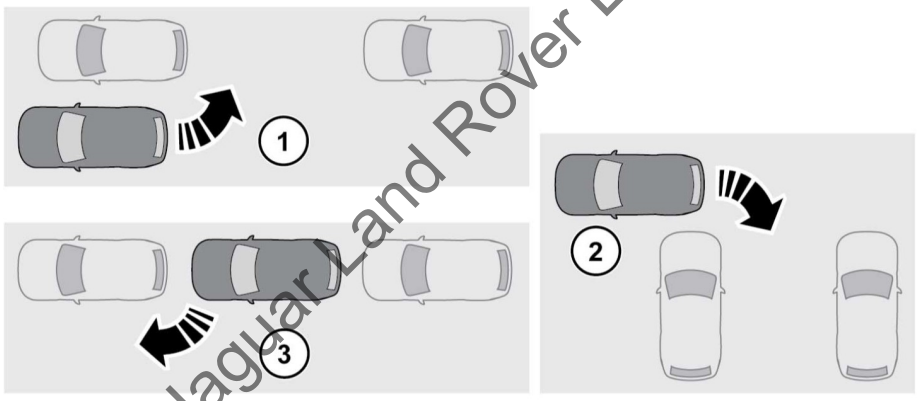
Park assist sensors may not detect some obstructions, e.g., narrow posts, small objects close to the ground and mesh fences. In some circumstances, bicycles or motorbikes parked alongside the kerb may not be detected. Objects above sensor level may not be detected, e.g., when approaching a flatbed truck, the protruding part of the flatbed will not be detected.

All sensors must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., leaves, mud, snow, ice, frost, or insects. Failure to keep the sensors clean may result in sensor miscalculation or false indications.

Park assist is an aid to manoeuvre the vehicle in and out of parallel or perpendicular parking spaces. Park assist takes control of the vehicle's steering system to manoeuvre the vehicle.

The driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake pedals throughout the parking manoeuvre.

Note: *A park assist manoeuvre can be cancelled, at any point. Hold or turn the steering wheel, or touch the park assist icon.*



E174896

Park assist comprises three different features:

1. Parallel Park: For reversing into a parking space that is parallel to the vehicle.
2. Perpendicular Park: For reversing into a parking space that is at a 90° angle to the vehicle.
3. Park Exit: For exiting only a parallel parking space.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Do not use park exit when leaving a perpendicular parking space. Park exit is programmed for leaving only a parallel parking space. Damage to the vehicle, or surrounding objects, may occur if park exit is used when leaving a perpendicular parking space.

All park assist instructions are displayed in the message centre.

Note: *All of the doors and the tailgate must be securely closed when using park assist.*

Note: *During any park assist manoeuvre, the parking aid system remains active, and emits a warning sound when objects are detected close to the vehicle.*

SELECTING PARK ASSIST



Touch the **park assist** icon to access the **PARK ASSIST** pop-up menu. Select the required mode.

The message centre displays the selected mode. Follow the instructions and alerts shown in the message centre to complete the required manoeuvre.

Note: *Park assist can be activated in any gear except Reverse (**R**).*

USING PARK ASSIST

In the interest of safety, operate or adjust the system only when it is safe to do so.

Park assist must not be used if a temporary spare wheel is in use.

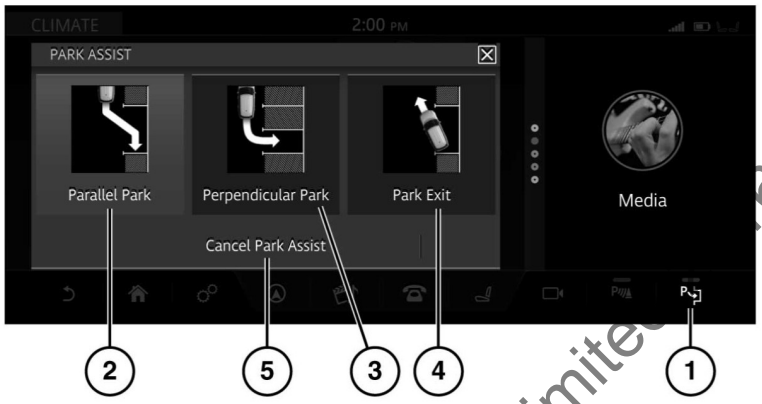
Park assist must not be used if a sensor is damaged, or the bumper is damaged sufficiently enough to affect a sensor mounting point.

Park assist must not be used if a sensor is obstructed by items attached to the vehicle, e.g., bumper covers, a bicycle rack, or stickers.

Park assist must not be used if the vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the vehicle's perimeter.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Parking features



E180372

Park assist features.

1. Park assist icon: Touch to select **Park Assist**.
2. Parallel Park: Touch to select the **Parallel Park** feature.
3. Perpendicular Park: Touch to select the **Perpendicular Park** feature.
4. Park Exit: Touch to select the **Park Exit** feature.
5. Cancel Park Assist: When parking assistance is no longer required, touch **Cancel Park Assist** to exit the selected park assist feature.

For assistance when parking

Select **Parallel Park** or **Perpendicular Park**.

As the vehicle is driven forward, the size of a potential parking space, on the side opposite the driver, is assessed. To search for a space on the driver's side, signal a turn in that direction, using the direction indicators.

Note: *For park assist to search effectively for space, the park assist must maintain a distance of 0.5 m to 1.5 m. The distance of 0.5 m to 1.5 m is between the vehicle and the row of parked vehicles or obstacles.*

Note: *The park assist auto-searching feature becomes active when the vehicle's speed is less than 30 km/h (18 mph). When park assist is selected, a space may already have been detected by the auto-searching feature. An appropriate message is displayed in the message centre.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

The park assist sensors assess the kerb in the parking spaces so that the vehicle can be aligned against it. When the kerb shape is irregular, or not detectable, vehicles either side of the parking space are used for aligning the vehicle. When there is a tall object alongside the kerb, e.g., a post or bin, it will affect vehicle positioning. Resulting in the vehicle positioning being further away, or closer to the kerb than normal. Occasionally, this may result in the kerb being mounted.

When a suitable space is found, a short confirmation tone is given and a message is displayed in the message centre.

Note: *Park assist may determine that other vehicles are too close, on either side, to perform a parking manoeuvre. A detected space can be rejected, even if it is large enough for the vehicle. The driver retains the option to switch park assist off and attempt the manoeuvre manually.*

For assistance when exiting a parallel parking space

When the vehicle is parallel parked and the ignition is subsequently switched off, the parking aid memory is cleared. When the ignition is switched on again, the direction indicators must be operated to indicate an exit intention. The operated direction indicators notify the park assist feature on which side the driver intends to leave the parking space.

Select **Park Exit**.

For the park exit feature to operate correctly, the vehicle must be parked in a space where other vehicles or objects are either:

- Parked in front of the vehicle.
- Parked in front and behind the vehicle.

Note: *The park exit feature operates only when the vehicle has been parallel parked. Park exit does not manoeuvre the vehicle from a perpendicular parking space.*

Do not perform a **Park Exit** manoeuvre until the message **DRIVE FORWARD WITH CARE** is displayed in the message centre.

All park assist features

For all three park assist features, follow the instructions in the message centre until the parking or exiting manoeuvre is complete.

Although the vehicle takes control during the parking or exiting manoeuvre, the driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake pedals throughout. When the manoeuvre is not as expected, take control of the steering and make necessary adjustments.

Note: *When the vehicle's speed exceeds 5 km/h (3 mph) during the manoeuvre, park assist displays an overspeed message until the vehicle's speed decreases to less than 5 km/h (3 mph). When the vehicle's speed exceeds 7 km/h (4 mph), park assist deactivates.*

When a system fault is detected, a continuous tone sounds and a message is displayed in the message centre. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Park assist is a supplement to, and not a replacement for, good observation and a safe driving style. Responsibility remains the driver's at all times, to make sure that reversing manoeuvres are carried out safely.

Park assist is not available when:

- Vehicle speed is greater than 16 km/h (10 mph).
- Park (**P**) is selected.
- Reverse (**R**) gear is selected.
- Wade sensing is active.
- There is a system fault.
- A trailer is connected.

Note: *When an approved tow bar is fitted, park assist adjusts to compensate for the extra length.*

Park assist may provide inaccurate results if:

- The size or shape of the parking space changes after it was measured.
- There is an irregular kerb alongside the parking space, or the kerb is covered with leaves, snow, etc.
- The vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle.
- The sensors are misaligned due to a minor collision or impact.
- The vehicle had a repair or alteration that was not approved by a retailer/ authorised repairer.
- The vehicle is fitted with non-approved wheels or tyres.
- The vehicle is fitted with replacement tyres. After the normal running in period, the system adapts to the replacement tyres.
- One of the parked vehicles has an attachment at a raised height such as a flatbed truck, snow plough, or cherry picker.
- The parking space is located on a corner or bend.
- The sensors are dirty or covered in mud, ice, or snow, etc.
- The weather is foggy, raining, or snowing, etc.
- The road surface is uneven or rutted.
- The vehicle encounters an obstruction that is thin or wedge shaped.
- The vehicle encounters an obstruction that is elevated and/or protruding, such as ledges or tree branches.
- The vehicle encounters an obstruction with corners and sharp edges.
- A tow bar or trailer hitch non-approved is fitted.

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO

http://goo.gl/ZVY2Gg

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

PARK ASSIST TROUBLESHOOTING

Park assist is not searching for a parking space

- The system may not be activated.
- The vehicle may be travelling above 30 km/h (18 mph).
- The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice, or snow, etc.

Park assist does not offer a certain parking space

- The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice, or snow, etc.
- The space may not be large enough to accommodate the vehicle.
- There may not be enough space on the opposite side of the vehicle, for the front to swing out during the manoeuvre.
- The vehicle may have been driven more than 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.
- The vehicle may have been driven within 41 cm to the row of parked vehicles.
- The vehicle may have been driven in Reverse (**R**). Park assist searches for a parking space only when the vehicle is in Drive (**D**).
- The approach angle may not be suitable.

Park assist has not positioned the vehicle accurately within the space

- One or more of the system limitations criteria may have been met. See **224, PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS**.

REAR CAMERA

Responsibility remains the driver's to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them when manoeuvring the vehicle.

Some overhanging objects or barriers, which could cause damage to the vehicle, may not be detected by the camera.

The camera must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., ice, frost, snow, leaves, mud, or insects. Failure to keep the camera clean may result in miscalculation or false indications. See **289, SENSORS AND CAMERAS**.

Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper that may interfere with the camera.

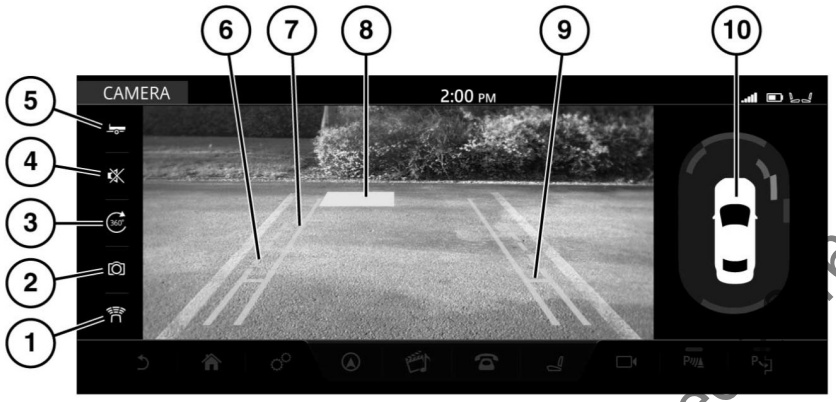
The rear camera is located above the rear number plate or in the centre of the rear bumper.

When Reverse (**R**) gear is selected, the touch screen automatically displays a high definition, colour image from the rear of the vehicle. Overlaid on the image are lines to aid with reversing and parking.

Note: *The rear camera display has priority over the parking aids display and many other touch screen features. To cancel the rear camera display, at any time, touch the* ***HOME*** *icon or the* ***RETURN*** *icon.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Parking features



E180374

Operating features:

1. Parking Aid icon: Touch to switch the parking aid graphics on or off.
2. Camera icon: Touch to select a alternative camera view.
3. Surround Camera icon: Touch for a 360° view, using all cameras.
4. Volume icon: Touch to mute the volume of the parking aid warning tones.
5. Tow Assist icon: Touch for trailer setup.
6. Parking guidance broken lines: Indicates the safe working width of the vehicle. The door mirrors are included.
7. Parking guidance solid line: The projected reversing path, based on the current position of the steering wheel.
8. Parking aid information: Colour graphics indicate detected collision threats.
9. Tailgate access line: Do not reverse beyond this line if access to the tailgate is required.
10. Parking aid plan view: Touch to view the full screen view of the parking aid feature.

The rear camera display on the touch screen discontinues automatically when either of the following apply:

- Drive (**D**) is selected for longer than 5 seconds.
- Drive (**D**) is selected and/or the vehicle's speed is greater than 18 km/h (11 mph).

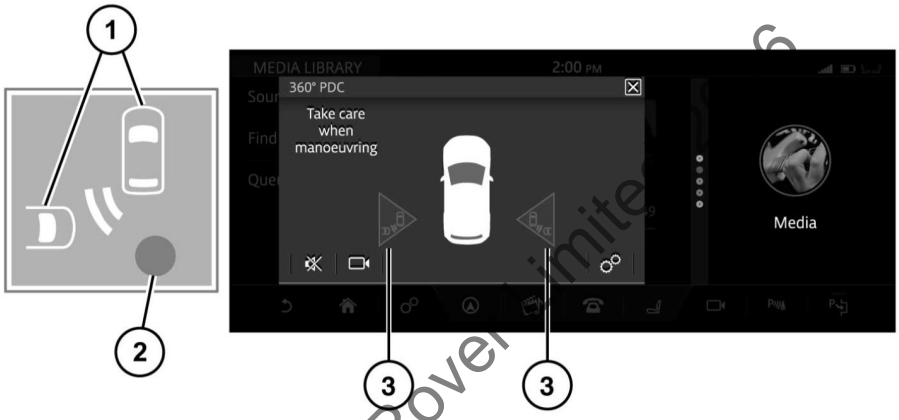
REVERSE TRAFFIC DETECTION (RTD)

The Reverse Traffic Detection (RTD) system is a supplement to, and not a replacement for, safe driving, good observation, and use of the door mirrors and rear-view mirrors.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

Note: *RTD is automatically disabled when park assist is active and when a trailer is connected.*

RTD adds extra functionality to the rear camera. The RTD system warns the driver of any moving vehicle, on either side, that may pose an accident risk during a reversing manoeuvre.



1. Door mirror vehicle icons: The amber warning door mirror vehicle icon flashes in the relevant door mirror to indicate the presence of a moving vehicle. An audible warning tone is also given
2. System disabled warning indicator: The amber system disabled warning indicator illuminates in the door mirror when the system is not active.
3. Warning icons: The **CAMERA** screen or the **PARKING AID** screen, depending on the current selection, displays a triangular warning icon on the relevant side(s) of the screen.

To move from the **CAMERA** screen to the **PARKING AID** screen, touch the plan view parking aid vehicle image on the touch screen.

To move from the **PARKING AID** screen to the **CAMERA** screen, touch the **Camera** icon.

RTD is enabled or disabled via the instrument panel menu. When RTD is disabled, an amber warning indicator (**2**) is displayed in each of the mirrors. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

REVERSE TRAFFIC DETECTION (RTD) SENSORS

The Reverse Traffic Detection (RTD) system is automatically disabled if any of the sensors become partially or completely obscured. The amber warning indicator dot illuminates in the door mirrors. The message **Reverse Traffic Sensor Blocked** is displayed in the message centre.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

Check that there is nothing obscuring the rear bumper's surface and that it is clear from ice, frost, snow, mud, and dirt.

When a fault with a sensor is detected, an amber warning indicator dot illuminates in the door mirrors. The message **Reverse Traffic Detection System Not Available** is displayed in the message centre.

Note: *Even if the detected fault affects a radar sensor on only one side of the vehicle, the whole system is disabled. When the fault is temporary, the system operates correctly once the engine is switched off and then on again.*

When a fault occurs that is not rectified when the engine is switched off and then on again, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW

Do not adjust the touch screen controls or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Phone system controls:

1. **Phone** icon: Touch to select the **PHONE** screen. When the **PHONE** screen is selected, the icon changes to an active icon, as illustrated above. Touch the icon to select an alternative paired phone. When a call is in progress, touch the icon to end the call.
2. Feature display: The selected feature is displayed in this area.
3. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select one of the following options, to manage the features: **Settings for All Phones**, **Settings for 'name of phone'** and **Bluetooth Settings**.
4. Scroll bar: If more than five features are available, touch the scroll bar or arrows, to move up or down the list. Alternatively, swipe the list in the direction required.
5. **Back to Call**: Touch to go back to a call after selecting another feature.
6. **Options**: Touch to access the voicemail and auto-reject options.

7. **Keypad**: Touch to access the keypad dialling mode.
8. **Contacts**: Touch to view the downloaded contacts.
9. **Recents**: Touch to display a list of recently dialled, received, and missed calls. When a call is unanswered or missed, the number is indicated inside a circle on the **Recents** button.

Note: *The touch screen displays the list in the order that the calls were recorded. If this information is not available on the connected phone, the list displays as sent from the phone. Some phones may arrange the list in another order.*

Note: *The system removes duplicate entries of the same call type from the same caller. For example, multiple calls from the same caller are reduced to one call.*

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO

http://goo.gl/JdqJA7

PHONE SAFETY

Switch off the phone in areas with a high explosion risk, this includes filling stations, fuel storage areas, or chemical factories. Further high explosion risks are found where the air contains fuel vapour, chemicals, or metal dust. The phone could trigger an explosion or cause a fire.

Always store the phone securely. In an accident, loose items can cause injury.

The functioning of cardiac pacemakers or hearing aids may be impaired when the phone is in use. Check with a doctor or manufacturer whether any such devices the vehicle's occupants are using, are sufficiently protected against high-frequency energy.

Even when using the Bluetooth® wireless technology hands-free feature, using the phone while driving is dangerous. The use of a phone diverts the driver's attention from the traffic situation. When using the phone, stop at an appropriate place where other vehicles are not endangered or inconvenienced.

Drivers should talk on the phone only when it is safe to do so and when such use does not distract the driver from the road.

Drivers should never text message while driving. Texting while driving diverts attention from the road and can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

The Health Industry Manufacturers' Association recommends that a minimum separation of 15 cm is maintained between a wireless phone antenna and a pacemaker. The recommendation is to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. The recommendations are consistent with the independent research by, and recommendations of, Wireless Technology Research.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

PHONE COMPATIBILITY

Please refer to the **Ownership** section of the website at: **www.landrover.com** for a list of compatible phones.

Note: *The* ***Bluetooth®*** *wireless technology devices listed, have been tested for compatibility with Jaguar Land Rover vehicles. Performance varies, based on the phone's software version, battery condition, coverage, and the network provider. Phones are warranted by the manufacturer, not by Jaguar Land Rover.*

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE

Note: *The process of pairing and connecting with the vehicle, from the phone, varies depending on the type of phone used.*

Pairing and connecting a phone:

1. Switch the ignition on and make sure that the touch screen is active.
2. When pairing a device for the first time, select **Tap to connect phone** from the **HOME** screen. The vehicle's **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device is discoverable.
3. Using the phone, search for **Bluetooth** devices. On some phones, this is referred to as a new paired device. See the phone's operating instructions for further information. The vehicle's discoverable **Bluetooth** name is the same as the vehicle's name.
4. When the vehicle's name is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions. Select **Yes**, when prompted, to confirm the pairing. Alternatively, some older phones request a PIN to be entered. Either enter the PIN **1234**, or select **Yes**, to confirm that the PIN displayed on the phone matches the vehicle's PIN.
5. When there is a prompt for a **Phonebook** or **Contacts** download, accept it. See **233, CONTACTS**.

   Note: *Wait 10 seconds after pairing is complete. When prompted to accept a* ***Phonebook*** *or* ***Contacts*** *download on to phone device, please accept. Select the* ***Remember this setting*** *option when downloaded.*
6. Once the phone is paired and connected to the system, select the **return** icon or select the **PHONE** screen.

   Note: *Some phones require the* ***Bluetooth*** *device pairing to be set as authorised or trusted in order to automatically connect. Please refer to the phone's operating instructions for further information.*

To select the paired phone's settings, select **settings** icon on the **Phone** menu. Select **Phone Settings** from the **settings** pop-up menu. A list of all paired phones is displayed. Touch the paired phone's name.

Paired phones have the option to be used as a phone, a media device, or both. Device types can be selected via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **All Settings**, **Features**, **Bluetooth** and then the **Paired Devices** list to manage any devices.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO



http://goo.gl/pJwrKD

MANAGING TWO CALLS

Two calls can be taken on the same phone. Notification is given when a second call is received. When accepting a second call, the first call is automatically put on hold.

Alternatively, a second call can be dialled from the displayed screen options. From the screen options, select **Add Call** and then **Contacts** to display the list of contacts. Select **Keypad** to enter the number.

When there are two separate calls, the **Hold** icon changes to a **Swap** icon. Touch the **Swap** icon, or the contact's name or number, to swap between the current call and the call on hold.

Touch the **End Call** icon to end the current call and return to the remaining call. Touch and hold the **End Call** icon to end both calls.

Note: *When more than two calls, e.g., a conference call, are active on the phone when connecting to the vehicle's phone system, they are maintained. However, a maximum of two call details are displayed. When more than two calls are in progress when connecting, any calls that are not active, on hold, or incoming are rejected.*

MERGE CALLS

When two calls are in progress on the same phone, they can be merged into one conference call. Select the displayed **Merge** option.

While the calls are merged, touch **Hold** or **Mute** to mute both calls, or **End Call** to end both calls.

Merge cannot be deselected. When one caller ends the call, the remaining call stays active.

PHONE SYSTEM ICONS

Depending on the part of the phone system in use, the following icons display on the touch screen:


Touch to send or accept a call.


Touch to end or reject a call.


Touch to hold a call. Touch again to return to the call.


Touch to swap between connected calls.


Touch to switch the call to the phone handset.

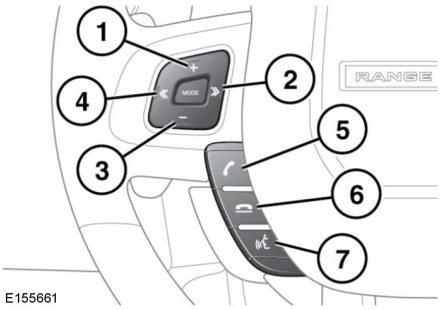

Touch to mute the microphone and initiate privacy mode. While selected, the caller cannot hear the conversation.


Phone signal strength indicator.


Phone battery level indicator.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

STEERING WHEEL PHONE CONTROLS



Steering wheel phone controls.

1. Press to increase the volume during a call.
2. Press to scroll up through the displayed list.
3. Press to decrease the volume during a call.
4. Press to scroll down through the displayed list.
5. Press to answer an incoming call. Press and release to call the contact at the top of the recent calls list.
6. Press to end or reject a call.
7. Press to mute. Press again to cancel mute.

Note: *To navigate through the recent calls list, the* ***Recents*** *menu must first be selected on the touch screen.*

PHONE CALL VOLUME

While a phone call is active, adjust the call volume by rotating the media system's volume control.

When the media system is in use when a phone call is active, the media system source is muted for the duration of the call.

CONTACTS

Contacts stored in the memory of a paired phone can be automatically downloaded to the vehicle's **Contacts** list. The contact list is downloaded each time the phone is connected to the system. See **231, PHONE COMPATIBILITY**.

Certain phones store the contacts in two different areas: the SIM card and the phone's memory. The vehicle's system accesses only those numbers stored in the phone's memory.

To access contacts:

1. From the **PHONE** screen, select **Contacts**. **229, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**
2. Use the scroll bar, or swipe the list, to search the list alphabetically.
3. Identify the required contact from the displayed list and touch to call. When a contact has more than one number stored, select the required number from the list.

   Note: *Using the scroll bar may be necessary to see the entire list.*

When the phone supports contact cards, contact information can be viewed in the vehicle's **Contacts** list.

The order in which the **Contacts** list is displayed can be changed. Select the **settings** icon to display the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **Phone Settings**. Select the required phone, then **First Name** or **Last Name** to change the display for the connected phone.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

To delete the **Contacts** list, select the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **Phone Settings**. Select **Delete From Car** for the connected phone. **229, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**

Once the **Contacts** list is deleted, **Auto Update Contacts** is unavailable for selection until the paired phone's contact list is downloaded again.

Note: *When a contact, or the* ***Contacts*** *list, is deleted, incoming calls display the number but no name.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION



Bluetooth® wireless technology is the name for short-range Radio Frequency (RF) technology that allows electronic devices to communicate wirelessly with each other.

Note: *The **Bluetooth**® word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc and any use of such marks by Jaguar Land Rover Limited is under licence.*

The vehicle's **Bluetooth** wireless technology system supports **Bluetooth** wireless technology Hands-Free Profile (HFP), Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP), Audio Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP), and Message Access Profile (MAP).

Note: *HFP, A2DP and AVRCP profiles can be connected independently. A phone can be connected via one profile, while a media device can be connected via the other, at the same time.*

Before making use of the vehicle's **Bluetooth** wireless technology phone system, the **Bluetooth** wireless technology device must be paired and connected to the vehicle's system. The recommended method of connection is via the device to the vehicle. See **231, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**.

Each time the ignition is switched on, the vehicle's system attempts to connect with the last connected phone or media device.

Phones and media devices have a wide range of audio and echo characteristics. The vehicle's system may take a few seconds to adapt and deliver optimum audio performance. To achieve this, it may be necessary to reduce the media sound volume and also reduce the ventilation fan speed slightly.

Note: *Some device's require the **Bluetooth** wireless technology device pairing feature to be set as authorised or trusted in order to automatically connect. Refer to the device's operating instructions for further information.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.

Navigation instruction is by map and turn information displayed on the touch screen and in the instrument panel, and can be complemented by voice guidance. The system uses signals from Global Positioning System (GPS) satellites, information from vehicle sensors, and from data stored on the hard drive. The vehicle's position is established using this information.

Using this combination of data sources, the vehicle's navigation computer enables the driver to plan and follow a route map to the desired destination.

The touch screen is used to control navigation via menus and map displays.

Note: *The speed camera alert feature is not available in certain markets.*

Note: *The speed camera alert feature can be enabled and disabled in the* ***NAVIGATION SETTINGS*** *menu. See* ***242, SETTINGS****.*

The requirements of national Road Traffic Regulations always apply.

Note: *Certain features and location-based services utilise the vehicle's current location. Features that are able to utilise mobile data, and the vehicle's location, can be managed in the connectivity and navigation settings. See* ***259, CONNECTIVITY SETTINGS*** *and* ***242, SETTINGS****.*

Observation of traffic signs and local traffic regulations always take priority.

The navigation system serves solely as an aid to navigation. In particular, the navigation system cannot be used as an aid to orientation when visibility is poor.

GPS signals may occasionally be interrupted due to physical barriers, such as tunnels, and roads under raised carriageways.

However, direction and speed sensors on the vehicle minimise any adverse effect on the navigation system. Normal operation resumes once the obstruction has been passed.

Under certain conditions, it is possible for the vehicle's position shown on the screen to be incorrect. Incorrect display of the vehicle's position may happen when:

- Driving on a spiral ramp in a building.
- Driving on, or beneath, elevated roads.
- Driving between tall buildings.
- Two roads are close and parallel.
- The vehicle is transported to another location.
- The vehicle has been rotated on a turntable.
- The vehicle's battery has been disconnected.

USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.

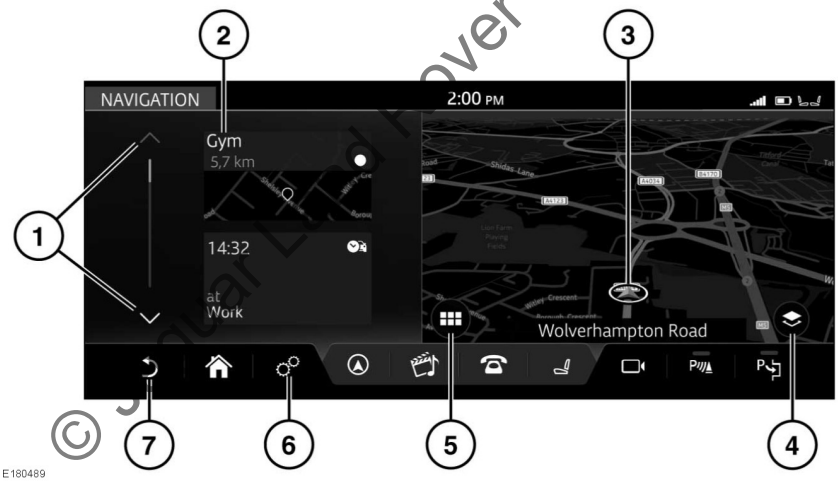
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

The navigation system is not a substitute for driving safely, with due care and attention. Drivers should not assume that a feature will correct errors in judgement when driving. The driver is responsible for staying alert, driving safely, and being in control of the vehicle at all times, relative to the prevailing conditions. The driver is responsible for determining the safety of the route suggested by the navigation system. The navigation system may not function properly in all circumstances.

Do not adjust the touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

To access the navigation system, touch one of the navigation soft keys on the touch screen **HOME** menu. See **170, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**.

Note: *A first time user should set up personal preferences in the settings area. These include settings for managing which features can connect to the internet when on the home network or while roaming. The settings are applied whenever navigation is used.*



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

When **Navigation** is selected, and the vehicle is stationary, the navigation system displays a map view of the current vehicle position. A side panel containing quick access tiles is also displayed.

Note: *The quick access tiles act as shortcuts, to allow quick access to certain navigation system functionality.*

Note: *The quick access tiles are hidden when the vehicle's speed reaches a predetermined level. The quick access tiles do not appear again until the ignition is switched off and back on again. If required, the options can be accessed via the navigation menus.*

Note: *If the navigation system is started when the vehicle's speed is already above the predetermined level, the quick access tiles do not appear.*

Control the navigation system as follows:

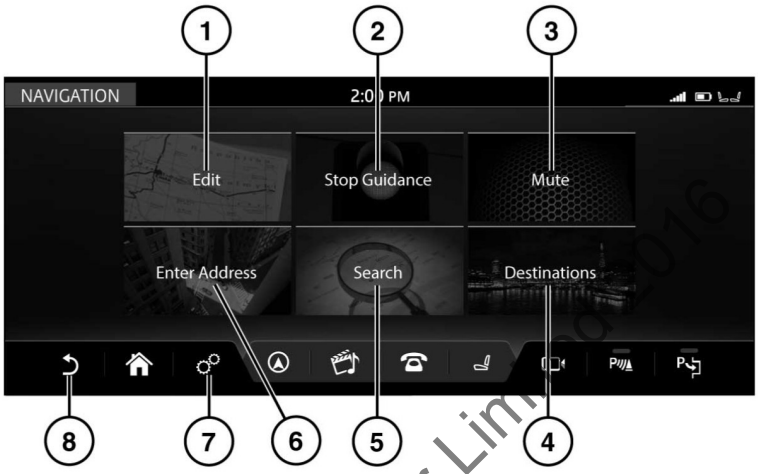
1. Scroll bar: Touch to scroll up or down the tile list.
2. Quick access tile options: Options include:
   - My commute.
   - Fuel search.
   - Recent destinations.
   - Home.
   - Licence information.
3. The current vehicle position and direction.
4. **Map selector** icon: Touch to select **2D**, **3D**, or **Satellite** map view. When guidance is active, combination views based on **2D**, **3D**, and **Satellite** map view become available, such as traffic, next manoeuvre, and route overview. See **243, VIEW OPTIONS**.

   Note: *Internet connectivity is required for satellite map view.*
5. **Main menu** icon: Touch to select the **NAVIGATION** main menu.
6. **Settings** icon: Touch to select **Navigation Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
7. **Return** icon: Touch to return to a higher menu level.

When the vehicle is in motion and no active route is selected, an assistance map is displayed.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

MAIN MENU



E180491

When shown, touch the **menu** icon to access the **NAVIGATION** main menu.

Note: *Some of the options listed are only available when a route has been selected.*

The following options are available:

1. **Edit**: Touch to edit the current route. See **243, EDIT ROUTE**.
2. **Stop Guidance**: Cancels the current route guidance, if a route is selected.
3. **Mute**: Touch to mute the navigation system's voice guidance.
4. **Destinations**: Shows saved locations, e.g., home address and saved favourites and the most recent destinations.

Note: *When signed into an InControl navigation account, destinations can be automatically synchronised between the vehicle, the internet, and the smartphone app. See* ***248, PROFILES*** *and* ***256, INCONTROL PRO SERVICES****.*

5. **Search**: Type the required text into the search box, or select from the Point Of Interest (POI) categories listed.
6. **Enter Address**: Provides a choice of options for entering an address. See **240, ADDRESS ENTRY**.
7. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **Navigation Settings**, via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
8. **Return** icon: Touch to return to a higher menu level.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

ADDRESS ENTRY

Note: *If the full address is not known, the search feature may be more effective. See* ***240, SEARCH****.*

When searching, only the relevant keys for the next valid character are highlighted for selection.

Previous entries, or search history, is also displayed below the text entry box.

To enter an address:

1. Touch **Enter Address** in the **NAVIGATION** main menu. See **239, MAIN MENU**).
2. Input the **Country**.
3. Input the **City**, **Town**, or **Postcode**. Previous entries and narrowed search results are displayed. Select the required entry and touch **Ok**.
4. Input the **Street** name, **Number**, or **Junction**, if applicable. Previous entries and narrowed search results are displayed. Select the required entry and touch **Ok**.

   Note: *In some markets, the entry fields may vary from those listed above.*
5. The map displays the entered location, as the address is entered. If the location displayed is correct, touch **Drive there**, to confirm.
6. The navigation system calculates and displays a number of routes. Select **Start** to begin navigation. If the highlighted route is not the desired route, select **Route Options** to change the route. The navigation system displays the distance and Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA) for each route.
7. Select the chosen route and then touch **Start navigating**.

   Note: *The routes are calculated using the selected route preferences (avoiding toll roads, ferries, etc.). The route preferences can be adjusted while setting the destination, if required.*

Note: *An address can be added as a waypoint after a destination has been selected.*

Note: *Previous entries, or search results as they are narrowed, are displayed on the touch screen, behind the keyboard. If required, hide the keyboard for better access.*

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO

http://goo.gl/dU0wsR

SEARCH

Note: *If the full address is known, the address entry feature may be more effective. See* ***240, ADDRESS ENTRY****.*

Search can be used to locate an address or a Point Of Interest (POI).

To search for an address:

1. Touch **Search** in the **NAVIGATION** main menu. See **239, MAIN MENU**.
2. If a route is already active, the following list of search areas are available from the drop-down menu:
   - **Along the route**.
   - **Most relevant**.
   - Near the waypoint 1, 2, or 3, etc.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Note: *The selected route must include one or more waypoints for this option to be available.*

- **Near your destination**.

3. Input the search choice into the text box.
   Touch the **hide keyboard** icon to view the search results. Touch the text box to continue typing.
4. Select the search result from the list provided.
5. Touch **Start** to begin navigation.

   Note: *The routes are calculated using the selected route preferences (avoiding toll roads, ferries, etc.). The route preferences can be adjusted while setting the destination, if required.*



Hide keyboard icon.

To search for a POI:

1. From the **NAVIGATION** main menu, touch **Search**.
2. If a route is already active, the following list of search areas are available from the drop-down menu:
   - **Along the route**.
   - **Most relevant**.
   - Near the waypoint 1, 2, or 3, etc.

     Note: *The selected route must include one or more waypoints for this option to be available.*
   - **Near your destination**.
3. Select a search category from the list (**Petrol Station**, **Eat & Drink**, **Parking Facility**, **ATM/Bank**).

   Note: *Petrol stations can be sorted by the price of their fuel. See* ***246, FUEL PRICES SERVICE****.*
4. Select the search result from the list provided.

The following POI details and options may also be available:

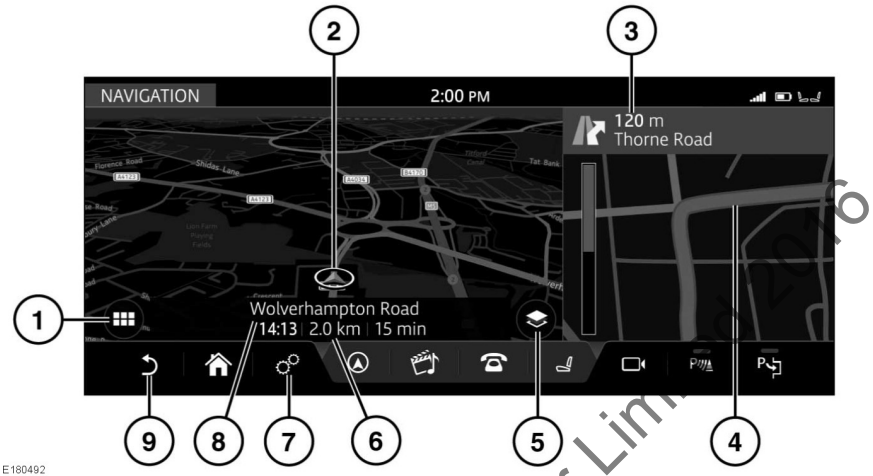
- POI phone number: Touch to view the POIs phone number and to phone the POI, if required.
- Add to favourites: Touch to add the selected POI to favourites.
- Nearest car park: Touch to search for nearby car parks, if the selected destination or waypoint is not a car park.
- Extra information (postal address, opening times, reviews, photographic view of the POI), where available.

Note: *A POI or address can be added as a waypoint after a destination has been selected.*

Note: *If the vehicle is connected to the internet, the search function can be performed using cloud-based information. The feature can be enabled and disabled in the* ***NAVIGATION SETTINGS*** *menu. See* ***242, SETTINGS****.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

MAP SPLIT SCREEN



When a route has been selected, the navigation system displays a guidance map.

Control the navigation system as follows:

1. **Main menu** icon: Touch to access the **NAVIGATION** main menu.
2. The current vehicle position and direction.
3. Active route: Next direction display.
4. Selected extra view option: Route overview, next manoeuvre, compass or traffic.
5. **Map selector** icon: Press to select **2D**, **3D** or **Satellite** map view.

   Note: *Internet connectivity is required for satellite map view.*
6. Information bar: Displays information including time, distance, and ETA (Estimated Time of Arrival).
7. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **Navigation settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. See **242, SETTINGS**.
8. Current location.
9. **Return** icon: Touch to return to a higher menu level.

MAP AUTO ZOOM

When auto-zoom is enabled, the map automatically zooms in when the vehicle is travelling at slow speeds and zooms out when travelling at higher speeds.

Auto-zoom can be enabled and disabled in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **242, SETTINGS**.

SETTINGS

To view the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu, select the **settings** icon, then select **Navigation settings** from the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. See **242, SETTINGS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

- **Alerts**: Enable or disable from a list of alert categories. See **244, ALERTS**.
- **My Commute**: Set up the commute feature. See **245, MY COMMUTE**.
- **Sync settings**: Adjust the synchronisation settings between the vehicle and other devices.
- **Your installed maps**: View the details of the maps currently loaded to the vehicle's navigation system.
- **Keyboard layouts**: Select extra keyboard layouts.
- **Route preferences**: Select to avoid certain road features.
- **Set up customised searches**: Add a customised search to favourites or frequent searches.
- **App details**: View details of the installed navigation system.
- **Auto-zoom**: Enable or disable auto-zoom. See **242, MAP AUTO ZOOM**.
- **Map features**: Enable or disable from a list of available features.
- **Manage profile data**: Clear the search history or delete all profile data.

NAVIGATION SYSTEM VOLUME

To adjust the volume of the navigation voice guidance, rotate the media volume control while spoken guidance is given. See **178, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

Note: *The volume of the safety camera alert feature is linked to voice guidance volume.*

EDIT ROUTE

A waypoint can be added or deleted, a route rearranged, or a round trip created for a selected route.

Note: *Waypoints can also be added from **Destinations**, **Enter Address**, or **Search** in the **NAVIGATION** main menu, or by selecting a point on the map.*

Touch **Edit** in the **NAVIGATION** main menu. See **239, MAIN MENU**.

The following options can be used:

- **Add Waypoint**: Touch to add a waypoint to the current route.
- Remove waypoint: Touch the bin icon to remove the waypoint from the current route.
- Change the order of the waypoints: Touch the up and down arrows to re-order the waypoints.
- **Return Journey**: Touch to make a selected destination into a round trip.

  Note: *The return journey does not include any of the selected waypoints. If waypoints are required, they must be added in the normal manner.*



Bin icon.

VIEW OPTIONS

Touch the **map selector** icon on the map to view the **VIEW OPTIONS** screen. See **236, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.

The navigation map and guidance views can be adjusted as follows:

- **2D**: Flat two-dimensional view.
- **3D**: Three-dimensional perspective view.
- **Satellite**: Birds-eye view of the surroundings.

  Note: *Satellite view requires an internet connection.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

- Next manoeuvre: Shows a detailed view of the next junction or turn.
- Route overview: View of the full route.
- Traffic (where available): Possible hazards or delays.
- Compass: Shows a digital compass, with the vehicle's heading shown in degrees.

ALERTS

Alerts can be selected from the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **242, SETTINGS**.

The following options are available:

- **Manoeuvre details**: A list of the next required manoeuvres.
- **Junction view**: Active on multi-lane carriageways, when approaching a junction. Junction view shows the lane information for the next junction.
- **Low fuel Automatic Search**: Available online and offline. Petrol stations are listed by price. The preferred station name and type of fuel can be selected.
- **Safety camera**: Notification of safety cameras.

FAVOURITES

When detailed information is displayed about an address or place, tap the **add favourite** icon and the place is added to the list of favourites.

Displayed information that is already a favourite displays the **edit favourite** icon. Touch the **edit favourite** icon to view information about the favourite location and have the option to change the icon and name, or delete it from the list of favourites.

If no route is selected, select the required favourite to set it as a destination. If a route is selected, select the required favourite to add it as a waypoint.

Note: *When signed into an InControl navigation account, favourites can be automatically synchronised between the vehicle, the internet, and the smartphone app.*

See **248, PROFILES** and **256, INCONTROL PRO SERVICES**.


Add favourite icon.


Edit favourite icon.

MAP UPDATES

The USB drive must not be removed, or the ignition switched off, before the update is complete. The map update is cancelled and potentially leaves the system without any available map data.

Note: *Due to the map data file size, it is recommended that a USB 3.0 memory device is used to update the map data.*

Note: *The vehicle must be stationary to enable the map update to start. Once the update process has started, the vehicle may be driven.*

Note: *The navigation system cannot be interacted with until the map update is complete. If a route was active before the map update started, the navigation guidance is limited to voice guidance only.*

The map data in the navigation system can be updated by downloading the updated map data to a USB memory device.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Insert the USB drive into the USB socket and follow the on-screen instructions within the navigation system to update the maps.

Note: *Only the USB sockets in the front cubby box can be used for map updates. See **91, STORAGE COMPARTMENTS**.*

Information on the installed maps is available in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **242, SETTINGS**.

For further information on navigation system updates, please visit: **www.landrover.com/navigation** or contact a Land Rover retailer.

FUEL FINDER

When the fuel level falls below a predetermined level, an alert is triggered and the navigation system searches for nearby fuel stations.

Preferred fuel stations can be stored in the **Alerts** menu. See **244, ALERTS**.

The alert can be enable and disabled in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **242, SETTINGS**.

CONNECTED NAVIGATION

A number of features are available that utilise InControl Pro Services. See **256, INCONTROL PRO SERVICES**.

The InControl Pro Services features include:

Note: *Unless stated otherwise, the features listed require an internet connection to function.*

- **My Commute**. See **245, MY COMMUTE**.
- Real time traffic flow. See **246, REAL TIME TRAFFIC FLOW**.
- Fuel price service. See **246, FUEL PRICES SERVICE**.
- Approach mode. See **246, APPROACH MODE**.

  Note: *This feature does not need an internet connection to function. However, functionality may be enhanced with an internet connection.*
- Online search. See **247, ONLINE SEARCH**.
- Satellite views. See **247, SATELLITE VIEWS**.
- Online routing. See **247, ONLINE ROUTING**.
- Cloud sync. See **248, PROFILES**.
- Door to door routing. See **247, DOOR TO DOOR ROUTING**.
- Sharing. See **248, SHARING**.

Note: *User preferences are available in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. The settings for managing which features can connect to the internet when on the home network or while roaming can also be applied. See **242, SETTINGS**.*

MY COMMUTE

A commute is a journey with a common start point, a common end point, and at a regular time of day. When **My Commute** is enabled, the navigation system is designed to recognise a commute.

The following conditions must be met for the commute to be automatically learned:

- The start point must be consistent.
- The start time must be within one hour of the current time.
- The end point must be consistent.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

All of the alternative routes that you have used on the same commute are grouped and stored.

Commute mode shows a highlighted route on the map and uses the learned routes, combined with live traffic information, to calculate the fastest of the previously used routes.

If more than one commute is available, the alternative commutes are available for selection.

Note: *Commute mode shows a map on the touch screen, but does not give voice guidance.*

Note: *My Commute can be enabled and disabled in the* ***NAVIGATION SETTINGS*** *menu. See* ***242, SETTINGS****.*

REAL TIME TRAFFIC FLOW

Real time traffic provides significantly greater amounts of detail, across a far greater road coverage than conventional broadcast-based traffic information systems. Real time traffic makes it easier to plan routes either manually or automatically. The system utilises live feeds and historical traffic patterns to continuously update traffic information, and enhance the calculation of the selected route.

Note: *Historical and internet traffic information are not available in all markets.*

Roads are displayed as colour coded, in order of traffic flow. The colour codes are:

- Red: Very heavy or stationary traffic.
- Yellow: Heavy traffic.
- Green: Free-flowing traffic.
- Black: Closed road.

Real time traffic can be displayed with a route selected or with no route selected.

A traffic-enabled route can be selected. A traffic-enabled route displays improved and updated routes to the destination, avoiding traffic congestion and delays. An option can also be enabled to possibly find a route to the destination, avoiding an alerted incident or traffic flow issues.

Note: *A live internet connection is required to receive updated traffic information during the journey.*

FUEL PRICES SERVICE

When **Petrol station** is selected during a POI search, the nearby petrol stations can be sorted according to the price of their fuel. Fuel prices are updated to the vehicle's database from the internet.

Note: *Fuel pricing information may not be updated in real time and cannot be guaranteed to be accurate.*

Note: *In some markets, a relative price index is shown instead of live fuel prices.*

APPROACH MODE

When the vehicle approaches a selected waypoint or destination, information that may be of use to the driver is displayed. If the vehicle is connected to the internet, a photographic view of the street is shown, where available.

Note: *The image can be rotated by swiping on the image to view a 360° view of the surrounding area.*

If the destination or waypoint is not a car park, and parking is available nearby, a **parking** icon displays on the touch screen.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Touch the **parking** icon to show nearby parking and to update the destination to include the selected parking. The original destination remains active for selection on the smartphone app, to enable guidance from the vehicle to the destination.

ONLINE SEARCH

The online search feature provides information, via the internet, for real-time information on Points Of Interest (POIs). An online search can provide significantly more information on POIs than the database on the vehicle.

SAFETY CAMERAS

The **Safety camera** feature provides the location of potential accident black spots or areas that have been identified as a potential danger by the presence of safety cameras.

Note: *Safety camera information is not available in all countries.*

SATELLITE VIEWS

The navigation system uses a satellite view of the local area, overlaid with the navigation system graphics.

Note: *If the satellite view feature is used continuously, it may consume large amounts of mobile data. Check the data allowance is appropriately configured for providing high-data services.*

ONLINE ROUTING

The selected route is calculated in the cloud and applies any settings that have been selected.

Online routing takes into account the current traffic conditions and the traffic patterns for the relevant time of day, on all routes.

DOOR TO DOOR ROUTING

A smartphone app allows a route to be planned in its entirety from one location to another. The smartphone app uses a combination of the phone and the vehicle's navigation system.

The app provides guidance via the phone:

- From the current location to the vehicle (including public transport information, if available).
- From the vehicle to the end destination.

Guidance along the driven section of the route is given via the vehicle's navigation system.

Note: *Using the smartphone app does not mandate that the vehicle is used. For example, if the user is close to the location and the vehicle is far away, then the application may suggest an alternative form of transport.*

ROUTE PLANNING WEB PORTAL

The route planning web portal enables a user to search, plan routes and destinations, and manage places (Points Of Interest (POI), favourites, etc.), using a computer. Destinations, places, and routes can be synchronised with the smartphone app and the vehicle's navigation system.

For further information on the route planning web portal, please visit: **www.landrover.com/navigation**, or contact a Land Rover retailer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

SHARING

Send a message (via SMS or email) to inform others of the journey details. Details include the vehicle's current location, destination and Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA). The message is automatically updated if your journey time is extended.

To share the ETA, touch the ETA banner on the touch screen information bar and follow the on-screen instructions. See **242, MAP SPLIT SCREEN**.

PROFILES

A driver profile enables personalised settings and information to be stored and easily switched for each driver.

Driver profiles can be created by signing up for an InControl navigation account within the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. Profiles can also be edited, switched, and reset. See **242, SETTINGS**.

To sign up for an InControl navigation account, the following needs to be supplied:

- Name.
- Date of birth.
- Country.
- A valid email address.
- Password.

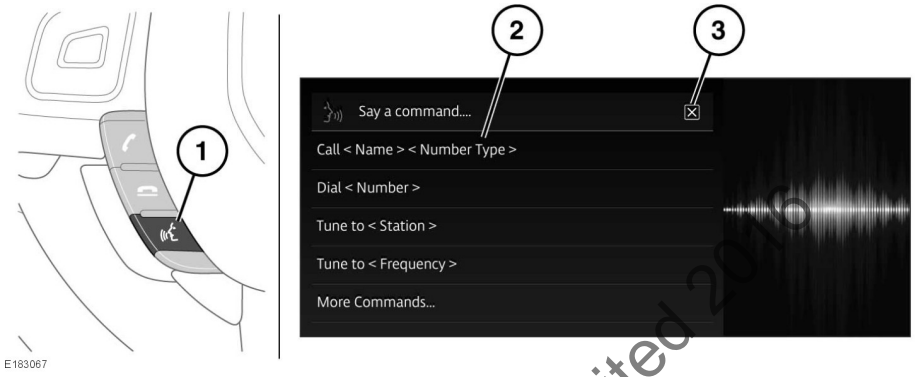
Note: *Internet connection to the vehicle is required to sign up for an account.*

The profile information on the navigation system can be synchronised with the information stored on other devices via the cloud. Cloud synchronisation can be set up in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu to be synchronised automatically or manually. See **242, SETTINGS**.

Note: *If a profile is deleted, all of the profile information is unretrievable, with the exception of favourites, which are also stored in the cloud.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

USING VOICE CONTROL



In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.

1. **Voice** button: Press briefly to start a voice session. Press and hold to cancel a voice session.
   A voice session cancels, if:
   - a higher priority activity occurs.
   - a warning appears on the touch screen.
   - there is no user input for a sustained length of time.

   Note: *Audible feedback can be interrupted at any time by just giving the next command.*
2. Command list: Displayed on the touch screen, providing feedback and some example commands at each stage of the voice session. Say or select an available command.

   The related screen is shown, when the spoken instructions is understood. The voice session can then continue either manually or by voice. The command bar, at the top of the screen, shows available commands at each stage of the conversation.
3. Touch to cancel the current voice session and continue manually.

The following commands can be spoken, at any time, to assist in the operation of voice control:

- Help.
- Cancel.
- Go back.
- Replay.

Note: *The voice system has been designed to recognise a number of languages. However, it cannot be guaranteed that the system will be compatible with every accent group within those languages. Please speak to a retailer/authorised repairer about testing the voice system for compatibility with a particular accent group.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

VOICE TUTORIAL

To listen to a tutorial detailing the operation of the voice system:

1. Briefly press the **voice** button to start a voice session.
2. Wait for the tone to sound, then say voice tutorial.

Alternatively, from the **HOME** screen, select the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen followed by **Voice** and then **Tutorial**. See **250, VOICE SETTINGS**.

The voice tutorial can be cancelled at any time. Cancel via the displayed pop-up, or press and hold the **voice** button.

Alternatively, briefly press the **voice** button and say **cancel**.

VOICETAGS

Voicetags enable the user to personalise the voice system. Meaning a single name can be used to call up a phone number, radio station, or television channel.

To add a voicetag:

1. Briefly press the **voice** button to start a voice session.
2. Wait for the tone to sound and say **store phone voicetag**, **store radio voicetag** or **store TV voicetag**.
3. For radio and television, the user must be listening to the station or channel they wish to create a voicetag for.

Alternatively, voicetags can be managed via the touch screen as follows:

1. From the **HOME** screen, select **EXTRA FEATURES**.
2. Select **Voice** and then **Voicetags**.
3. Select the system that the voicetag is to activate: **Phone**, **Radio** or **Television**.

Follow the on-screen and audible instructions. See **250, VOICE SETTINGS**.

VOICE SETTINGS

The following features can be selected from the **Voice** option. See **175, EXTRA FEATURES**.

- **Commands**: View the categories and the example voice commands. Select the **>** icon to view alternative examples of saying the same command.
- **Voicetags**: View the categories. Select a category to manage the voicetags for the chosen system. See **175, EXTRA FEATURES**.
- **Tutorial**: Select for detailed instructions. Cancel via the displayed pop-up, or by pressing and holding the **voice** button.
  Alternatively, briefly press the **voice** button and say **cancel**. See **250, VOICE TUTORIAL**.

Select **Voice settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. The following settings are displayed:

- **Voice Command Confirmation**: Select **On** or **Off**.
- **Voice Feedback**: Select **On** or **Off**.

Alternatively:

- Briefly press the **voice** button and say **voice confirmation on** or **voice confirmation off**.
- Briefly press the **voice** button and say **voice feedback on** or **voice feedback off**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

INCONTROL OVERVIEW

InControl uses smartphone and in-vehicle mobile technology, to remotely connect the vehicle to a number of services and convenience features.

Note: *For further information, access the* ***http://www.landrover.com/ownership/incontrol/index.html*** *website.*

InControl features

- **InControl Protect:**
  - InControl Remote Essentials.
  - SOS Emergency Call.
  - Optimised Assistance Call.
  - ERA GLONASS test procedure.
- **Remote Premium:**
  - Beep & Flash.
  - Vehicle Security.
  - Vehicle Wake Up.
  - Remote Climate.
- **InControl Secure:**
  - Stolen Vehicle Tracking.
- **InControl Pro Services:**
  - InControl LIVE.
  - Connected Navigation.
- **InControl Apps.**

Note: *InControl Secure is available only in selected markets.*

For InControl Protect, Remote Premium, and Pro Services, InControl accounts must be created. When an account has not been registered in the owner's name, please visit: **www.landroverincontrol.com/owner** to create new accounts. Follow the on-screen instructions to connect the newly created InControl accounts to the vehicle and to activate the services on the vehicle.

Note: *Network connectivity cannot be guaranteed in all locations.*

Note: *Responsibility remains the account owner's to remove the vehicle from the InControl account when ownership of the vehicle is transferred.*

INCONTROL PROTECT

InControl Remote Essentials

⚠ **In the interests of safety, operate, adjust, or view the system only when it is safe to do so.**

⚠ **Do not adjust the touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.**

Note: *Not all smartphones are compatible. The Land Rover InControl Remote app is compatible with iPhone 5 running iOS 7 and above, and Android phones running v4.0 and above.*

Before using Land Rover InControl Remote Essentials, the Land Rover InControl Remote app must be downloaded to the phone. The app can be downloaded from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.

Downloading and installing:

1. Search for the **Land Rover InControl Remote** app from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.
2. From the list of results, select **Land Rover InControl Remote** and install it.
3. When the installation is complete, open the launcher and select the **Land Rover InControl Remote** icon.
4. Follow the quick start guide instructions to complete the set-up.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Note: *The availability and functionality of the app depends on the specification of the vehicle and the market in which the vehicle is used.*

Note: *Apps that are not suitable for use while driving, e.g., gaming apps, are not available on the* ***Land Rover InControl Remote*** *app.*

Note: *Apple and iPhone™ are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.*

Note: *Google Play Store is a registered trademark of Google Inc.*

The **Land Rover InControl Remote** app allows for remote communication with the vehicle, to check the vehicle's fuel level and the estimated range available. Journey logs can be viewed, and the status of the doors and the windows checked. The last parked position of the vehicle can be confirmed, along with directions back to that position.

The **Vehicle Status** page is the home screen for the app. The following features can be selected:

- **Security Status**.
- **Journeys**.
- **Assistance**.
- **Settings**.

Security Status

The screen displays the open and closed status of all the doors and windows, and the current alarm setting.

Journeys

The screen displays the most recently completed journeys.

Note: *The journeys feature can be enabled or disabled via the InControl* ***Settings*** *screen.*

Note: *Stored journeys can be viewed, deleted, or downloaded as a .csv file to assist with business expenses.*

Assistance

The screen displays the vehicle's VIN and registration number. Direct calls can be made to the assistance centre, for breakdown assistance, and to the tracking call centre, in the event of a vehicle theft.

Settings

The screen allows the vehicle's security status and the journey recording to be switched on or off. Settings also allows access to the owner's InControl account.

SOS Emergency Call

There are two states of SOS Emergency Call: Automatic and manual operation.

In a crash situation, where the airbags have deployed, an automatic emergency call is made to the emergency services. In a non-crash situation, when emergency assistance is required, the emergency call button can be used manually.

In both states, the button flashes yellow until the emergency services answer the call, at which point the flashing stops.

The vehicle's location, owner details, and the nature of the problem is automatically taken. The appropriate emergency services are despatched to the vehicle's location. Contact with the emergency services agent can be made, at any time, by pressing the button.



The emergency call button is located in the overhead console. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Press and release the button cover to reveal the button. The button is illuminated by a red LED. Press the button for 2 seconds to make a direct call to the emergency services.

After use, push the button cover back into place.

Note: *When the vehicle is travelling in a different country, the SOS Emergency Call still connects. However the vehicle's location and the vehicle's details may not be automatically sent.*

There are two back-up batteries that maintain full system operation, in the event that the vehicle's battery is disconnected or disabled. The batteries are guaranteed for 3 years. When the batteries require replacement, **SOS Limited** is displayed in the message centre. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer for replacement batteries.

When a fault is detected with the SOS Emergency Call system, the **SOS Limited** message is displayed in the message centre. When this occurs, the vehicle can still be driven, but consult a retailer/authorised repairer at the earliest opportunity.

Optimised Assistance Call



The call button is located in the overhead console. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

In the event of a breakdown, press and release the button cover to reveal the button. The button is illuminated by a white LED. Press the button for 2 seconds to make a direct call to the assistance centre. The button flashes until the assistance centre answers the call, at which point the LED changes to yellow. The vehicle's details and current location are automatically relayed on to them.

The assistance centre then sends roadside assistance to the vehicle location. The agent calls back to confirm the estimated time of arrival. When the light flashes, push the button to answer the call.

After use, push the button cover back into place.

Emergency Response in case of Accident (ERA GLONASS) test procedure

Note: Applicable to Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan only.

The test procedure determines if the system is working correctly.

Make sure that the following conditions are met before starting the procedure:

- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The vehicle is stationary for a least 1 minute.
- The ignition is switched on or the engine is running.
- An emergency response call is not in progress.
- Make sure that network reception is good.



Press the assistance call button for at least 3 seconds, but for less than 10 seconds.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016



After pressing the assistance call button for 3 seconds, also press the emergency call button for at least 3 seconds.

The call button's LEDs flash amber until the test procedure ends. A call is made automatically to determine the current system status. When the system is faulty, **SOS System Not Available** is displayed in the message centre.

When all of the preparation conditions are met, and **SOS System Not Available** message is displayed, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer.

Note: SOS System Not Available *message is also displayed if there is no network reception. Move the vehicle to an area of good reception and retest.*

The test procedure ends, after 5 minutes, if the ignition is switched off, or if the vehicle is driven more than 300 m.

Note: *When the test procedure is repeated, make sure there is a time delay of at least 5 minutes before retesting.*

INCONTROL REMOTE PREMIUM

InControl Remote Premium enhances the InControl Remote Essentials features with the addition of:

- **Beep and Flash.**
- **Remote Climate.**
- **Vehicle Security Remote Lock/ Unlock.**
- **Vehicle Security Remote Alarm Reset.**
- **Vehicle Wake Up.**

Note: *The availability and functionality of the InControl Remote Premium features depends on the specification of the vehicle and the area in which the vehicle is used.*

Beep and Flash

The vehicle status page is the home screen for the app. With InControl Remote Premium, Beep and Flash is added to the screen. Beep and Flash locates the vehicle by flashing the vehicle's lights and sounding the horn.

Note: *Responsibility remains the driver's to comply with all regulations in force, regarding the use of vehicle horns.*

Remote Climate

With remote climate, the engine of an automatic transmission vehicle can be started remotely, to run for up to 30 minutes. The remote climate feature provides a comfortable temperature inside the cabin in advance of the driver entering the vehicle. Press the **Engine START** button on the **Remote Climate** page and enter a PIN. A target temperature can be set.

Remote climate does not function if any of the following conditions exist:

- The vehicle's fuel level is low.
- The vehicle's battery charge level is low.
- The vehicle is not locked.
- A window, door, bonnet, or the tailgate is open.
- The engine has been manually started.
- A system error occurs with a required vehicle system.
- A theft has been reported to the stolen vehicle monitoring centre.
- The vehicle's alarm is sounding.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

- A crash event has been detected.
- The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- The automatic transmission is not in Park (**P**).
- The brake pedal is pressed.

Note: *Some markets may prohibit the use of remote engine starting. Responsibility remains the driver's to know if this function can legally be used.*

Note: *Remote climate is also available for vehicles fitted with a timed climate system. When the vehicle specification does not support remote engine starting, the timed climate system may be used to support cabin pre-conditioning. The condition also applies if the vehicle originated in a market with legal restrictions on remote engine starting.*

Vehicle Security

Vehicle security allows the user to lock and unlock the vehicle remotely. When either lock or unlock cannot be performed, the phone screen displays an error message. For added security, this function requires a PIN code to be entered.

When the vehicle is locked remotely, it is secured to the maximum possible level allowed in the market in which the vehicle was intended for original sale.

Note: *When any window(s) is in an open position, the vehicle does not lock remotely. In some markets, remote closing of windows is not permitted.*

When the vehicle is unlocked remotely, it relocks after 45 seconds if no door or aperture is opened. When an alarm alert is received, the vehicle's alarm can be reset from the owner's current position.

Note: *Regardless of which screen is currently displayed, if the vehicle's alarm is sounding, a pop-up screen is displayed with an option to reset the alarm. The alarm may also be reset via the* ***Vehicle Security*** *screen.*

Note: *Responsibility remains the driver's to know the location of the vehicle and to make sure that the vehicle is secured.*

Vehicle Wake Up

The InControl Remote Premium system enters a low power mode, 96 hours after the last engine stop. The low power mode action conserves vehicle battery life.

When the vehicle is parked for an extended period, e.g., when on vacation or on a business trip, the owner can use the Vehicle Wake Up feature. The feature wakes up the InControl Remote Premium system on the selected date. Any date within a 30 day period can be chosen. Once Vehicle Wake Up is set, the InControl Remote Premium system enters the low power mode after 60 hours. Battery power is then reserved for the wake up.

Note: *The Vehicle Wake Up feature cannot be set once the InControl Remote Premium system has shut down.*

INCONTROL SECURE

InControl Secure provides a stolen vehicle tracking service. In the event that the vehicle has been tampered with, or moved without the owner's consent, the account owner is contacted by the InControl Secure operating centre. Alternatively, use the Land Rover InControl Remote app, or the phone number on the InControl website, to contact the InControl Secure operating centre.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

When the vehicle is being serviced or repaired, **Service Mode** must be enabled.

When the vehicle is being transported, **Transport Mode** must be enabled.

Transport mode can be enabled by using the Land Rover InControl Remote app, or via the InControl website. The transport and service mode actions prevent automatic theft alerts being raised while the vehicle is being transported or serviced.

Note: *For further information, log into the* ***www.landroverincontrol.com/owner*** *website.*

INCONTROL PRO SERVICES

Live

Live allows features to be installed directly to the infotainment system.

Examples may include, weather, flight tracker, and news feeds.

The availability of Live services and features may vary by market. Selected Live services and features require an InControl account.

Note: *For further information, visit the* ***www.landroverincontrol.com/owner*** *website.*

Connected Navigation

A selection of InControl Pro Services are available for use with the navigation system. To access certain features, an InControl navigation account is required. Visit: **www.landroverincontrol.com/owner** to create an account.

Available features:

- My commute.
- Real time traffic flow.
- Fuel price service.
- Approach mode.
- Online search.
- Safety cameras.
- Satellite views.
- Street level imagery.
- Online routing.
- Door to door routing via the InControl Route Planner smartphone app.
- Sharing of Expected Time of Arrival (ETA), places and destination.
- Cloud sync.

For further information, see **236, THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.

InControl Pro Services require a suitable, data-enabled micro SIM to be fitted to the vehicle. The SIM slot can be found in the USB panel located in the centre console cubby box.

Note: *When the satellite views feature is used continuously, it may consume large amounts of mobile data. Check the data allowance is appropriately configured for providing high data services.*

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO

http://goo.gl/x4LAZr

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

http://goo.gl/uo0JiJ

INCONTROL APPS

In the interests of safety, operate, adjust, or view the system only when it is safe to do so.

Do not adjust the touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

Note: *Not all smartphones are compatible. The Land Rover InControl Apps app is compatible with iPhone 5 running iOS 7 and above, and Android phones running v4.0 and above.*

InControl Apps allows operation of a number of smartphone apps via the vehicle's touch screen.

Before using InControl Apps, the Land Rover InControl Apps app must be downloaded from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.

Downloading and installing the app:

1. Search for the **Land Rover InControl Apps** app from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.
2. From the list of results, select **Land Rover InControl Apps** and install it.
3. When the installation is complete, open the launcher and select the **Land Rover InControl Apps** icon.
4. Follow the quick start guide instructions to complete the set up.

Note: *The availability and functionality of the app depends on the specification of the vehicle and the market in which the vehicle is used.*

Note: *Apps that are not suitable for use while driving, e.g., gaming apps, are not available on the* ***Land Rover InControl Apps*** *app.*

Note: *Apple and iPhone™ are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.*

Note: *Google Play Store is a registered trademark of Google Inc.*

When subsequently selecting the **Land Rover InControl Apps** app, the **Apps** view shows two lists of compatible apps: **Not Installed Apps** and **Installed Apps**. Apps in the **Not installed Apps** list can be added at any time. Scroll to the right to see the full list. Tap the required app and install. The new app appears in the **Installed Apps** list.

The **Vehicle layout** view shows how the installed apps can display on the vehicle's touch screen. The order of the apps can be adjusted here. Touch an icon and drag to the required position.

The **Options** menu gives access to a quick start guide and allows the **Keyboard** to be changed to suit the preferred language. The **Options** menu allows access to the **Navigation** feature, and includes a list of **FAQs**.

To view an app on the vehicle's touch screen, connect the phone via the USB cable, supplied with the phone, to the vehicle's USB socket. The socket is located in the centre console cubby box. The touch screen **HOME** menu must be selected.

When the apps are not displayed, move to the **EXTRA FEATURES** area. Select the **InControl** option, then **View** or **Bluetooth Settings**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Make sure that the phone is paired via the **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device connection. See **231, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

CONNECTIVITY

Connectivity methods include:

- **Wi-Fi hotspot**: Creates a Wi-Fi hotspot in the vehicle, to allow connection of Wi-Fi equipped devices, e.g., tablet, laptop, smartphone, etc., to the internet. Also allows sharing of media between the Wi-Fi equipped devices inside the vehicle.
- **Wi-Fi**: Allows the vehicle to connect to the internet using an external Wi-Fi network.
- **Mobile data**: Allows the vehicle to connect to the internet via a mobile network, using a data-enabled micro SIM card.

Internet connectivity requires a data-enabled micro SIM card or an in-range external Wi-Fi network.

Note: *Not all vehicles are fitted with Wi-Fi and mobile data. In these vehicles,* ***Wi-Fi hotspot*** *is the only available connection method for sharing media between the Wi-Fi equipped devices inside the vehicle.*

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO

http://goo.gl/7CQ5LV

CONNECTIVITY SETTINGS

In the interests of safety, only operate, adjust, or view the system when it is safe to do so.

Connectivity settings are accessed via the touch screen. Select the **settings** icon to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **All Settings**, followed by **Features**. Select **Connectivity**. See **177, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

The **CONNECTIVITY** menu screen displays **Wi-Fi hotspot**, **Wi-Fi**, and **Mobile Data** settings.

Wi-Fi hotspot connectivity:

1. Select **ON** to create a vehicle hotspot.
2. Select **Wi-Fi hotspot settings** to display the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot name and password. The Wi-Fi hotspot name is determined by the vehicle and cannot be changed.

   Note: *To change the password, touch the* ***Refresh*** *icon. A new password is generated.*
3. To connect a device to the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot, switch the device's Wi-Fi to **ON**. Select the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot name and insert the password.

Wi-Fi connectivity:

1. Select **ON** to enable Wi-Fi.
2. Select **Add** to view any Wi-Fi networks in range.
3. To connect to an unknown network, select the network name. When the Wi-Fi network is password protected, a keyboard displays to allow entry of the password.
4. To connect to a known network, select the network and touch **Connect**, or to forget this network, touch **Forget**.
5. To connect to a hidden network, select **Add Network** from the network list. Enter the **Network Name**, **Security Type**, and **Password**, and press **Connect**.

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Connectivity

Mobile data connectivity:

Mobile data requires the installation of a data-enabled micro SIM card. See **261, SIM CARD INSTALLATION**.

1. Select **ON** to enable mobile data.
2. Select **Agree** to agree to the terms and conditions.

   Note: *Mobile data connectivity is indicated by an icon at the top of the screen. See* ***260, CONNECTIVITY STATUS ICONS****.*
3. Select **Mobile Settings** to access the following options:

Network provider: The network provider of the inserted SIM is displayed. To change the APN settings, select the network provider's name to open the **NETWORK PROVIDER** screen. Set **Auto Select** to **OFF**. Add the **Network**, **Username**, and **Password**. Select **Connect**.

Roaming: Data roaming is set to **OFF** as default. Select **ON** to enable roaming.

Usage Limit: The usage limit is set to **OFF** as default. Select **ON** to enable usage limit.

Usage: The usage counter displays the total data usage for the month. The usage counter resets on the 1st day of the month, as default. When the usage limit is set to **ON**, the usage limit also displays.

Select **Usage** to change the usage limit and the monthly reset date. Use the reset counter to reset the current usage to zero.

SIM PIN: A PIN can be set or changed for the inserted SIM card.

Remember SIM PIN:

1. Select **ON** to remember.
2. Select **OFF** to forget the PIN.

About:

From the **CONNECTIVITY** menu screen, select **About** to display the vehicle's MAC address and IMEI number.

To reset all connectivity settings to default, select **Reset** and then select **Yes**.

CONNECTIVITY STATUS ICONS

The icons at the top of the screen display the type of cellular or Wi-Fi connection, as follows:



Connecting.



E (edge) mobile network connectivity.



2G mobile network connectivity.



3G mobile network connectivity.


No mobile network connection.


When the vehicle is connected to an external hotspot, a **Wi-Fi** icon is displayed instead of a **cellular** icon.

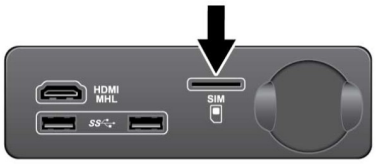
Note: *Depending on the network connectivity, some features and services, including Wi-Fi, may not operate as expected, or at all. A strong 3G connection is required.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

SIM CARD INSTALLATION

A SIM card must be inserted into the SIM card holder. The SIM card reader utilises a micro SIM interface. When the current SIM card is a different size, e.g., a nano SIM, an adaptor or replacement SIM card is required.

The SIM card reader slot is located in the centre console's cubby box.



E171585

To fit a micro SIM card, insert the card with the contacts facing up and the shortest end facing out. The card should not be protruding once correctly inserted.

Make sure the SIM card is located correctly into the card holder. Failure to do so may damage the SIM card or SIM card reader.

To remove a SIM card, gently push in and release.

Note: *Some network operators may lock SIM cards to operate in specific devices only. Contact the network operator if the SIM card requires unlocking.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Fuel and refuelling

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

Do not smoke, use an exposed flame, or cause sparks while refuelling. The resulting fire and explosion may cause serious injury or death.

Avoid exposing the fuel gases to any potential sources of ignition. The resulting fire and explosion may cause serious injury or death.

Switch off the engine when refuelling, as it is both a source of extreme temperatures and electrical sparks. Failure to do so may cause a fire or explosion, causing serious injury or death.

When refuelling, switch off any personal electronic devices such as mobile phones or music players. Failure to do so may cause a fire or explosion, causing serious injury or death.

Do not overfill the fuel tank, as this may cause spillage when the vehicle is driven. Spillage may also occur if the fuel expands in high ambient temperatures.

Only use containers specifically designed for carrying fuel and always remove them from the vehicle to fill them. Failure to do so may result in spillage and cause a fire.

Use extreme care and take appropriate safety precautions when refuelling the vehicle. Make sure to read and observe all the relevant warnings listed.

PETROL ENGINED VEHICLES

Use high quality fuel that meets the specification defined by EN228, or the national equivalent.

Do not use leaded fuels, fuels with lead substitutes, e.g., manganese-based, or fuel additives. The vehicle's emission control systems can be adversely affected, which may affect the vehicle's warranty coverage.

Fuel system cleaning agents should not be used, unless approved by the vehicle manufacturer.

OCTANE RATING

Vehicles with a petrol engine require the use of premium unleaded fuel, with a minimum octane rating of 95 RON. Using the correct fuel specification helps to maintain the vehicle's performance, fuel economy, and driveability.

If premium unleaded fuel is not available, then use unleaded fuel with a lower octane rating, down to a minimum of 91 RON. Using lower octane rated fuel may reduce engine performance, increase fuel consumption, cause an audible engine knock, and other driveability problems.

Do not use fuels with an octane rating lower than 91 RON as severe engine damage may occur.

Note: *Occasional, light, engine knock, experienced while accelerating or climbing hills, is acceptable.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Consult a retailer/authorised repairer if a heavy persistent engine knock is detected, even if using fuel to the recommended octane rating. Particularly if an engine knock is detected, while holding a steady speed on level roads. Failure to do so is misuse of the vehicle, which is not covered by the vehicle's warranty.

If in doubt, seek advice from a retailer/authorised repairer in the territory concerned.

Super Green Plus 98 RON unleaded fuel (where available) may be used as an alternative to the standard 95 RON unleaded fuel.

ETHANOL

Do not use E85 fuels with 85% ethanol content, as serious engine and fuel system damage will occur.

Do not use fuels containing more than 10% ethanol.

Fuels containing up to 10% ethanol may be used, e.g., E5 and E10.

Make sure that the fuel has octane ratings no lower than those recommended for unleaded fuel. Correct engine operation should not be affected with fuel containing the permissible amount of ethanol. If a difference is detected, the use of conventional unleaded fuel should be resumed.

METHANOL

Wherever possible, avoid using fuel containing methanol.

Using fuel containing methanol may cause serious engine and fuel system damage, which may not be covered by the vehicle's warranty.

METHYL TERTIARY BUTYL ETHER (MTBE)

Unleaded fuel containing an oxygenate known as Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether (MTBE) can be used. The ratio of MTBE to conventional fuel must not exceed 15%. MTBE is an ether-based compound derived from petroleum. MTBE has been specified by several refiners as the substance to enhance the octane rating of fuel.

DIESEL ENGINED VEHICLES

If the fuel tank is inadvertently filled with petrol instead of diesel, do not attempt to start the engine. In this event, contact a retailer/authorised repairer immediately.

Any damage caused by running the vehicle with fuel other than that stipulated, which may not be covered under warranty.

Use only high quality diesel fuel, according to the European standard EN590 or equivalent.

Fuels containing a blend of up to 7% bio-diesel may be used, in accordance with the European standard EN590. Using a higher blend of bio-diesel is not recommended.

The quality and specification of diesel fuel varies significantly, depending on geographical location. Using a premium fuel is recommended, or the highest quality of fuel available.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Fuel and refuelling

High quality fuel promotes a longer life for the engine's components. Lower grade fuel contains higher levels of sulphur, which is detrimental to the engine's components. If low quality fuel is used, light coloured smoke may be evident at the exhaust.

Prolonged use of additives is not recommended. Do not add paraffin or petrol to diesel fuels.

SULPHUR CONTENT

- Using an incorrect specification of fuel causes serious damage to the engine and the exhaust after-treatment system. The vehicle's warranty does not cover this. If in doubt, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer for advice.
- Some vehicles have a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) exhaust after-treatment system. The maximum sulphur content of the diesel fuel must not exceed 0.005% (50 parts per million). In compliance with the EN590-EU4 and the World Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC) standards.
- The sulphur content of diesel fuel used in vehicles without a DPF, should not exceed 0.3% (3 000 parts per million).

In some countries, diesel fuel may contain higher levels of sulphur. If used, more frequent vehicle servicing is required, to help reduce the effects on the engine, and the exhaust after-treatment components. If in doubt, contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice.

DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF)

- **DEF must be kept out of children's reach, to avoid serious injury or death.**
- **Read the label for safety precautions when using DEF, to avoid injury.**
- DEF must be stored in the original container, in a cool, dry, and well-ventilated area. Observe the manufacturer's storage and handling recommendations.
- DEF has a strong odour and can stain clothing or upholstery. Take care not to spill the fluid when performing a top-up procedure. In the event of spillage, rinse immediately with clean water.
- When refilling, make sure that the correct specification of DEF is used. Use of the incorrect fluid can result in serious damage to the vehicle. In this situation, do not start the engine, contact a retailer/authorised repairer immediately.
- Do not overfill the DEF tank, as damage to DEF system may occur.
- Do not use commercial vehicle DEF dispensing nozzles. The vehicle's DEF system is not designed to be refilled under these higher pressures. The flow-rate of these pumps can result in serious damage to the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Vehicles with a diesel engine may have a tank containing Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF). DEF is used to make sure that correct exhaust emissions are achieved. DEF is also known as AdBlue™, AUS 32, and ARLA 32. AdBlue™ is a trademark of the Verband der Automobilindustrie e.V. (VDA).

Dependent on the current geographical location, correct use of the DEF system may be a legal requirement. Running the vehicle without the correct specification of DEF may be a criminal offence. Always use the correct DEF specification, and the correct quantity of DEF. See **346, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**, and also see **347, CAPACITIES**.

The consumption of DEF can vary greatly. An average consumption rate can be 800 km (500 miles) / 1 Litre, but this consumption rate can be more than doubled, depending on the driving style, road and weather conditions.

The distance until the DEF tank is empty can be viewed in the vehicle message centre:

1. Switch on the ignition, but do not start the engine. See **120, SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION**.
2. Press the **OK** button repeatedly on the steering wheel control until **Driver Assistance** is displayed.
3. Using the down arrow button on the steering wheel control, scroll down to highlight **Vehicle Information**.
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm selection.
5. Scroll down to highlight **Next Service**.
6. Press the **OK** button to confirm selection. The Diesel Exhaust Fluid range is then displayed.

The message centre displays a series of messages when the DEF level becomes low:

- The first message states that the DEF level is at a level where a top up is advised.
- The second message is accompanied by an AMBER warning icon and states to refill the DEF tank.
- The third message starts a countdown of the distance remaining until the DEF tank is empty, after which the vehicle will fail to start.
- The final message is accompanied by a RED warning icon and is displayed when the distance remaining is zero and states that no further restarts are possible until DEF is added to the tank.

Note: *When the DEF level becomes low, a notification displays in the message centre. Refill the DEF tank at the earliest opportunity. A retailer/authorised repairer can be contacted to arrange a full DEF refill.*

To perform a full DEF system refill, it is recommended to contact a retailer/ authorised repairer. If required, DEF can be added to the tank by following the top-up procedure.

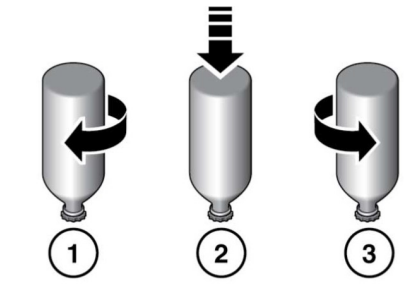
Two standard-sized non-drip refill bottles, each containing 1.9 L of DEF, is the minimum amount required to restart the engine. Refill bottles are available from a retailer/authorised repairer.

To perform a DEF top-up procedure:

Locate the DEF tank. See **293, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS**.

Turn the tank filler cap counter-clockwise to remove.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016



E163458

1. Place the refill bottle over the tank filler cap aperture and turn clockwise, until locked into position.
2. Press the base of the refill bottle, until all of the fluid has completely drained into the tank.
3. Turn the refill bottle counter-clockwise and remove.
4. Repeat the procedure with the second refill bottle.
5. Replace the tank filler cap and continually turn clockwise until hand tight.

If a DEF warning lamp, or message illuminates with a red warning icon, seek qualified assistance at the earliest opportunity. The possible events for this include DEF system malfunctions, incorrect fluid, and fluid quality. See **65, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (RED)**, and also see **67, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (AMBER)**.

Note: *In extremely low temperatures below -10°C, DEF may freeze in the tank, making refilling difficult. Move the vehicle into a warmer environment, e.g., a garage. Raise the ambient temperature, in order to thaw the DEF, before attempting to top-up. In these conditions, it may take up to 1 hour of driving before the low DEF message extinguishes.*

Note: *When starting and stopping the engine, operation of the DEF pumps may be heard, but this is no cause for concern.*

Note: *The engine/transmission (amber) warning lamp may illuminate after a refill. In this event, start the engine, run for approximately 30 seconds, and then switch off the engine. Do this three times in succession.*

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Avoid running out of fuel. Doing so can cause damage to the vehicle's engine, fuel, and emission control systems.

If the vehicle does run out of fuel, a minimum of 4 L is required to restart the engine. See **268, FUEL FILLER FLAP**.

The vehicle should be left with the ignition on for 5 minutes after refuelling, before attempting to restart the engine. The vehicle needs to be driven for a distance of 1.5 - 5 km, in order to reset the engine management and monitoring systems.


E173721

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Vehicles with a diesel engine may be supplied with an active misfuelling device. A metal flap is visible in the filler neck, when the fuel filler cap is removed. Use the emergency funnel supplied with the vehicle, to refill the fuel tank with a fuel can. Insert the funnel into the filler neck, fully and squarely, to open the active misfuelling device. See **269, ACTIVE DIESEL MISFUELLING PROTECTION DEVICE**.

Note: *If the vehicle does run out of fuel, seeking qualified assistance is advisable.*

WATER IN FUEL

If a water in fuel warning message displayed in the message centre, an excessive amount of water has collected in the fuel system. In this event, consult a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.

DIESEL ENGINES

Running out of fuel draws air into the fuel system and may cause serious damage to the fuel injection system. In this event, seek qualified assistance immediately.

Vehicles with a diesel engine have a system that prevents the fuel tank from emptying completely. When the fuel reaches a minimum level, the system activates a reduced power mode, i.e., the engine does not run properly. The engine is also switched off, after travelling a further distance of approximately 1.6 km.

If the fuel gauge indicates a low fuel level, or the low fuel warning lamp illuminates, refuel the vehicle as soon as possible. See **69, LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)**.

If the system protection function activates, the vehicle must be refuelled immediately. In this event, the vehicle should be carefully driven to the nearest place of safety, as soon as safety permits

A minimum of 4 L of fuel is required to enable the engine to be restarted. After refuelling, use the following procedure:

1. Press and hold the brake pedal (automatic transmission), or the clutch pedal (manual transmission).
2. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button and crank the engine for 5 seconds.
3. Release the **START/STOP** button.
4. With the brake pedal (or clutch pedal) still pressed, press and release the **START/STOP** button to crank the engine. The engine should start within approximately 5 seconds.

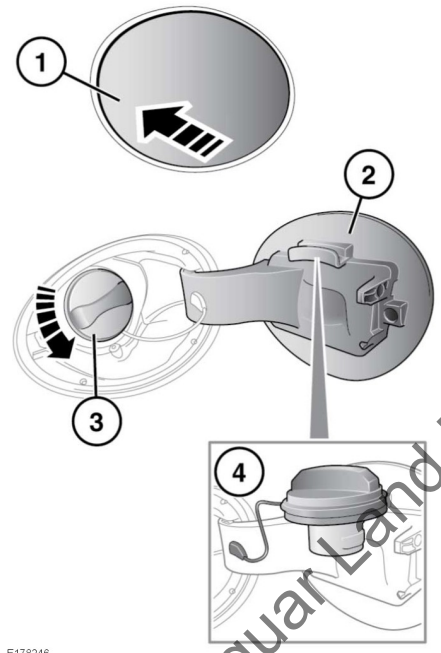
Note: *If the engine does not start, pause for 10 seconds with the ignition switched on, then repeat the procedure from the beginning.*

Do not crank the engine for longer than 30 seconds continuously.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

FUEL FILLER FLAP

Take note of all warnings and instructions given on the label affixed to the inside of the filler flap. Failure to do so may result in injury or death.



E178246

The fuel filler flap is located on the right side of the vehicle, at the rear.

1. Press and release the rear of the fuel filler flap to unlatch.
2. Pull the flap open. The label on the inside of the flap indicates the correct fuel for the vehicle.
3. Turn the cap counter-clockwise to undo.
4. Store the cap on the lip provided on the top of the hinge arm, as shown.

When replacing the cap, turn it clockwise until the ratchet clicks.

To close the filler flap, push the flap until it is securely latched.

FUEL FILLER

When refuelling, make sure that all of the windows, doors, and the sunroof are fully closed. Use extreme care and caution if young children or animals are in the vehicle.

Do not attempt to fill the fuel tank past its maximum capacity. If the vehicle is to be parked on a slope, in direct sunlight or high ambient temperatures, expansion of the fuel could cause spillage.

Check the fuel pump information carefully, to make sure that the correct fuel is used to refuel the vehicle.

Make sure that the fuel filler nozzle is fully inserted into the filler neck.

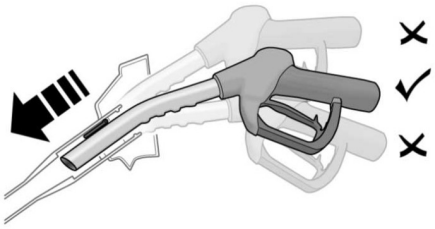
If the vehicle is filled with the incorrect fuel, it is essential to seek qualified assistance before starting the engine.

Filling station pumps are equipped with automatic cut-off sensing, to avoid fuel spillage. Fill the tank slowly, until the filler nozzle automatically cuts off the supply. Do not attempt to fill the tank beyond this point.

Note: *Filling station pumps used for commercial vehicles deliver fuel at a higher rate than normal. The higher fill rate can cause premature cut-off and may cause fuel spillage. Only the use of standard light vehicle fuel pumps is recommended.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

ACTIVE DIESEL MISFUELLING PROTECTION DEVICE



E176483

Vehicles with a diesel engine may have an active misfuelling protection device. A metal flap is visible in the filler neck when the fuel filler cap is removed. The active misfuelling protection device prevents the fuel tank being filled with the incorrect fuel, e.g., petrol. Automatic release occurs if a correctly sized, diesel fuel pump filler nozzle is inserted, fully and squarely, into the vehicle's fuel filler neck, as illustrated.

Note: *To refuel with a fuel can, use the emergency funnel supplied with the vehicle. See* ***266, RUNNING OUT OF FUEL****.*

PASSIVE DIESEL MISFUELLING PROTECTION DEVICE

When the passive misfuelling protection device is activated, it may cause fuel to be discharged from the filler neck.

Vehicles with a diesel engine may have a passive misfuelling protection device, incorporated into the fuel filler neck.

Using a smaller diameter (petrol) fuel pump nozzle activates the passive misfuelling protection device. The vehicle's fuel filler neck is then closed to prevent the wrong fuel being added to the fuel tank. The (yellow) passive misfuelling protection device is visible in the fuel filler neck, when activated. In this event, use the reset tool to deactivate the misfuelling protection device. The reset tool is stored in the vehicle's tool kit.

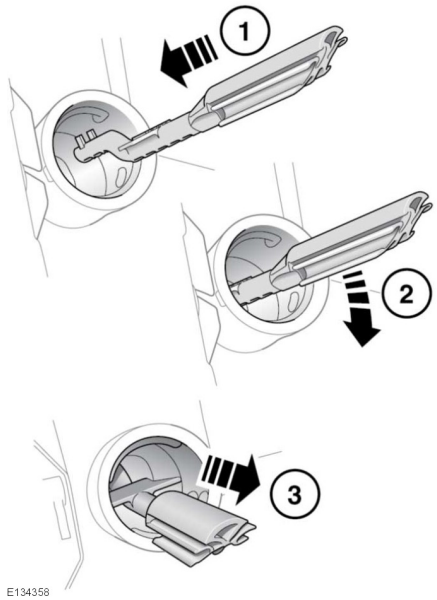
Note: *The passive misfuelling protection device may not activate if an incorrect (petrol) fuel pump nozzle is only partially inserted.*

Note: *The driver is responsible for filling the vehicle with the correct fuel. The passive misfuelling protection device only reduces the risk of filling the vehicle with an incorrect fuel.*

Note: *The passive misfuelling protection device may be activated by some fuel can filler spouts, and older fuel pumps.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Fuel and refuelling



Use the following reset tool instructions:

1. Insert the reset tool with the teeth uppermost, as far as it goes into the fuel filler neck.
2. Push down on the top of the reset tool to engage the teeth.

   Do not twist the device once the teeth have engaged.
3. Slowly pull the tool out of the fuel filler neck to reset the passive misfuelling protection device.

Note: *When reset, the (yellow) passive misfuelling protection device is no longer visible in the vehicle's fuel filler neck.*

Replace the reset tool back into the vehicle's tool kit.

FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Avoid the risk of running out of fuel. Never intentionally drive the vehicle when the fuel gauge indicates that the fuel tank is empty. When refuelling the vehicle after the indicated range reads zero, it may not be possible to add the maximum fuel quantity. The fuel tank retains a small reserve of fuel. See **347, CAPACITIES**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

FUEL CONSUMPTION

The fuel consumption figures are calculated using the EC test procedure UN/ECE R101.

Under normal use, a vehicle's actual fuel consumption figures may differ from those achieved through the test procedure. Fuel consumption is dependent on driving techniques, road and traffic conditions, environmental factors, the vehicle's condition, and the vehicle's load.

Variant	Urban Ltr/100 km	Extra-urban Ltr/100 km	Combined Ltr/100 km	CO^2 emissions combined g/km
4 Wheel Drive				
Diesel (automatic) - convertible - EU5	6.7	5.1	5.7	149
Diesel (automatic) - convertible - EU4	7.4	5.8	6.4	169
Diesel (manual) - 3 and 5 door	5.5	4.3	4.8	125
Diesel (automatic) - 3 door - EU5	5.8	4.4	4.9	129
Diesel (automatic) - 5 door - EU5	6.1	4.5	5.1	134
Diesel (automatic) - 3 door - EU4	6.8	5.0	5.6	148
Diesel (automatic) - 5 door - EU4	7.0	5.1	5.8	152
Petrol (automatic) - convertible	11.4	7.0	8.6	201
Petrol (automatic) - 3 and 5 door	10.4	6.4	7.8	181
2 Wheel Drive				
Diesel (manual) - 3 door	4.9	3.7	4.2	109
Diesel (manual) - 5 door	5.0	3.9	4.3	113

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

URBAN CYCLE

The urban test cycle is carried out from a cold start situation. The test consists of a series of accelerations, decelerations, and periods of steady speed driving and engine idling. The maximum speed attained during the test is 50 km/h (30 mph), with an average speed of 19 km/h (12 mph).

EXTRA-URBAN CYCLE

The extra-urban test cycle is carried out immediately after the urban test. Approximately half of the test comprises of steady speed driving, while the remainder consists of a series of accelerations, decelerations, and engine idling. The maximum test speed is 120 km/h (75 mph) and the average speed is 63 km/h (39 mph). The test is carried out over a distance of 7 km.

COMBINED

The combined figure is an average of the urban and extra-urban test cycle results. The combined figures are weighted to take into account the different distances covered during the two tests.

For extra information on fuel consumption figures and exhaust emissions, visit the Vehicle Certification Agency (VCA) website: **http://www.vcacarfueldata.org.uk/**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

RUNNING-IN

The vehicle is built using high-precision manufacturing methods, but the moving parts of the engine must still bed-in, relative to each other. The process occurs mainly in the first 3 000 km of operation.

During this running-in period of 3 000 km, observe and follow the instructions below:

- Do not use a fully depressed accelerator pedal during starts and normal driving.
- Avoid high engine speeds (rpm) until the engine has reached its full operating temperature.
- Avoid labouring the engine by operating the engine in too high a gear at low speeds.
- Gradually increase engine and road speeds.
- Avoid continuous operation at high engine speed and abrupt stops.
- Avoid frequent cold starts followed by short-distance driving.
- Preferably take longer journeys.
- Do not participate in track days, sports driving schools, or any similar events.

AIR CONDITIONING (A/C)

Under no circumstances should any part of the Air Conditioning (A/C) system be serviced, dismantled, or replaced by anyone other than suitably qualified and certified personnel. Make sure that the refrigerant is correctly contained at all times.

All replacement parts for the A/C system must be new and equivalent to the manufacturer's original equipment. All replacement parts must comply with the relevant SAE standard. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice.

The A/C system contains HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf), which is a low Global Warming Potential (GWP) Tetrafluoropropene refrigerant. The A/C system is sealed and has a leakage rate of less than 3% per year.

The following symbols may be used on an under-bonnet label and are relevant to the refrigerant fluid:


A/C symbol.


Lubricant symbol.


Caution.


Flammable refrigerant.


Required registered technician to service A/C.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

OWNER MAINTENANCE

Any significant or sudden drop in fluid levels, or uneven tyre wear, should be reported to a qualified technician without delay.

In addition to the routine maintenance, a number of simple checks must be carried out more frequently.

DAILY CHECKS

- Operation of the lights, horn, direction indicators, wipers, washers, and warning lamps.
- Operation of the seat belts and brakes.
- Look for fluid deposits underneath the vehicle that might indicate a leak. Condensation drips from the Air Conditioning (A/C) system are normal.

WEEKLY CHECKS

- Engine oil level.
- Engine coolant level.
- Brake fluid level.
- Power steering fluid level.
- Screen washer fluid level.
- Tyre pressures and condition.
- Operate the Air Conditioning (A/C).

Note: *The engine oil level should be checked more frequently if the vehicle is driven for prolonged periods at high speeds.*

EXHAUST FILTER

Diesel vehicles equipped with a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) have more efficient emissions control. The particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the exhaust filter during normal driving.

Cleaning of the exhaust filter, also known as regeneration. The cleaning occurs automatically, approximately every 300 to 900 km depending on driving conditions, and requires the engine to reach normal operating temperature.

Self-cleaning takes place when the vehicle is driven steadily at speeds between 60 km/h and 112 km/h (40 mph and 70 mph). The process normally takes 10 to 20 minutes. Self-cleaning can occur at lower vehicle speeds, but the process may take a little longer at a 50 km/h (30 mph) average speed.

Exhaust filter self-cleaning

Some driving conditions, e.g., frequently driving short distances, in slow-moving traffic or in cold weather, may not provide sufficient opportunity to begin the exhaust filter self-cleaning automatically. When this occurs, a warning icon is displayed in the message centre, depending on status, as follows:



- Amber: Exhaust filter self-cleaning is required. Driving above 60 km/h (40 mph) for 20 minutes should clean the filter.

  Note: *Failure to follow the above driving approach, to enable filter self-cleaning, may result in reduced vehicle performance. The amber exhaust filter icon is eventually replaced by a red exhaust filter icon, and the filter may need to be replaced.*
- Green: Exhaust filter self-cleaning is complete.
- Red: The exhaust filter is full. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Note: *A small increase in fuel consumption may be noticed temporarily during exhaust filter self-cleaning.*

Note: *If diesel fuel with high sulphur content is used regularly, the exhaust may emit a cloud of smoke at the start of the self-cleaning process. The smoke is a result of the sulphur deposit being burnt off and is no cause for concern. If possible, only use low sulphur diesel fuel.*

ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

No modifications or additions should be made to the anti-theft system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.

AIRBAG SYSTEM

The components that make up the airbag system are sensitive to electrical or physical interference, either of which could easily damage the system and cause inadvertent operation or a malfunction of the airbag module.

To prevent malfunction of the airbag system, always consult a retailer/ authorised repairer before fitting any of the following:

- Electronic equipment such as a mobile phone, two-way radio, or in-vehicle entertainment system.
- Accessories attached to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification involving the removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any of the airbag system components, including the steering wheel, steering column, instrument or fascia panels.
- Any modification to the fascia panels or steering wheel.

PARTS AND ACCESSORIES

The fitting of non-approved parts and accessories, or the carrying out of non-approved alterations or conversions, may be dangerous and could affect the safety of the vehicle and occupants, and also invalidate the terms and conditions of the vehicle's warranty.

Jaguar Land Rover Limited will not accept any liability for death, personal injury, or damage to property, which may occur as a direct result of fitment of non-approved accessories or the carrying out of non-approved conversions to the vehicle.

All replacement parts for the Air Conditioning (A/C) system should be new and equivalent to the manufacturer's original equipment, while complying with the SAE Standards. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016



The symbol may be used on an under-bonnet label and is relevant to the Air Conditioning (A/C) refrigerant fluid. The symbol identifies extremely flammable chemicals that have an extremely low flash point and boiling point, and gases that catch fire when in contact with air.

ROAD TESTING DYNAMOMETERS (ROLLING ROADS)

Any dynamometer testing should only be carried out by a qualified person, familiar with the dynamometer testing and safety procedures practised by retailers/ authorised repairers.

SAFETY IN THE GARAGE

If the vehicle has been driven recently, do not touch the engine, exhaust, and cooling system components until the engine has cooled.

Never leave the engine running in an unventilated area. Exhaust gases are poisonous and extremely dangerous.

Do not work beneath the vehicle with the wheel changing jack as the only means of support.

The jack is designed for wheel changing only. Never work beneath the vehicle with the jack as the only means of support. Always use correctly rated vehicle support stands, before putting any part of the body beneath the vehicle.

Keep hands and clothing away from drive belts, pulleys, and fans. Some fans may continue to operate, or start operating, after the engine has stopped.

Remove metal wristbands and jewellery before working in the engine compartment.

Do not touch electrical leads or components while the engine is running, or the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

Do not allow tools or metal parts of the vehicle to make contact with the battery leads or terminals.

POISONOUS FLUIDS

Fluids used in motor vehicles are poisonous and should not be consumed or brought into contact with open wounds.

For safety, always read and obey all instructions printed on labels and containers.

USED ENGINE OIL

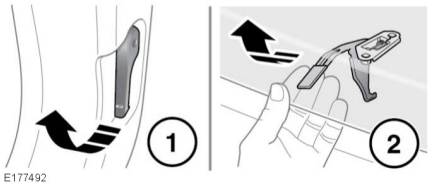
Prolonged contact with engine oil may cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer of the skin. Always wash thoroughly after contact.



Pollution of drains, watercourses, or soil is illegal. Use authorised waste disposal sites to dispose of used oil and toxic chemicals.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

OPENING THE BONNET



1. Pull the bonnet release lever, located in the left side front footwell.
2. Lift the bonnet safety catch, located below the centre point of the bonnet, then raise the bonnet.

CLOSING THE BONNET

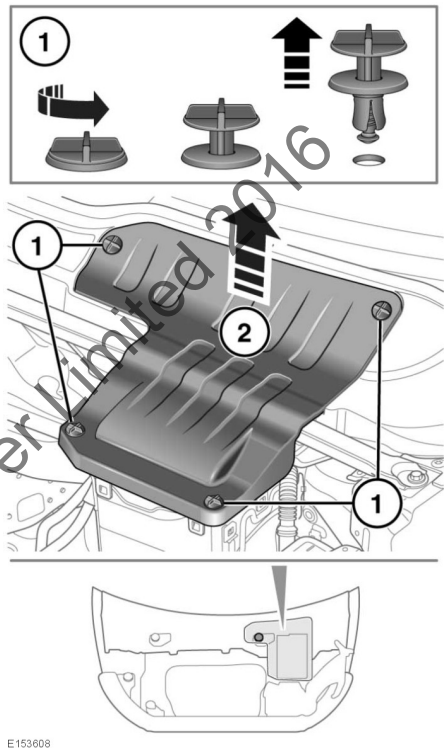
Do not drive with the bonnet secured by the safety catch alone.

To close the bonnet:

1. Lower the bonnet until the safety catch engages.
2. Using both hands, press the bonnet down until the catches click.
3. Try to lift the front edge of the bonnet to check that both catches are engaged.

UNDER-BONNET COVERS - REMOVAL

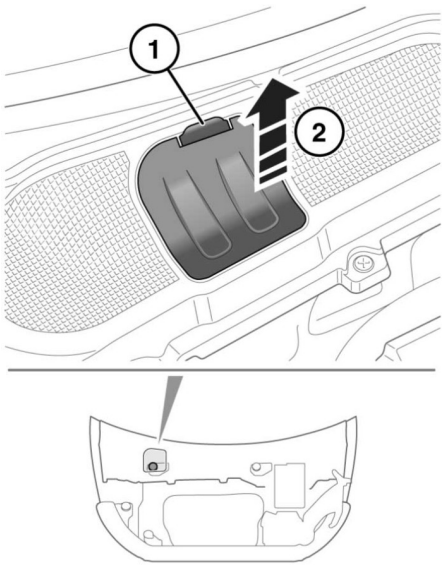
Left-side under bonnet cover



1. Unscrew the turnbuckles clips counter-clockwise and remove.
2. Lift the front edge of the cover and slide forward to remove.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Right-side under bonnet cover



E153609

1. Pull the cover securing catch towards the front of the vehicle to release.
2. While still holding the cover securing catch, lift up the edge of the cover to remove.

UNDER-BONNET COVERS - REFITTING

Left-side under-bonnet cover

Before refitting the under-bonnet cover, make sure no pipes, cables or other items, have been trapped between the cover and the casing.

1. Place the under-bonnet cover over the casing. Make sure that all of the holes are aligned.
2. Push the cover down firmly. Screw the turnbuckle clips clockwise to tighten.

Right-side under-bonnet cover

1. Place the two locating lugs at the rear edge of the cover into the surrounding panel.
2. Press the cover down to engage the cover securing catch.

FUEL SYSTEM

Under no circumstances should any part of the fuel system be dismantled or replaced by anyone other than a suitably qualified vehicle technician.

Make sure sparks and open flames are kept away from the engine compartment.

Wear protective clothing, including, where possible, gloves made from an impervious material.

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

Exhaust fumes contain poisonous substances which can cause unconsciousness and may even be fatal.

Land Rover vehicles are fitted with emission and evaporative control systems. In many countries, it is unlawful to tamper, modify, or replace such equipment and legal penalties apply if the laws are flouted.

Retailers/authorised repairers are properly equipped to perform repairs and to maintain these systems.

- Do not inhale exhaust gases.
- Do not start or leave the engine running in an enclosed, unventilated area.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

- Do not drive the vehicle with the tailgate open.
- Do not modify the exhaust system.
- Exhaust leaks should be repaired immediately.
- If exhaust fumes are thought to be entering the vehicle, have it investigated immediately.

Note: *Running out of fuel can result in a misfire, and may cause damage to the emission control system.*

CHANGING A BULB

If the lighting has just been switched off, give the bulbs time to cool. Handling them when hot may cause personal injury.

Always replace bulbs with the correct type and specification. If in any doubt, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer for advice.

Before attempting to replace a bulb, make sure both the affected light and the vehicle's ignition are switched off. If the circuit remains live, a short circuit can occur which may damage the vehicle's electrical system.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Bulb specification

Not all bulbs are replaceable. The following bulbs can be replaced:

Light	Specification	Power (Watts)
Halogen headlight - dipped and high beam.	HB3	60
Halogen headlight - direction indicators.	PSY24WSV+	24
Xenon headlight - direction indicators.	PSY24WSV+	24
Reverse lights.	W16W	16
Rear fog lights.	PS19W	19

All other exterior lights and some interior lights are either LED or xenon and can only be replaced by a retailer/authorised repairer.

All replacement procedures require the removal of components to gain access to the bulbs.

Moving a headlight unit should be undertaken only by a qualified technician. If in doubt, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

Note: *To change any bulb in a headlight unit, a cross head screwdriver and a 10 mm spanner is required.*

XENON LIGHTS

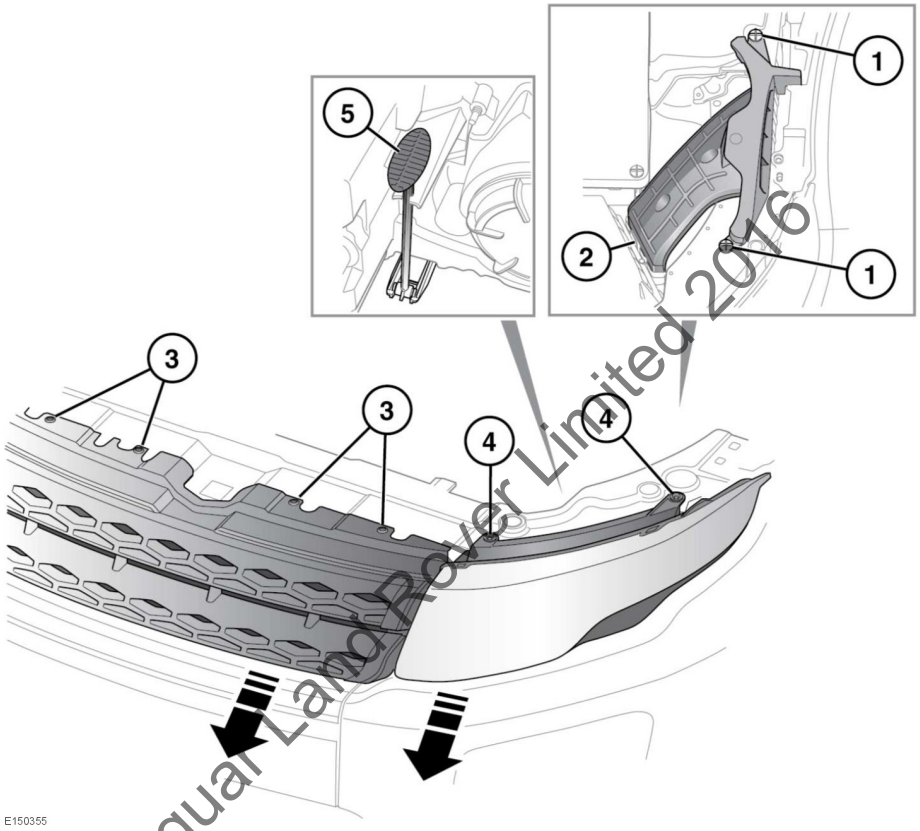
High voltage is required to ignite the gas and metal vapour which are used to power xenon lights. Contact with this voltage can cause serious injury. Replacement or maintenance of xenon lights should only be carried out by suitably qualified personnel.

Xenon light units operate at a very high temperature. Make sure the light units have cooled before attempting to touch them.

Seek advice about the correct disposal of xenon light units from a retailer/authorised repairer or the local authority.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

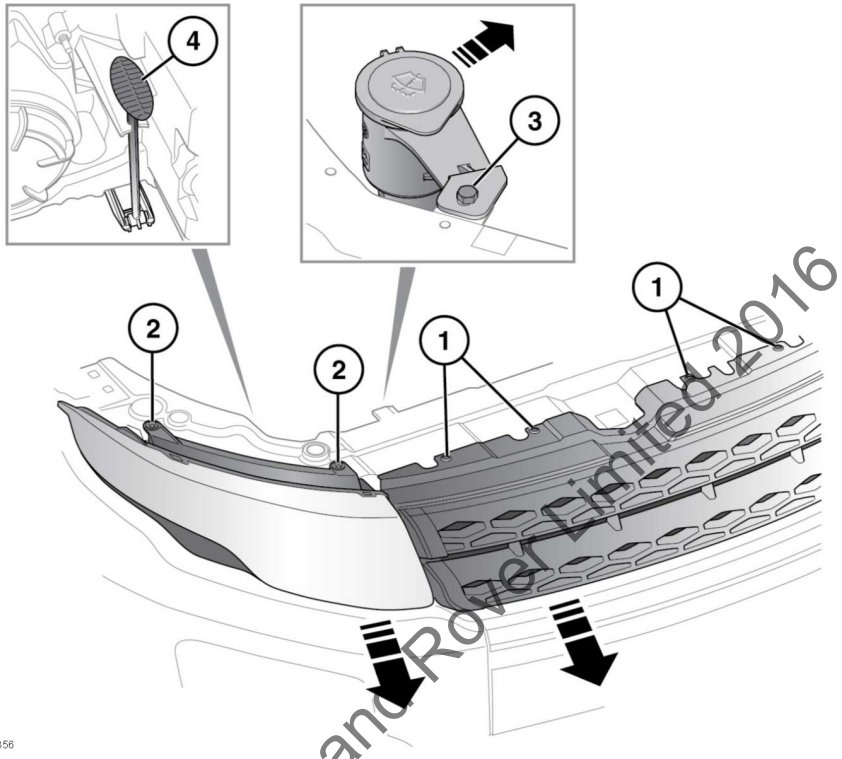
HEADLIGHT REMOVAL



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Moving the left headlight unit to access the bulbs:

1. Remove the two plastic fixings.
2. Pull the tube up to release it from the air box. This will allow more room for manoeuvrability.
3. Remove the four grille fixings.
4. Remove the two retaining bolts.
5. At the rear of the headlight unit, pull up on the T grip release mechanism and hold while sliding the headlight unit forward 40 mm.



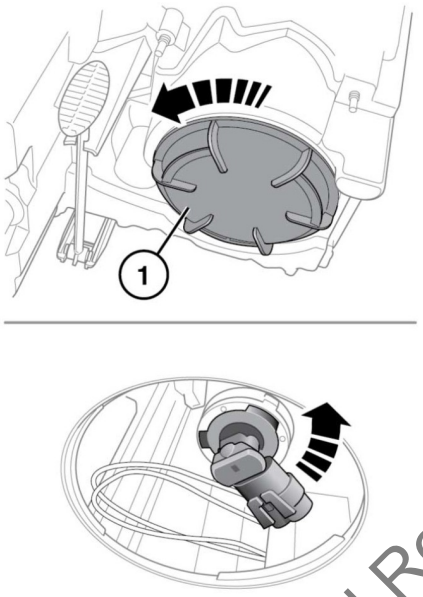
E150356

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Moving the right headlight unit to access the bulbs:

1. Remove the four grille fixings.
2. Remove the two retaining bolts.
3. Remove the fixing and then move the filler tube rearwards. This will allow more room for access to the bulb holders.
4. At the rear of the headlight unit, pull up on the T grip release mechanism and hold while sliding the headlight unit forward 40 mm.

Halogen headlight bulb replacement



E166114

Removing a halogen headlight bulb:

1. At the back of the headlight unit, remove the cover. Turn it counter-clockwise to release.
2. The back of the bulb unit will now be exposed. Release the clip and pull down on the electrical connector to release it from the bulb unit.
3. Turn the bulb unit counter-clockwise and remove it from the headlight unit.

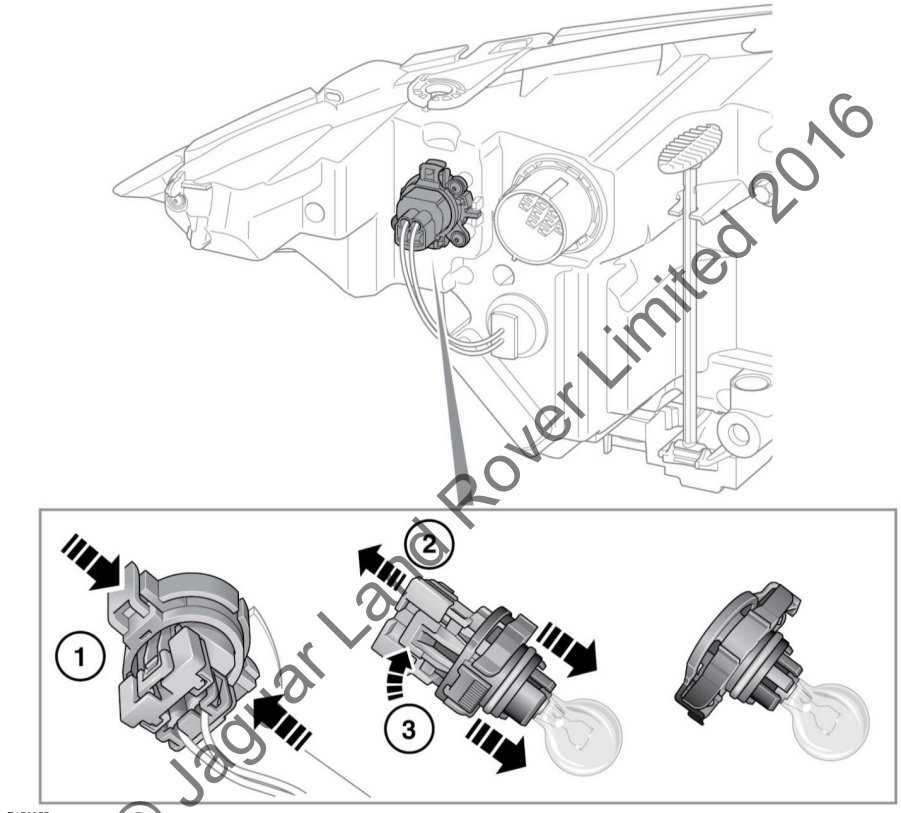
Note: *Note the orientation of the bulb unit to aid refitting.*

Reverse the removal procedure to install a new bulb.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

DIRECTION INDICATOR BULB REPLACEMENT

See **279, CHANGING A BULB**.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

To gain more room for accessibility, follow the steps for removing the appropriate headlight unit.

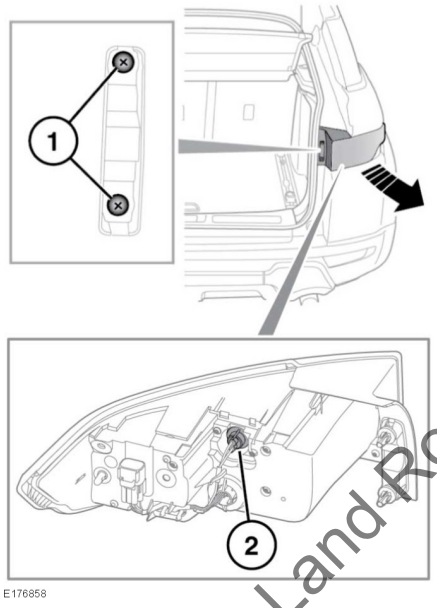
Replacing a direction indicator bulb:

1. To remove the bulb holder, press in the outer wings on the black plastic unit and pull the holder free of the housing.
2. To separate the bulb holder from the electrical connector, first push up the connector lock.
3. Push in the release mechanism while pulling the connector and bulb holder apart.

   Note: *Note the orientation of the bulb unit to aid refitting.*

Reverse the removal procedure to install a new bulb.

REAR LIGHT BULB REPLACEMENT



E176858

1. Remove the two fixings.
2. Reversing light:
   Turn the bulb holder counter-clockwise and pull to remove it from the light unit. Grip the holder then press the bulb into the holder and turn counter-clockwise to release the bulb. Pull the bulb up to remove.

   Note: *Note the orientation of the bulb unit to aid refitting.*

Reverse the removal procedure to install a new bulb.

REAR FOG LIGHT BULB REPLACEMENT

Always find a safe place to stop, off the roadway and away from traffic.

Apply the parking brake. Engage Park (P) on automatic vehicles, select first or reverse gear on manual vehicles.

Switch on the hazard warning lights.

Place a warning triangle at a suitable distance behind the vehicle, facing towards oncoming traffic.

Disconnect any attached trailer or caravan from vehicle.

Make sure all passengers, and animals, are out of the vehicle and in a safe place away from the roadway.

If the vehicle has been driven recently, do not touch exhaust system components until they have cooled.

Access to a rear fog light housing is from beneath and behind the rear bumper. The bulb holder is a black plastic unit that incorporates the bulb. No tools are required but a torch may be of use.

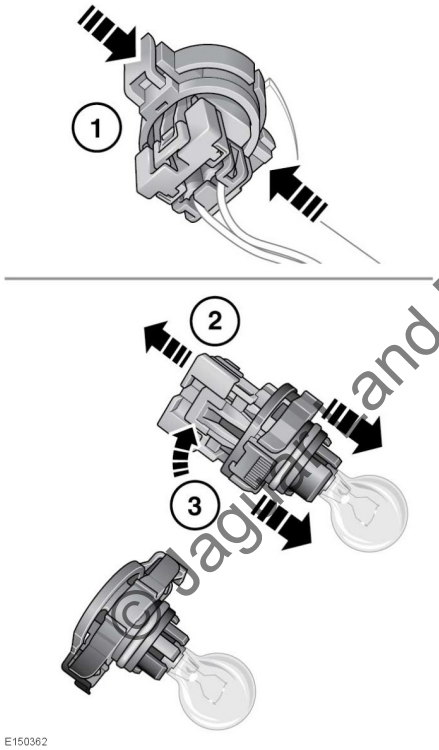
1. To remove the bulb holder, press in the outer wings on the black plastic unit and pull the holder free of the housing.
2. To separate the bulb holder from the electrical connector, first push up the connector lock.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

3. Push in the release mechanism while pulling the connector and bulb holder apart.

Note: *Inside the bulb holder are three locating lugs. When fitting the new bulb unit, the lugs must mate up to the connector correctly.*

Refitting is a reverse of the removal process. Make sure the connector lock is pressed down and that the bulb unit locates securely into the fog light housing.



E150362

WIPERS SERVICE POSITION

To avoid damage to the bonnet, do not lift the wiper blades when they are in the normal parked position.

Note: *The smart key must remain in the vehicle while the wiper blades are being replaced.*

Before changing a wiper blade, the wiper arms must be set in the service position as follows:

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off.
2. Switch the ignition on and then off again.
3. Immediately press the wash/wipe control to its lowest position, as if to command a single wipe. Hold this position while switching on the ignition again.
   The wipers move to the service position. See **79, WIPER OPERATION**.
4. When the new parts have been fitted, switch the ignition off. The wipers return to the park position.

Note: *Fit only replacement wiper blades that are identical to the original specification.*

Note: *Replace the wiper blades in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.*

PANORAMIC ROOF BLIND RESET

The blind needs to be reset if the battery is disconnected, becomes discharged, or power supply is interrupted.

1. Start the engine.

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

2. With the roof panel blind in the closed position, press and hold the close switch for approximately 30 seconds until an audible double click is heard.
3. Release the switch. Within 3 seconds, press and hold the close switch again until the blind completes a full open and close cycle.
4. Once the blind has stopped moving release the switch. The blind can now be operated as normal.

WINDOW RESET

The windows need to be reset if the battery is disconnected, becomes discharged, or the power supply is interrupted.

Reset as follows:

1. Close the window fully.
2. Release the switch. Lift the switch to the close position and hold for 1 second.
3. Repeat the procedure on each window.

FIRE EXTINGUISHER

For certain markets, fire extinguishers are fitted to comply with local legislation. Please note, it is the owner's responsibility to make sure the fire extinguisher is maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

The owner is also responsible for making sure that the pressure is at a suitable operating pressure, as indicated on the pressure gauge. Only use fire extinguishers approved by the vehicle manufacturer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Vehicle cleaning

THE EXTERIOR

- To prevent damage to the vehicle when using a valeting service, make sure to advise them of the cleaning instructions contained within the Owner's Handbook.
- Following cleaning of the vehicle's exterior (particularly with a pressure washer), it is recommended that the vehicle is taken for a short drive to dry out the brakes.
- Remove any heavy deposits of mud and dirt with a hose before washing the vehicle.
- Some high pressure cleaning systems are sufficiently powerful to damage the wheels and brake system. Never aim a water jet directly at the wheels or brakes.
- Some high pressure cleaning systems are sufficiently powerful enough to penetrate suspension joints and door/window seals, and damage trim and door locks. Never aim the water jet directly at any camera, the engine air intake, heater air intakes, body seals (doors, sunroof, windows, etc.) or at any components which may be damaged (lights, mirrors, exterior trim, suspension seals and gaiters, etc.). Make sure that the pressure washer nozzle is always at a distance of more than 300 mm from any component of the vehicle.
- Do not use a high pressure washer or steam cleaner in the engine compartment.
- Substances which are corrosive, such as bird droppings and tree resin, can damage the vehicle's paintwork and should be removed as soon as possible.
- Use only cleaning products approved for use on vehicles.
- Camera lenses must be treated with care. Clean with a low pressure hose and wipe with a damp cloth.

Stubborn stains, such as tar spots and grease on the paintwork, may require the use of white spirit. After use, make sure the area is washed immediately with warm, soapy water to remove all traces of the spirit.

Note: *Do not apply polish to any unpainted areas of the bumper mouldings, it will become ingrained in the textured finish.*

Convertible roof:

- To prevent damage to the convertible roof system, commercially operated automatic car washes, jet washes, and power-operated mops, are not recommended.

Do not leave the convertible roof in the open (folded) position for longer than is necessary, as in certain circumstances, permanent soiling along the folds may occur.

Cleaning: Every 1 600 km, vacuum clean and wash the convertible roof. A retailer/ authorised repairer will be able to recommend suitable products.

Reproofing: Every 8 000 km, reproof the convertible roof material. A retailer/ authorised repairer will be able to recommend suitable products.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

SENSORS AND CAMERAS

When washing the vehicle, do not aim high pressure water jets directly at any of the sensors and cameras. Do not use abrasive materials, or hard or sharp objects, to clean the sensors and cameras. Only use approved vehicle shampoo.

Park assist and parking aid sensors should be kept clean to maintain accuracy and performance.

If required, the cameras should be cleaned using a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass-cleaning product.

UNDER BODY MAINTENANCE

Regularly flush the underbody with plain, clean water, and pay particular attention to areas where mud and debris collect.

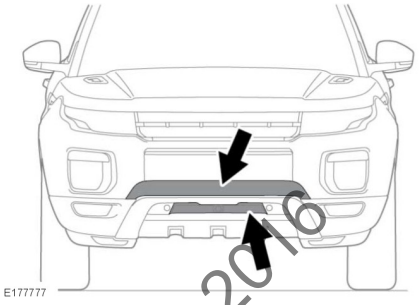
If damage or corrosion are detected, have the vehicle checked by a retailer/ authorised repairer as soon as possible.

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

Do not use a high pressure washer or steam cleaner in the engine compartment.

Make sure that the brake fluid reservoir is kept dry at all times. Only use a clean, dry cloth to clean the brake fluid cap and reservoir.

AFTER OFF-ROAD DRIVING



Make sure the areas around air intakes and the front grille are clean and clear of debris. Pay particular attention to the lower grille and radiator. Failure to do so may cause the engine to overheat, leading to severe engine damage.

Make sure the vehicle underside is cleaned as soon as possible after driving off-road.

ALLOY WHEELS

Only use approved wheel cleaning products.

GLASS SURFACES

Clean the rear screen with a soft cloth to avoid damaging the heating element. Do not scrape the glass or use any abrasive cleaning fluid.

Mirror glass is particularly susceptible to damage. Wash with soapy water. Do not use abrasive cleaning compounds or metal scrapers to remove ice.

To avoid damaging the protective coating, only clean the interior side of the sunroof glass with a soft cloth. Do not scrape the glass or use abrasive cleaning fluids.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Vehicle cleaning

REAR SCREEN

To avoid damaging the heating elements when cleaning the inside of the rear screen, use only a soft, damp cloth or chamois leather. Do not use solvents or sharp objects to clean the glass.

THE INTERIOR

Some cleaning products contain substances that are harmful and can cause health problems if used incorrectly, and may cause damage to the vehicle's interior. Make sure to read the manufacturer's instructions carefully.

To prevent damage to the vehicle when using a valeting service, make sure to advise them of the cleaning instructions contained within the Owner's Handbook.

CLEANING SWITCHES AND CONTROLS

Use a soft, dry, lint-free cloth when cleaning switches or controls. Do not apply excessive pressure when doing so.

Do not spray liquids directly onto the surface of switches and controls.

Do not use chemical agents, solvents, or domestic cleaning products.

When cleaning, do not allow sharp or abrasive objects to make contact with the components.

FABRIC UPHOLSTERY

Never use soap, ammonia, bleach, or other cleaners intended for use on hard surfaces.

Do not use printed absorbent cloths or paper as they may transfer colour to the fabric.

LEATHER UPHOLSTERY

Only use cleaning products specifically designed for use on leather. Do not use chemical, alcohol, or abrasive materials, as they will cause rapid deterioration of the leather. The use of non-approved products will invalidate the warranty.

If in any doubt as to which products to use, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

Leather should be cleaned and protected at least every 6 months.

To prevent ingrained dirt and staining, inspect the seat upholstery regularly. Clean every 1 to 2 months as follows:

1. Wipe off fine dust from the seat surfaces using a clean, damp, non-coloured cloth. Avoid over wetting the leather.
2. If this is not sufficient, use a cloth which has been dampened with warm, soapy water and then wrung out. Use only mild non-caustic soap.
3. Use Land Rover leather cleaner for heavily soiled areas. Dry off and rub with a clean, soft cloth. Change surfaces regularly.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Use Land Rover leather cleaner several times a year to maintain the leather's suppleness and appearance. The cleaner nourishes and moisturises, and helps to improve the surface's protective film against dust and substances.

- Dark clothing may stain leather seats, just like other upholstery products.
- Sharp objects, such as belts, zippers, rivets, etc., can leave permanent scratches and scratch marks on the leather surface.
- Unless spillages, such as tea, coffee, or ink, are washed away immediately, permanent staining may have to be accepted.

If a valet service is used, make sure the specialist concerned is aware of, and follows, these instructions precisely.

Note: *Some materials and fabrics are prone to dye transfer, which can cause unsightly discolouration of lighter coloured leathers. Affected areas should be cleaned and re-protected as soon as possible.*

SEAT BELTS

Do not allow any water, cleaning products, or fabric from cloths to enter the seat belt mechanism. Any substance which enters the mechanism may affect the performance of the seat belt in an impact.

Extend the seat belts fully, then use warm water and a non-detergent soap to clean. Allow the seat belts to dry naturally while fully extended. Do not allow the belts to retract until fully dry.

Note: *While cleaning the seat belt, take the opportunity to examine the webbing for damage and wear. Any wear or damage should be reported to, and rectified by, a retailer/authorised repairer.*

AIRBAG MODULE COVERS

Airbag covers should only be cleaned using a slightly dampened cloth and a small amount of upholstery cleaner.

Any substance which enters the mechanism can prevent correct deployment of an airbag during an impact.

CARPET AND MATS

Correctly secure the floor mats before driving. Never place mats on top of each other. Unsecured or incorrectly positioned mats can obstruct the brake and/or accelerator pedal.

Marks or stains can be removed by gentle scrubbing with a weak solution of soap and warm water.

For more stubborn stains, a commercially available carpet cleaner should be used.

CLEANING SCREENS AND DISPLAYS

Do not use upholstery cleaner on electrical equipment such as fascia switches.

When cleaning around electrical equipment, such as switches, make sure fluids do not leak into any gaps around the components or between panels or trim.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

- Clean with the cloth provided with the vehicle.
- Do not use chemical agents or domestic cleaners.
- Do not allow sharp, hard or abrasive objects to make contact with screens.
- Avoid exposing screens to direct sunlight for long periods.
- To prevent errors occurring, make sure only one finger at a time is in contact with the touch screen.
- Do not use excessive pressure.

WIPER BLADES

Do not use excessive pressure.

Heavy contamination on the wiper blades should be removed, using a soft, damp sponge or cloth.

BLOCKED WASHER JETS

Do not operate the washer jets during unblocking or adjustment. Windscreen washer fluid may cause irritation to the eyes and skin. Always read and observe the washer fluid manufacturer's instructions.

If a washer jet becomes blocked, use a thin strand of wire to unblock it, by inserting the wire into the jet. Make sure the wire is completely removed after unblocking.

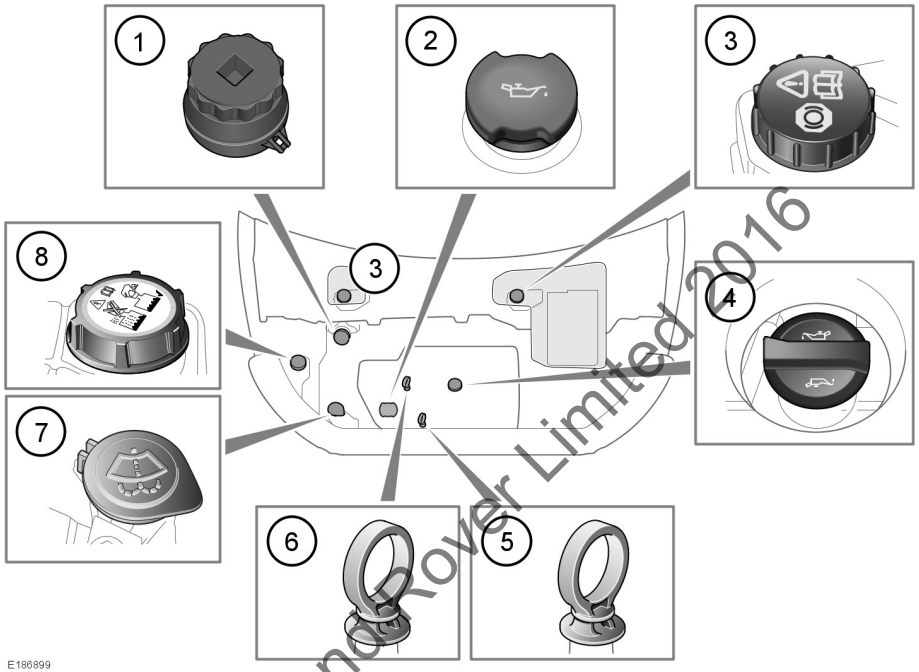
REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Regularly inspect the paintwork for damage. Any stone chips, fractures, or deep scratches in the paint or bodywork should be repaired promptly. Bare metal corrodes quickly, and, if left untreated, can result in expensive repairs.

Note: *Any repairs should be carried out by suitably qualified personnel.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

While working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety precautions. See 276, SAFETY IN THE GARAGE.

Do not start the engine, or drive the vehicle, if there is a possibility that any leaked fluid will come into contact with a hot surface, such as the exhaust. Seek qualified assistance immediately.

A number of simple checks and routine maintenance must be carried out at regular intervals. See **274, OWNER MAINTENANCE**.

1. Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) reservoir filler cap. See **264, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF)**.
2. Engine oil filler cap (2.0L diesel engine).
3. Brake fluid reservoir cap. Remove the driver's side under bonnet cover for access. See **277, UNDER-BONNET COVERS - REMOVAL**.
4. Engine oil filler cap (2.0L petrol engine).
5. Oil level dipstick (2.0L diesel engine).
6. Oil level dipstick (2.0L petrol engine).
7. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap.
8. Engine coolant reservoir filler cap.

Fluid level checks

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

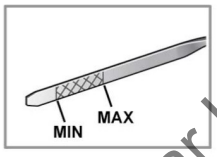
Check the engine oil weekly. If any significant or sudden drop in the oil level is noted, seek qualified assistance.

Never allow the oil level to fall below the lower mark or notch on the dipstick.

If the message **ENGINE OIL PRESSURE LOW** is displayed in the message centre, stop the engine as soon as it is safe to do so and seek qualified assistance. Do not start the engine until the cause has been rectified.

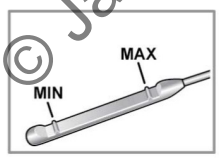
The engine oil should be checked frequently and topped up, as required, using the correct grade for the engine.

2.0L petrol



E181181

2.0L diesel



E181179

The dipstick on 2.0L diesel engines features a lug to aid correct fitment. Make sure the lug is correctly aligned with the groove in the dipstick tube. Failure to do this could result in the dipstick not fitting correctly and oil escaping from the engine.

All vehicles

Before checking the engine oil level, make sure that:

- The vehicle is stationary and the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The vehicle is on level ground.
- The engine oil is cold.

  Note: *If it is necessary to check the oil level when the engine is hot, switch off the engine and let the vehicle stand for 5 minutes. This will allow the oil to drain back into the sump. Do not start the engine.*

The oil level can then be checked as follows:

1. Withdraw the dipstick and wipe the blade clean with a lint-free cloth.
2. Fully reinsert the dipstick and withdraw again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is nearer to the upper mark or notch on the dipstick, do not add any oil.

If the oil level is below half-way, add 0.5 L of oil. Recheck the level and add more oil, if necessary.

If the oil level is below the lower mark, add the following quantities of oil:

- 2.0L petrol: Add 0.8 L of oil.
- 2.0L diesel: Add 1.8 L of oil.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Once the oil has reached the correct level on the dipstick, wait 5 minutes and recheck.

TOPPING UP THE OIL

The vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by using oil that does not meet the required specification.

Failure to use an oil that meets the required specification could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increase pollution. It could also lead to engine failure. See **346, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

Overfilling with oil could result in severe engine damage. Oil should be added in small quantities and the oil level needs to be rechecked to make sure the engine is not overfilled.

To top up the engine oil:

1. Remove the oil filler cap.
2. Add oil to maintain the level between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks or notches on the dipstick.

   It is essential to use the correct specification oil. Make sure the oil is suitable for the climatic conditions in which the vehicle is to be operated.

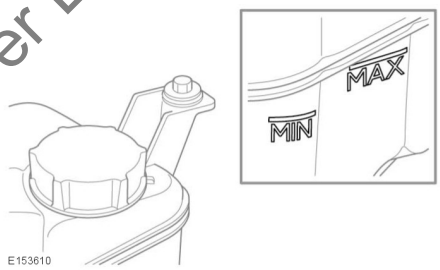
   Note: *The 2.0L petrol engine requires approximately 0.8 L of engine oil to raise the level from **MIN** to **MAX**. The 2.0L diesel engine requires approximately 1.8 L.*
3. Clean up any oil spilled during topping up.
4. Check the oil level again after 5 minutes.
5. Refit the oil filler cap.

CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL

Running the engine without coolant will cause serious engine damage.

If persistent coolant loss is noticed, seek qualified assistance immediately.

The coolant reservoir level should be checked at least weekly. It should be checked more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions. Always check the level when the system is cold.



Make sure the coolant level remains between the **MIN** and **MAX** indicator marks on the side of the expansion tank.

If the coolant level drops suddenly, or drops by a large amount, the vehicle must be examined by a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.

TOPPING UP THE COOLANT

Never remove the coolant reservoir filler cap when the engine is hot. Escaping steam or scalding water could cause serious personal injury.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Fluid level checks

Unscrew the filler cap slowly, allowing the pressure to escape before removing completely.

Antifreeze is highly inflammable. Do not allow antifreeze to come into contact with open flames or other sources of ignition (e.g., a hot engine). A fire may result.

Antifreeze is poisonous and can be fatal if swallowed. Keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If consumption is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.

If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water.

When travelling in places where the water supply contains salt, always make sure to carry a supply of fresh (rain or distilled) water. Topping up with salt water will cause serious engine damage.

The use of non-approved antifreeze will have an adverse effect on the engine's cooling system and, therefore, engine durability.

Antifreeze will damage painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately, and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

Antifreeze contains important corrosion inhibitors. The antifreeze content of the coolant must be maintained at 50% ± 5% all year round, not just in cold conditions. To make sure the anti-corrosion properties of the coolant are maintained, the antifreeze content should be checked once a year. The antifreeze should be completely replaced every 10 years, regardless of the distance travelled. Failure to do so may cause corrosion of the radiator and engine components. The specific gravity of a 50% antifreeze solution at 20°C is 1.068 and protects against frost down to -40°C.

To top up the coolant:

1. Rotate the coolant reservoir filler cap counter-clockwise and remove.
2. Top up to the **MAX** indicator mark on the side of the coolant reservoir. Use a mixture of 50% water and 50% antifreeze. See **346, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

   Note: *In an emergency, and only if the approved antifreeze is unavailable, top up the cooling system with clean water. Be aware of the resultant reduction in frost protection. Do not top up or refill with conventional antifreeze formulations. If in doubt, consult a qualified technician.*
3. To refit the coolant reservoir filler cap, rotate the filler cap clockwise, until the cap's ratchet clicks at least three times.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

CHECKING THE BRAKE AND CLUTCH FLUID LEVEL

Seek qualified assistance immediately if brake pedal travel is unusually long, or if there is any significant loss of brake fluid. Driving under such conditions could result in extended stopping distances or complete brake failure.

Brake fluid is highly toxic. Keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption of fluid is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.

If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of clean water.

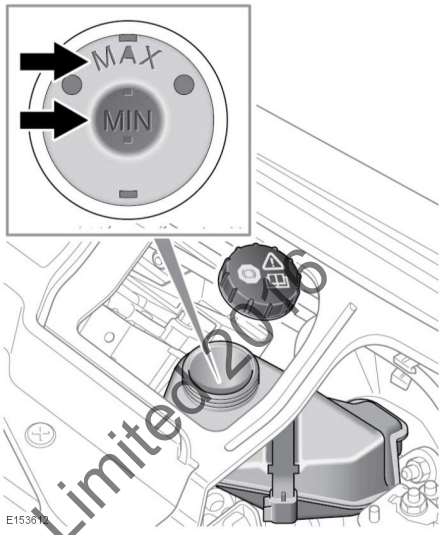
Brake fluid is highly inflammable. Do not allow brake fluid to come into contact with open flames or other sources of ignition (e.g., a hot engine).

Do not drive the vehicle with the fluid level below the MIN mark.

If the quantity of fluid in the brake reservoir drops below the recommended level, a red warning lamp in the instrument panel illuminates. See **65, BRAKE (RED)**.

Note: *If the warning lamp illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, gently apply the brakes to stop the vehicle, as soon as safety permits. Check and top up the fluid level, if necessary.*

With the vehicle on level ground, check the fluid level at least every week. Check more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions.



To check the brake and clutch fluid level:

1. Remove the relevant under-bonnet cover. See **293, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS** and **277, UNDER-BONNET COVERS - REMOVAL**.
2. Clean the brake fluid reservoir and the filler cap before removing, to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
3. Rotate the reservoir filler cap counter-clockwise and remove.
4. Check the brake fluid reservoir level. The level should be between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

   Note: *The fluid level may drop slightly during normal use, as a result of brake pad wear. The fluid level should not be allowed to drop below the **MIN** mark.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Fluid level checks

TOPPING UP THE BRAKE AND CLUTCH FLUID

Always use brake fluid which has the correct specification. See **346, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

Brake fluid damages painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately, and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

Only use new fluid from an airtight container. Fluid from open containers, or fluid previously bled from the system, will have absorbed moisture. Contaminated fluid will adversely affect performance, and must not be used.

Do not top up the brake fluid to the maximum mark unless the brake pads have been replaced. If unsure, seek qualified assistance.

To top up the brake and clutch fluid:

1. Rotate the reservoir filler cap counter-clockwise and remove.
2. Top up the reservoir to at least the minimum mark.
3. To refit the reservoir filler cap, rotate the cap clockwise.
4. Refit the under-bonnet cover. See **278, UNDER-BONNET COVERS - REFITTING**.

CHECKING THE WASHER FLUID LEVEL

Some windscreen washer products are inflammable, particularly if high or undiluted concentrations are exposed to sparking. Do not allow windscreen washer fluid to come into contact with exposed flames or sources of ignition, as this can cause a fire or explosion.

If the vehicle is operated in temperatures below 4°C, use a windscreen washer fluid with antifreeze protection. In cold weather, failure to use a windscreen washer fluid with frost protection, could result in impaired vision and increase the risk of a vehicle crash.

Do not use an antifreeze or a vinegar and water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze damages painted surfaces, while vinegar can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Body panels may suffer discolouration as a result of windscreen washer fluid spillage. Take care to avoid spillage, particularly if an undiluted or high concentration is being used. If spillage occurs, wash the affected area immediately with water.

Only use approved windscreen washer fluid.

The washer fluid reservoir supplies the front and rear screen washer jets, and the headlight washer jets.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Check and top up the reservoir level at least every week. Always top up with screen washer fluid to prevent freezing.

Operate the washer controls periodically to check that the nozzles are clear and properly directed.

TOPPING UP THE WASHER FLUID

Note: *National or local regulations may restrict the use of Volatile Organic Compounds (VOCs) which are commonly used as antifreeze agents in windscreen washer fluid. A windscreen washer fluid with limited VOC content should be used only if it provides adequate freeze resistance for all climates in which the vehicle is operated.*

Top up the windscreen washer fluid as follows:

1. Clean the washer fluid reservoir filler cap before removing, to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
2. Remove the filler cap.
3. Top up the reservoir until the fluid is visible in the filler neck.
4. Replace the filler cap.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Vehicle battery

BATTERY WARNING SYMBOLS



Do not allow open flames or other sources of ignition near the battery, as the battery may emit explosive gases.



Make sure, when working near or handling the battery, suitable eye protection is worn, to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



To prevent risk of injury, do not allow children near the battery.



Be aware that the battery may emit explosive gases.



The battery contains acid which is extremely corrosive and toxic.



Consult the Owner's Handbook for information, before handling the battery.

BATTERY CARE

If battery electrolyte comes into contact with eyes, skin, or clothes, remove the affected clothing. Flush the skin and eyes with large amounts of clean water. Seek medical assistance immediately.

If swallowed, battery electrolyte can be fatal. Seek medical assistance immediately.

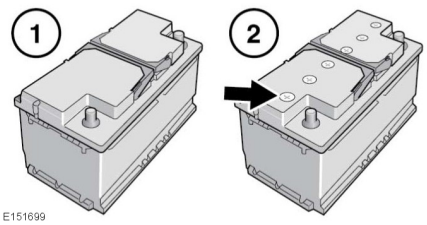
The cell plugs and vent pipe must be in place at all times when the battery is connected to the vehicle. Make sure the vent pipe is clear of obstructions and not kinked. Failure to do so may cause a pressure build-up in the battery, resulting in an explosion.

Do not expose the battery to an open flame or spark as the battery produces explosive, flammable gas.

Never jump start (boost), charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so can result in an explosion.

Remove all metal jewellery before working on, or near, the battery. Never allow metal objects or vehicle components to come into contact with the battery terminals. Metal objects can cause sparks or short circuits, resulting in an explosion.

Do not allow the battery posts or terminals to come into contact with skin. The posts and terminals contain lead and lead compounds which are toxic. Always wash your hands thoroughly after handling the battery.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

This vehicle is fitted with either an Absorbed Glass Matt (AGM) (**1**) battery or a low maintenance (**2**) battery.

Note: *AGM batteries are sealed for life and require no maintenance.*

Do not attempt to open or remove the top from an AGM battery.

In hot climates, more frequent checks of the low maintenance battery electrolyte level and condition are required. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer to have the battery checked.

CONNECTING JUMP LEADS

Remove all metal jewellery before working on, or near, a battery or boost terminals. Never allow metal objects or vehicle components to come into contact with the battery or boost terminals. Metal objects can cause sparks or short circuits, resulting in an explosion.

Do not allow the battery posts or terminals to come into contact with skin. Battery posts and terminals contain lead and lead compounds which are toxic. Always wash the hands thoroughly after handling the battery.

Do not expose any battery to an open flame or spark, as the battery produces explosive, flammable gas.

Never jump start (boost), charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so can result in an explosion.

Rotating parts of the engine can cause serious injury. Take extreme care when working near rotating parts of the engine.

Before attempting to start the vehicle, make sure that the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied, or suitably chock the wheels. Make sure that Park (P) or neutral is selected.

Suitable eye protection must be worn when working in the area of a battery.

During normal use, batteries emit explosive gas sufficient to cause severe explosions and capable of causing serious injury. Keep sparks and open flames away from the battery.

Make sure there is no physical contact between the donor and disabled vehicles, other than the jump leads.

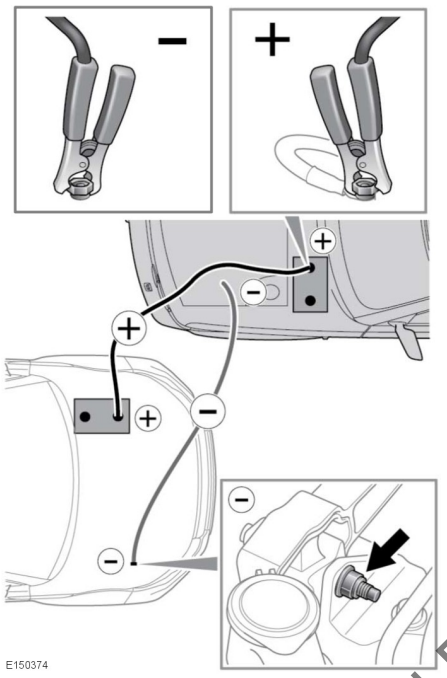
Make sure that any battery or starting aid is a 12 volt device.

Disconnect the jump leads before operating any electrical equipment.

Note: *Before connecting the jump leads to the disabled vehicle's boost point terminals, make sure the donor vehicle's boost point connections are correct. Also make sure that all electrical equipment has been switched off.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Vehicle battery



To connect the jump leads:

1. Connect the positive (red) jump lead to the recommended positive (+) boost terminal on the donor vehicle.

   Note: *Refer to the donor vehicle's Owner's Handbook for the recommended positive boost terminal.*

2. Connect the other end of the positive (red) jump lead to the positive (+) battery terminal on the disabled vehicle.
3. Connect the negative (black) jump lead to the recommended negative (-) boost terminal on the donor vehicle.

   Note: *Refer to the donor vehicle's Owner's Handbook for the recommended negative boost terminal.*

4. Connect the other end of the negative (black) jump lead to the earth point on the disabled vehicle, as illustrated.

   Note: *Check that all cables are clear of any moving components and that all four connections are secure.*

5. Start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to idle for a few minutes.
6. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

   Note: *Do not switch on any electrical circuits on the disabled vehicle until after the jump leads are removed.*

7. Allow both vehicles to idle for 2 minutes.
8. Switch off the donor vehicle.
9. Disconnect the negative (black) jump lead from the previously disabled vehicle.
10. Disconnect the negative (black) jump lead from the donor vehicle.
11. Disconnect the positive (red) jump lead from the previously disabled vehicle.
12. Disconnect the positive (red) jump lead from the donor vehicle.

CONNECTING A STARTING AID

To start the vehicle using a starting aid or a slave battery, carry out the following:

1. Connect the positive (red) jump lead to the positive (+) battery terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the negative (black) jump lead to the vehicle's earth point.
3. Switch on the starting aid.
4. Start the engine and allow it to idle.
5. Disconnect the negative (black) jump lead from the vehicle's earth point.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

6. Switch off the starting aid.
7. Disconnect the positive (red) jump lead from the battery terminal of the vehicle.

REMOVING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

Special tools are required to refit the battery after removal. Battery removal and refit should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.

CHARGING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

If the vehicle's battery should require charging, the battery must be removed from the vehicle. Consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.

REPLACING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

If the vehicle's battery should require replacing, the battery must be removed from the vehicle. Consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.



Used batteries must be disposed of correctly as they contain a number of harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from a retailer/ authorised repairer or the local authority.

EFFECTS OF DISCONNECTING

Disconnecting the battery can affect a number of vehicle systems, especially if there is insufficient battery power before disconnection. For example, the alarm may trigger, depending on its state, when the battery is disconnected. If the alarm does sound, use the smart key, in the normal way, to disarm the security system. The windows may need recalibrating to operate correctly.

BATTERY MONITORING SYSTEM

The Intelligent Power System Management (IPSM) continuously monitors the condition of the main vehicle battery. If excessive battery discharge occurs, the system begins to shut down non-essential electrical systems in order to protect the battery.

If the IPSM calculates that the battery's condition is not within the set parameters, there are two levels of action which can be taken. Both levels have an accompanying message on the touch screen, and in the case of the low battery warning, in the message centre.

- **Energy Management**: Is displayed on the touch screen if the engine is not running and system features are causing excessive battery discharge. After 3 minutes, the IPSM begins shutting down the vehicle's systems. Normal system operation resumes when the engine is started.
- **Low Battery - Please Start Engine**: Is displayed on the touch screen and in the message centre, if the engine is not running. After 3 minutes, the IPSM begins shutting down the vehicle's systems. Normal system operation resumes when the engine is started.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Vehicle battery

Only start the engine if it is safe to do so.

Note: *If the message* ***Low Battery - Please Start Engine*** *is displayed, drive the vehicle for at least 30 minutes in temperatures above 0°C, or at least 60 minutes if the temperatures are below 0°C. The drive allows the battery to recover to an acceptable level. If normal system operation is not resumed when the engine is switched back off, the battery may not have been sufficiently charged. If safe to do so, restart the engine. If problems still exist, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

FUSE BOX LOCATIONS



E186907

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Fuses

When a fuse box lid is removed, take care to protect the box from moisture. Refit the lid at the earliest opportunity.

Access can be gained to the fuses as follows:

1. Engine compartment fuse box: Remove the 2 plastic fixings securing the air box tube. Pull the air box tube up to release it from the air box. Unlatch the tabs securing the fuse box cover. The fuse numbers and positions are displayed on the fuse box.
2. Passenger compartment fuse box (upper): Open the glovebox. Remove the panel from the glovebox liner. A label on the panel shows the circuits protected and the fuse locations.
3. Passenger compartment fuse box (lower): Remove the lower access panel.
4. Loadspace (upper and lower) fuse boxes (5 door and Coupe vehicles only): Remove the panel from the left-side of the loadspace. A label on the panel shows the circuits protected and the fuse locations.
5. Loadspace (upper and lower) fuse boxes (Convertible vehicles only): Remove the panel from the left-side of the loadspace. A label on the panel shows the circuits protected and the fuse locations.
6. Loadspace (underfloor) fuse box (5 door and Coupe vehicles only): Lift the loadspace floor. Remove the spare wheel and tyre repair kit housing. The fuse numbers and positions are displayed on the fuse box.

CHANGING A FUSE

Always switch off the ignition system and the affected electrical circuit, before replacing a fuse.

Fit approved replacement fuses of the same rating and type, or fuses of a matching specification. Using an incorrect fuse, may result in damage to the vehicle's electrical system and can result in a fire.

If the replacement fuse blows after fitment, the system should be checked by your retailer/authorised repairer.

Note: *It is recommended that relays should only be replaced by qualified persons.*

The fuse removal tweezers are located in the passenger compartment fuse box. Press the tweezers onto the head of a fuse and pull to remove. A break in the wire inside the fuse indicates that the fuse has blown and must be replaced.

There are some spare replacement fuses in the passenger compartment fuse box. See the fuse box label for details.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

ENGINE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
1	30	Green.	Engine management system (diesel only).
	5	Tan.	Engine management system (petrol only).
2	5	Tan.	Electrical power management (diesel only). Engine management system (petrol only).
3*	80	-	Power steering.
4*	60	-	Glow plugs (diesel only).
5*	80	-	Engine cooling.
6	15	Blue.	Engine management system (petrol only).
	10	Red.	Engine management system (diesel only).
7	15	Blue.	Engine management system (diesel only).
8	15	Blue.	Engine management system (diesel only).
	20	Yellow.	Engine management system (petrol only).
9	10	Red.	Engine management system. Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) (diesel only).
10	-	-	-
11	10	Red.	Engine management system.
12	10	Red.	Engine management system (diesel only).
	15	Blue.	Engine management system (petrol only).
13	-	-	-
14	10	Red.	Engine management system (diesel only).
	15	Blue.	Engine cooling (petrol only).
15*	40	Orange.	Engine management system.
16*	100	-	Auxiliary heater.
17*	60	-	Passenger compartment fuse box.
18*	60	-	Passenger compartment fuse box.
19*	60	-	Loadspace fuse box.
20*	60	-	Loadspace fuse box.
21*	60	-	Electrical power management.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
22*	30	Green.	Front windscreen wipers.
23*	40	Orange.	Passenger compartment fuse box.
24*	40	Orange.	Starter motor (diesel automatic and petrol only).
25*	40	Orange.	Anti-lock Braking System (ABS).
26*	40	Orange.	ABS.
27*	40	Orange.	Passenger compartment fuse box.
28*	40	Orange.	Heater blower motor.
29*	30	Green.	Electric trailer brake (Australia only).
30	15	Blue.	Headlight washers.
31	15	Blue.	Horns.
32	10	Red.	Air Conditioning (A/C).
33	5	Tan.	Horn. Heated windscreen. Fuel pump.
34*	40	Orange.	Left-side heated windscreen.
35*	40	Orange.	Right-side heated windscreen.
36	5	Tan.	Engine management system. A/C.
37	25	Clear.	Fuel pump.
38	20	Yellow.	LED headlights.
39	20	Yellow.	LED headlights.
40	5	Tan.	Right-side headlight bend lighting.
41	5	Tan.	Left-side headlight bend lighting.
42	5	Tan.	Headlights. Dynamic headlight levelling.
43	-	-	-
44	10	Red.	Heated steering wheel.
45	5	Tan.	Steering wheel.

*It is recommended that these fuses should only be serviced by a retailer/ authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

PASSENGER COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
1	5	Tan.	Smart key receiver. Alarm sensor. Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).
2	-	-	-
3	10	Red.	Front fog lights.
4	-	-	-
5	5	Tan.	Anti-lock Braking System (ABS).
6	5	Tan.	Adaptive dynamics. Electric differential.
7	-	-	-
8	25	Clear.	Passenger door module.
9	-	-	-
10	5	Tan.	Heated washer jets.
11	10	Red.	Trailer reverse lights.
12	5	Tan.	Reverse lights.
13	-	-	-
14	5	Tan.	Brake pedal switch.
15	30	Green.	Heated rear screen.
16	5	Tan.	Power steering.
17	5	Tan.	Keyless entry.
18	5	Tan.	Engine cooling.
19	5	Tan.	Engine management system.
20	5	Tan.	Adaptive cruise control.
21	5	Tan.	Centre console switches. Outboard fascia switches.
22	5	Tan.	Automatic transmission.
23	-	-	-
24	-	-	-
25	-	-	-
26	-	-	-
27	10	Red.	Trailer fog lights.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
28	-	-	-
29	-	-	-
30	-	-	-
31	5	Tan.	Rain sensor. Lamp switch. Electrical power management. Humidity sensor.
32	25	Clear.	Driver door module.
33	-	-	-
34	10	Red.	Fuel flap.
35	-	-	-
36	5	Tan.	Battery back-up sounder.
37	20	Yellow.	Keyless entry.
38	15	Blue.	Windscreen washer.
39	25	Clear.	Left-side rear door module.
40	5	Tan.	Driver's door window switch.
41	5	Tan.	Gateway module.
42	30	Green.	Driver's seat.
43	15	Blue.	Rear screen washer.
44	25	Clear.	Right-side rear door module.
45	30	Green.	Front passenger seat.
46	-	-	-
47	20	Yellow.	Sunblind.
48	15	Blue.	Trailer connector power supply.
49	-	-	-
50	-	-	-
51	5	Tan.	Steering wheel switches.
52	20	Yellow.	Cigar lighter.
53	20	Yellow.	Cubby box accessory power socket.
54	-	-	-
55	20	Yellow.	Rear console accessory power socket.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
56	10	Red.	Supplementary Restraint system (SRS).
57	10	Red.	Interior lamps.
58	-	-	-
59	-	-	-
60	5	Tan.	Occupancy sensor. Airbag status indicator lamp.
61	5	Tan.	Engine starting.
62	-	-	-
63	20	Yellow.	Loadspace accessory power socket.
64	-	-	-
65	-	-	-
66	5	Tan.	Diagnostics.
67	15	Blue.	Trailer.
68	-	-	-
69	15	Blue.	Automatic transmission.

LOADSPACE FUSE BOX – CONVERTIBLE

Upper fuse box

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
FA1	5	Tan.	Dynamic Stability Control (DSC).
FA2	30	Green.	DSC.
FA3	-	-	-
FA4	15	Blue.	Convertible roof - lock.
FA5	-	-	-
FA6	15	Blue.	Convertible roof - front latch.
FA7	10	Red.	Telematics.
FA8	-	-	-
FA9	30	Green.	4 Wheel Drive (4WD) systems.
FA10	-	-	-

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
FA11	25	Clear.	Driver's heated/climate seat.
FA12	5	Tan.	Wade sensing.
FA13	25	Clear.	Front passenger heated/climate seat.
FA14	-	-	-
FA15	25	Clear.	Fuel system.
FA16	10	Red.	Blind spot monitor. Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA). Rear view camera
FA17	2	Grey.	Road toll reader.
FA18	5	Tan.	Interior mirror. AHBA. Rear view camera.
FA19	-	-	-
FA20	15	Blue.	Electric seats.
FA21	-	-	-
FA22	-	-	-
FA23	5	Tan.	Adaptive cruise control.
FA24	-	-	-
FA25	-	-	-
FA26	10	Red.	Gateway module.
FA27	10	Red.	Instrument panel.
FA28	10	Red.	Head-Up Display (HUD).
FA29	-	-	-
FA30	5	Tan.	Convertible roof - side window drop.

Lower fuse box

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
FB1	15	Blue.	Touch screen. Front integrated control panel.
FB2	10	Red.	Audio amplifier.
FB3	10	Red.	Entertainment systems.
FB4	10	Red.	Navigation. DAB radio. Audio video input and output panel.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
FB5	15	Blue.	Audio head unit.
FB6	15	Blue.	Audio video input and output panel.
FB7	-	-	-
FB8	-	-	-
FB9	-	-	-
FB10	-	-	-
FB11	-	-	-
FB12	-	-	-
FB13	-	-	-
FB14	-	-	-
FB15	15	Blue.	Heating and ventilation.
FB16	20	Yellow.	Auxiliary heater.

LOADSPACE FUSE BOX

Upper fuse box

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
FA1	30	Green.	4 Wheel Drive (4WD) systems.
FA2	15	Blue.	Rear wiper.
FA3	5	Tan.	4WD systems.
FA4	10	Red.	Telematics.
FA5	20	Yellow.	Driver's heated or climate seat.
FA6	20	Yellow.	Front passenger heated or climate seat.
FA7	5	Tan.	Wade sensing.
FA8	5	Tan.	Rear view mirror. Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA).
FA9	20	Yellow.	Left-side heated rear seat.
FA10	20	Yellow.	Right-side heated rear seat.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
FA11	40	Orange.	Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF). Fuel pump (Russian and Indian vehicles only).
FA12	25	Clear.	Powered tailgate.

Lower fuse box

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
FB1	-	-	-
FB2	5	Tan.	Adaptive cruise control.
FB3	10	Red.	Instrument panel.
FB4	5	Tan.	Gateway module.
FB5	30	Green.	Adaptive suspension.
FB6	25	Clear.	Fuel pump.
FB7	5	Tan.	Auxiliary heater.
FB8	15	Blue.	Driver's and passenger seat switches.
FB9	10	Red.	Head-Up Display (HUD).
FB10	10	Red.	Blind spot monitor.
FB11	40	Orange.	Audio amplifier.
FB12	20	Yellow.	Audio amplifier.

Underfloor fuse box

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
1	15	Blue.	Touch screen. Front integrated control panel.
2	10	Red.	Audio amplifier.
3	10	Red.	Gesture tailgate.
4	10	Red.	Navigation. Phone.
5	15	Blue.	Audio head unit.
6	15	Blue.	Audio video input and output panel.
7	-	-	-

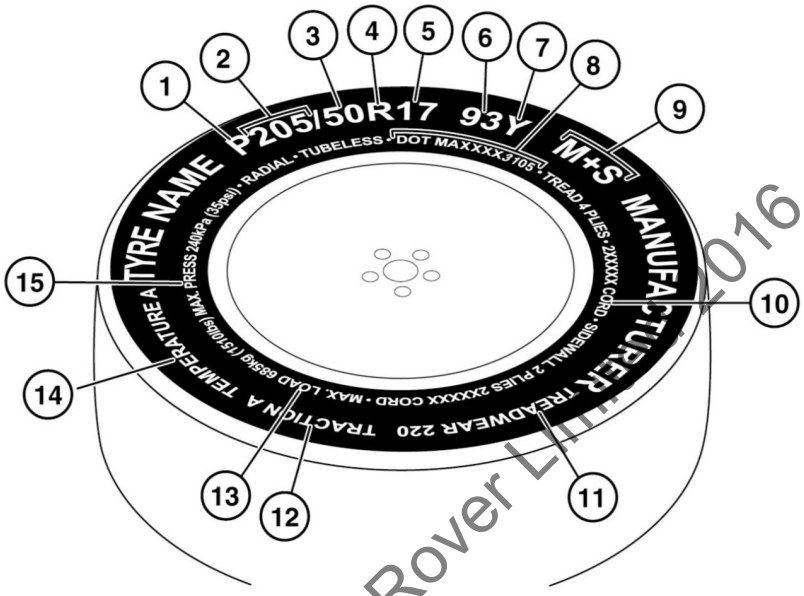
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
8	-	-	-
9	-	-	-
10	-	-	-
11	-	-	-
12	-	-	-
13	-	-	-
14	-	-	-
15	15	Blue.	Front and rear integrated control panels - heating and ventilation.
16	20	Yellow.	Auxiliary heater.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

TYRE MARKINGS



E153418

1. **P** indicates that the tyre is for passenger vehicle use. The index is not always shown.
2. The width of the tyre from sidewall edge to sidewall edge, in mm.
3. The aspect ratio, also known as the profile, gives the sidewall height as a percentage of the tread width. So, if the tread width is 205 mm and the aspect ratio is 50, the sidewall height is 102 mm.
4. **R** indicates that the tyre is of radial ply construction.
5. The diameter of the wheel rim, given in inches.
6. The load index for the tyre. The index is not always shown.

⚠ **The load index and speed rating on all replacement tyres must be, at least, the same specification as the manufacturer's original equipment supplied with the vehicle, except for approved winter tyres. If in doubt, consult a retailer/authorised repairer. See 321, USING WINTER TYRES.**

7. The speed rating denotes the maximum speed at which the tyre may be used for extended periods. See **317, SPEED RATING**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

8. Tyre manufacturing standard information, which can be used for tyre recalls and other checking processes. Most of this information relates to the manufacturer, place of manufacture, etc. The last four numbers are the date of manufacture. For example, if the number is 3106, the tyre was made in the 31st week of 2006.
9. **M+S** or **M/S** indicates that the tyre has been designed with some capability for mud and snow.
10. The number of plies in both the tread area and the sidewall area: Indicates how many layers of rubber-coated material make up the structure of the tyre. Information is also provided on the type of materials used.
11. Wear rate indicator: A tyre rated at 400, e.g., lasts twice as long as a tyre rated at 200.
12. The traction rating grades a tyre's performance when stopping on a wet road surface. The higher the grade, the better the braking performance. The grades, from highest to lowest are: **AA**, **A**, **B**, and **C**.

The traction grade assigned to this tyre is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

13. The maximum load which can be carried by the tyre.
14. Heat resistance grading: The tyre's resistance to heat is grade **A**, **B**, or **C**, with **A** indicating the greatest resistance to heat. The grading is provided for a correctly inflated tyre, which is being used within its speed and loading limits.
15. The maximum inflation pressure for the tyre. The maximum inflation pressure should not be used for normal driving. See **321, AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS**.

SPEED RATING

Rating	Speed km/h (mph)
Q	160 (99)
R	170 (106)
S	180 (112)
T	190 (118)
U	200 (124)
H	210 (130)
V	240 (149)
W	270 (168)
Y	300 (186)

TYRE CARE

Do not drive the vehicle if a tyre is damaged, excessively worn, or incorrectly inflated.

Avoid contaminating the tyres with vehicle fluids, as they may cause damage to the tyre.

Avoid spinning the wheels. The forces released can damage the structure of the tyre and cause it to fail.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Tyres

If wheel spin is unavoidable due to a loss of traction, e.g., in deep snow, do not exceed the 50 km/h (30 mph) point on the speedometer.

Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the sidewall of the tyre.

Note: *Tyre condition should be checked after the vehicle has been used off-road. As soon as the vehicle returns to a normal, hard, road surface, stop and check for damage to the tyres.*

All of the vehicle's tyres, including the spare, should be checked regularly for damage, wear, and distortion. If in any doubt about the condition of a tyre, have it checked immediately by a tyre repair centre or a retailer/authorised repairer.

TYRE PRESSURES

All tyre pressures, including the spare, should be checked regularly using an accurate pressure gauge, when the tyres are cold.

Pressure checks should be carried out only when the tyres are cold, and the vehicle has been stationary for more than 3 hours. A hot tyre at, or below, recommended cold inflation pressure, is dangerously under-inflated.

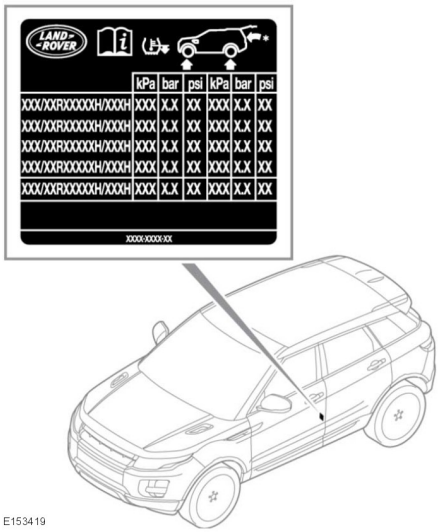
Never drive your vehicle if the tyre pressures are incorrect. Under-inflation causes excessive flexing and uneven tyre wear. This can lead to sudden tyre failure. Over-inflation causes harsh ride, uneven tyre wear and poor handling.

Do not drive the vehicle with a leaking tyre. Even if the tyre appears to be inflated it could be dangerously under-inflated and will continue to deflate. Renew the tyre or contact an approved repairer.

Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

If the vehicle has been parked in strong sunlight, or used in high ambient temperatures, do not reduce the tyre pressures. Move the vehicle into the shade and allow the tyres to cool before rechecking the pressures.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016



The tyre information label is located on the driver's side B pillar.

Check the tyres, including the spare, for condition and pressure on a weekly basis and before long journeys.

Dependent on market, the tyre pressures can be displayed in the Message centre using the **Vehicle Information** and **Tyre Pressure Check** Instrument panel menus. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**. The display will show 2 tyre pressures for each tyre. The upper figure is the present tyre pressure and the lower figure (in brackets) is the recommended tyre pressure.

Note: *The tyre pressure units can be configured to display as either psi, bar, or kPa via the* ***Display Settings*** *menu.*

If tyre pressures are checked while the vehicle is inside a protected covered area (e.g. a garage) and subsequently driven in lower outdoor temperatures, tyre under-inflation could occur.

A slight pressure loss occurs naturally with time. If this exceeds 14 kPa (0.14bar/2 psi) per week, have the cause investigated and rectified by qualified personnel.

If it is necessary to check tyre pressures when the tyres are warm, you should expect the pressures to have increased by up to 30 - 40 kPa (0.3 - 0.4 bar/4 - 6 psi). Do not reduce the tyre pressures to the cold inflation pressure under these circumstances. Allow the tyres to cool fully before adjusting the pressures.

The following procedure should be used to check and adjust the tyres pressures:

To avoid damaging the valves do not apply excessive force or sideways force on the gauge/ inflator.

To avoid damage to TPMS valves, it is recommended not to use rigid tyre inflation wands. This is to avoid the risk of excess leverage and sideways pressure on the valve.

1. Remove the valve cap.
2. Firmly attach a tyre pressure gauge/ inflator to the valve.
3. Read the tyre pressure from the gauge and add air if required.
4. If air is added to the tyre, remove the gauge and re-attach it before reading the pressure. Failure to do so may result in an inaccurate reading.
5. If the tyre pressure is too high, remove the gauge and allow air out of the tyre by pressing the centre of the valve. Refit the gauge to the valve and check the pressure.
6. Repeat the process, adding or removing air as required, until the correct tyre pressure is reached.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

7. Refit the valve cap.

TYRE VALVES

Keep the valve caps screwed down firmly to prevent water or dirt from entering the valve. Check the valves for leaks when checking the tyre pressures.

Do not twist or bend the valves when attaching a pressure hose or gauge, as damage may result.

REPLACEMENT TYRES

Always fit replacement tyres of the same type, and wherever possible, of the same make and tread pattern. Failure to fit the same type, make, and tread pattern may reduce vehicle stability.

The load and speed index ratings on all replacement tyres must be, at least, the same specification as the vehicle's original equipment. If in doubt, consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.

If lower speed-rated specialist tyres are fitted (e.g. winter tyres or off-road tyres), the vehicle must be driven within the speed limitations of the tyres. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer for further information. In markets that require a tyre's maximum speed label to be fitted, the tyre's maximum speed label should be placed within the driver's field of vision. These can be obtained from the tyre retailer.

Do not rotate the tyres around the vehicle.

If the use of tyres not recommended by the vehicle manufacturer is unavoidable, make sure to read, and fully comply with, the tyre manufacturer's instructions.

Tyre removal and fitting should be carried out by a retailer/authorised repairer.

When removing a tyre from a wheel, or fitting a tyre to a wheel, make sure the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor is not damaged.

When the tread has worn down to approximately 2 mm, wear indicators start to appear at the surface of the tread pattern. This produces a continuous band of rubber across the tread, as a visual reminder.

Tyres should be replaced in sets of 4. If this is not possible, replace the tyres in pairs (both front or both rear). When tyres are replaced, the wheels should always be re-balanced and the alignment checked.

Use the correct tyre specification and pressures. See **318, TYRE PRESSURES**. Alternatively, contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice.

Replacement TPMS sensor

If a new TPMS sensor is to be fitted to a standard size running wheel on the vehicle, it should be fitted by a retailer/ authorised repairer. The vehicle needs to be stationary for 15 minutes during the sensor fitment, before the system is ready to detect the new sensor. The vehicle must be driven for a minimum of 15 minutes after the sensor change, and then remain stationary for 15 minutes to activate full TPMS operation.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

If the TPMS warning lamp does not extinguish, even after checking the tyre pressures and driving for more than ten minutes above 25 km/h (16 mph), seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS

In areas of extended high ambient temperature, vehicle tyres can be affected by a softening of the tyre's sidewall. If the vehicle is stationary for long periods, the effect is to slightly deform the tyre at the point where the tyre meets the standing surface. This is known as a flat spot.

This is normal tyre behaviour. However, when the vehicle is subsequently driven, vibration may be experienced from the flat spot. The condition steadily improves with extra mileage.

To minimise flat spotting when the vehicle is stationary for long periods, increase the tyre pressures to the maximum, as stated on the tyre's sidewall. The tyres must be returned to the specified running pressures before driving. See **318, TYRE PRESSURES**.

TYRE DEGRADATION

Tyres degrade over time, due to the effects of ultraviolet light, extreme temperatures, high loads, and environmental conditions. It is recommended that tyres are replaced at least every 6 years from the date of manufacture, but they may require replacement more frequently.

USING WINTER TYRES

In many countries, legislation exists that requires the use of winter tyres during specified periods of the year.

M+S (mud and snow) tyres have a recognised level of winter performance and need not be replaced. The **M+S** marking on the tyre's sidewall indicates an all-season tyre designed for use all year round, including cold temperatures, snow, and ice.



This symbol identifies dedicated winter tyres, which can be fitted if optimum winter traction is required, or the vehicle is to be used in more extreme winter conditions.

Note: *A dedicated winter tyre often has a lower speed rating than the original equipment tyre, and the vehicle must therefore be driven within the speed limitation of the tyre. Consult a retailer/ authorised repairer for further information. In markets that require a tyres maximum speed label to be fitted, the tyre's maximum speed label should be placed within the driver's field of vision. These can be obtained from the tyre retailer.*

The tyre pressures indicated on the tyre information label are for use in all conditions on the original equipment tyres. If a reduced speed rating tyre is fitted, the recommended pressures are only suitable for use below 160 km/h (100 mph).

For optimum traction, tyres should be run in for at least 160 km on dry roads before driving on snow or ice.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Tyres

Approved winter tyres			
Wheel size	**Tyre size**	**Brand**	**Pattern**
17 in wheels	225/65 R17 102T.	Continental.	Cross Contact Winter.
	225/65 R17 106H.	Michelin.	Latitude Alpin 2.
	235/65 R17 104H.	Dunlop.	Winter Sport 3D.
	225/65 R17 106T.*	Nokian.	Hakkapeliitta 7 SUV.
	225/65 R17 102T.*	Michelin.	Latitude X-Ice North 2.
	225/65 R17 106H.	Pirelli.	Scorpion Winter.
	235/65 R17 108H.	Goodyear.	Ultragrip + SUV.
18 in wheels	235/60 R18 107H.	Continental.	4x4 Winter Contact.
	235/60 R18 107H.	Michelin.	Latitude Alpin 2.
	235/60 R18 107H.	Pirelli.	Scorpion Winter.
	235/60 R18 107T.*	Nokian.	Hakkapeliitta 7 SUV.
	235/60 R18 107T.*	Michelin.	Latitude X-Ice North.
	235/60 R18 107H.*	Pirelli.	Winter Ice Zero.
	235/60 R18 107H.	Goodyear.	Ultragrip + SUV.
19 in wheels	235/55 R19 105H.	Pirelli.	Scorpion Winter.
	235/55 R19 105T.*	Nokian.	Hakkapeliitta 7 SUV.
	235/55 R19 105H.	Continental.	Cross Contact Winter.
	235/55 R19 105H.*	Pirelli.	Winter Ice Zero.
20 in wheels	245/45 R20 103V.	Pirelli.	Scorpion Winter.
	245/45 R20 103V.	Michelin.	Latitude Alpin 2.
	245/45 R20 99T.*	Michelin.	Latitude X-Ice North 2.

Note: ****** *Studded tyres are market dependent. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Note: *The vehicle's speed should be limited to a maximum of 180 km/h (112 mph) when recommended winter tyres are fitted. Failure to comply with this speed restriction means that the tyres are underinflated for the vehicle's speed. In addition the TPMS fails to warn of underinflation at the correct pressure thresholds for these higher speeds. Contact a retailer or tyre distributor for the supply of an appropriate label, which should be placed within the driver's field of vision, as a reminder of this speed restriction.*

Use of dedicated winter tyres may require a change of wheel size, depending on the original choice of wheel. All four wheels must be changed.

If fitted with standard rubber valves, the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) warning lamp flashes for 75 seconds and then remains illuminated. The message centre also displays **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.

When the original wheels and tyres are refitted, the vehicle needs to travel a short distance to reset the TPMS and extinguish the warning lamp.

USING SNOW CHAINS

Only use traction devices in heavy snow conditions, on compacted snow.

Never exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) when traction devices are fitted.

Never fit traction devices to a temporary-use spare wheel.

Traction devices approved by the vehicle manufacturer may be used to improve traction on compacted snow, in heavy snow conditions. Traction devices should not be used in off-road conditions.

If it becomes necessary to fit traction devices, the following points must be observed:

- Only vehicle manufacturer approved traction devices should be used on the vehicle. Only vehicle manufacturer approved traction devices have been tested to make sure they do not cause damage to the vehicle. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for information.
- The wheels and tyres fitted must conform to the specifications of the vehicle's original equipment.
- Do not fit traction devices to 18, 19, or 20 in diameter wheels.
- Single-sided spike-spyder traction devices or snow chains can be fitted to only the front wheels of vehicles fitted with 17 inch diameter wheels.
- Fit traction devices in pairs on the same axle.
- Always read, understand, and follow the traction device manufacturer's instructions. Pay particular attention to the maximum speed and fitting instructions.
- Avoid tyre and/or vehicle damage, by removing the traction devices as soon as the conditions allow.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Tyres

TYRE DECLARATION (India only)

All imported tyres meet the requirements of Bureau of India Standards (BIS) and comply with the requirements under Central Motor Vehicle Rules (CMVR) 1989. The tyres are the same as those tyres supplied as original equipment for Land Rover models which are fully Type Approved for the Indian market.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) provides a low pressure warning and does not re-inflate the tyres. Tyre pressures should be checked regularly, using an accurate pressure gauge when the tyres are cold.

The TPMS can NOT register damage to a tyre. Regularly check the condition of the tyres, especially if the vehicle is driven off-road.

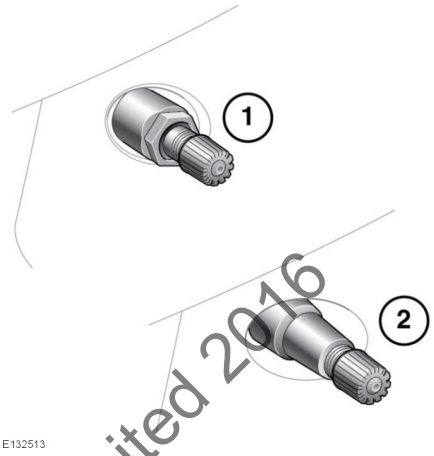
When inflating tyres, care should be taken to avoid bending or damaging the TPMS valves. Always confirm the correct alignment of the inflation head to the valve stem.

To avoid damage to TPMS valves, it is recommended not to use rigid tyre inflation wands. This is to avoid the risk of excess leverage and sideways pressure on the valve.

Note: *Non-approved accessories may interfere with the system. If this occurs,* ***TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING FAULT*** *is displayed in the message centre.*

Note: *Different types of tyre may affect TPMS performance. Always replace tyres in accordance with recommendations.*

TPMS constantly monitors the tyre pressure in each wheel, including the full size spare. Temporary-use spare tyres are not monitored. See **327, TEMPORARY-USE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE**.



E132513

Wheels fitted with a TPMS can be visually identified by the external metal lock nut and valve (**1**). All Land Rover non-TPMS wheels have a rubber valve fitted (**2**).

Note: *At each tyre change, a special service kit is required for each TPMS valve.*

Tyre pressures should be checked regularly when the tyres are cold and adjusted as necessary. The presence of a TPMS does not remove the need to check tyre pressures as part of a vehicle safety check. See **318, TYRE PRESSURES**.

The tyre pressure warning lamp illuminates when one or more of the tyres are significantly under-inflated, accompanied by a message in the message centre. Stop and check the tyres as soon as possible and inflate them to the recommended pressure. See **69, TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (YELLOW)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)

The TPMS also monitors the full size spare tyre pressure. If the pressure for the spare tyre is incorrect, the message **CHECK SPARE TYRE PRESSURE** is displayed, accompanied by the illumination of the warning lamp.

TYRE PRESSURE CHECK

The instrument panel can be used to display the vehicle's tyre pressures. The tyre pressure figures can be accessed via the **Vehicle Information** menu.

See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *The tyre pressure units can be configured to display as either bar, psi, or kPa via the* ***Vehicle Information*** *and the* ***Tyre Information*** *menus.*

When selected, the last known tyre pressures are displayed, alongside the recommended cold tyre pressures (in brackets).

Note: *If any of the wheels or tyres have been removed, the displayed tyre pressures may not be valid. Drive the vehicle for at least 15 minutes in order to re-calibrate the system.*

RECOMMENDED TYRE PRESSURE LOOK-UP

The instrument panel can be used to display the recommended cold tyre pressures for the vehicle. The tyre pressure look-up table can be accessed via the **Vehicle Information** and the **Tyre Information** menus.

See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Depending on the specification of the vehicle, a number of different values may be displayed to reflect different driving conditions, e.g., high speed driving or for a heavily laden vehicle.

VEHICLE LOADING

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) can be adjusted to monitor either **Normal** (light) load or **Heavy** load, via the instrument panel menus, **Vehicle Information**, **Tyre Information** and **TPM Load Setting**. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *The ignition must be switched on, without the engine running.*

If the tyre pressures are adjusted to the **Normal** (light) load setting, adjust the TPMS to suit the vehicle's load and associated recommended tyre pressures.

Every time the ignition is switched on, a TPMS message is displayed in the message centre, to indicate which load setting is being monitored.

Note: *The TPMS setting must correspond with the vehicle's current load.*

The **Normal** (light) load setting should be used during normal use of the vehicle, e.g., up to four occupants.

The **Heavy** Load setting should be used when the vehicle's load exceeds normal use, and up to the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW). For example, more than four occupants.

Note: *Make sure that the tyre pressures are correct for the vehicle's current load.*

The instrument panel menus, **Vehicle Information** and **Tyre Pressures**, can be used to check the vehicle's current tyre pressures.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

FULL SIZE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE

The system automatically recognises any changes in wheel positions. The vehicle must be stationary for 15 minutes during the wheel and tyre change, to make sure that the system can detect the change. After driving above 25 km/h (16 mph), any deflation warning should clear within approximately 5 minutes.

Note: *Re-inflate the tyre, within close proximity of the vehicle, following repairs to a full size spare wheel fitted with tyre pressure monitoring. The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) warning lamp may illuminate if tyre inflation is not carried out within close proximity of the vehicle. Should this occur, re-inflate the tyre within 5 m of the vehicle.*

TEMPORARY-USE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE

If the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted, the system automatically recognises the change in wheel positions. After approximately 10 minutes of driving above 25 km/h (16 mph), the message **FRONT[REAR] RIGHT[LEFT] TYRE PRESSURE NOT MONITORED** is displayed. The message is accompanied by illumination of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) warning lamp.

The warning lamp first flashes and then illuminates continuously. Extended use of the temporary-use spare wheel triggers the message **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.

The TPMS display sequence is activated at every ignition cycle, until the temporary spare wheel is replaced by a full-size road wheel with a TPMS sensor fitted.

Note: *If in use, always replace the temporary spare wheel before having a TPMS fault investigated.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Tyre repair kit

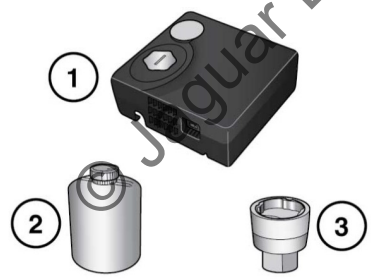
TYRE REPAIR KIT

If in any doubt regarding the ability to carry out the instructions, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer before attempting the repair.

For vehicles without a spare wheel, a tyre repair kit is under the loadspace floor panel. The tyre repair kit can be used to repair one punctured tyre. It is essential to read the complete tyre repair kit section of this handbook before attempting to repair a tyre. See **337, WHEEL CHANGING**.

The tyre repair kit seals most punctures with a maximum diameter of 6 mm, if the puncture is within the tread area (**A**). See **328, TYRE REPAIR KIT SAFETY INFORMATION**.

Note: *The sealant used in the tyre repair kit has a shelf life and the expiry date is shown on the tyre sealant bottle. Make sure that the container is replaced before the expiry date. Also make sure that the sealant is replaced after each use.*



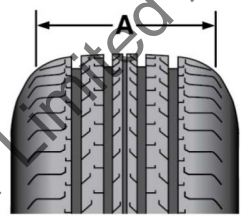
E178065

1. Compressor.
2. Sealant bottle.
3. Locking wheel nut adaptor.

TYRE REPAIR KIT SAFETY INFORMATION

Some tyre damage may only be partially sealed, or may not seal at all, depending on the amount and type of damage. Any loss of tyre pressure can seriously affect vehicle safety.

Do not use the tyre repair kit if the tyre has been damaged by driving while under-inflated.



E149982

A – Tyre tread area.

Only use the tyre repair kit to seal damage located within the tyre tread area (A).

Do not use the tyre repair kit to seal damage to the tyre's sidewall.

Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) when a repaired tyre is fitted to the vehicle.

The maximum distance that should be driven when a repaired tyre is fitted, is 200 km.

When a repaired tyre is fitted, drive with caution and avoid sudden braking or steering manoeuvres.

Only use the tyre repair kit for the vehicle with which it was supplied.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Do not use the tyre repair kit for any other purpose than tyre repair.

Never leave the tyre repair kit unattended, when in use.

Only use the tyre repair kit within the -30°C to +70°C temperature range.

Always keep children and animals at a safe distance from the tyre repair kit, when in use.

Do not stand directly beside the compressor when it is operating.

Check the tyre's sidewall before inflation. If any cracks, damage, or deformities are apparent, do not inflate the tyre.

Watch the tyre's sidewall during inflation. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage, or deformities appear, switch off the compressor and deflate the tyre. Do not continue to use the tyre.

USING THE TYRE REPAIR KIT

Avoid skin contact with the sealant, which contains natural rubber latex.

Before attempting a tyre repair, make sure the vehicle is parked safely, as far away from overtaking traffic as possible.

Make sure that the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied and Park (**P**) is engaged.

Do not attempt to remove foreign objects, such as nails, screws, etc., from the tyre.

Always run the engine when using the compressor, unless the vehicle is in an enclosed or poorly ventilated space, as this may cause asphyxiation.

To prevent overheating, do not operate the compressor continuously for longer than 10 minutes.

Note: *All vehicle drivers and occupants should be made aware that a temporary repair has been made to a tyre fitted to the vehicle. The drivers should also be made aware of the special driving conditions imposed when using a repaired tyre.*

REPAIR PROCEDURE

Check the tyre's sidewall before inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps, or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tyre. Do not stand directly beside the tyre while the compressor is pumping. Watch the tyre's sidewall. If any cracks, bumps, or similar damage appear, switch off the compressor and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue to use the tyre.

If the tyre's inflation pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi, 180 kPa) within 7 minutes, the tyre may have suffered excessive damage. A temporary repair is not possible and the vehicle should not be driven until the tyre has been replaced.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Tyre repair kit

1. Open the tyre repair kit and peel off the maximum speed label. Attach the label to the fascia, in the driver's field of vision. Take care not to obstruct any of the instruments or warning lamps.
2. Uncoil the compressor power cable and the inflation hose.
3. Unscrew the orange cap from the sealant bottle receiver and the sealant bottle cap.
4. Screw the sealant bottle into the receiver (clockwise) until tight.

   Note: *Screwing the bottle onto the receiver pierces the bottle's seal. Once the receiver has been fitted, a ratchet prevents it from being removed.*
5. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
6. Remove the protective cap from the inflation hose and connect the inflation hose to the tyre valve. Make sure that the hose is screwed on firmly.
7. Make sure that the compressor switch is in the off (**O**) position. Insert the power cable connector into an auxiliary power socket. Unless the vehicle is in an enclosed area, start the engine. See **95, AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS**.
8. Switch the compressor switch to the on (**I**) position.
9. Inflate the tyre to a minimum of 1.8 bar (26 psi, 180 kPa) and a maximum of 3.5 bar (51 psi, 350 kPa).

   Note: *When pumping the sealant through the tyre valve, sealant may leak from the puncture location during the sealing process. The pressure may rise up to 6 bar (87 psi, 600 kPa). The pressure drops again after approximately 30 seconds.*

   Remove any excess sealant immediately. Failure to do this may result in a surface residue that is difficult to remove.
10. During inflation, switch the compressor off briefly to check the tyre pressure, using the gauge mounted on the compressor.

    Note: *The process should not take longer than 10 minutes to inflate the tyre. If, after 10 minutes, the tyre has not yet reached the minimum pressure, the tyre should not be used.*
11. Once the tyre has been inflated to the required pressure, switch off the compressor. If desired, the engine may be switched off after the compressor has been switched off.
12. Remove the power connector from the auxiliary power socket.
13. Unscrew the inflation hose from the tyre valve, turning counter-clockwise as quickly as possible. Remove the inflation hose.
14. Replace the inflation hose protective cap and the tyre valve cap.
15. Make sure that the tyre repair kit, including the bottle and receiver caps, is placed securely in the vehicle. Make sure that the tyre repair kit is easily accessible, as the tyre pressures need to be checked after approximately 3 km.
16. Immediately drive the vehicle for approximately 3 km to allow the sealant to coat the inner surface of the tyre and form a seal at the puncture.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

CHECKING THE TYRE PRESSURE AFTER A REPAIR

When driving the vehicle, if you experience vibrations, abnormal steering, or noises, reduce speed immediately. Drive with extreme caution, at reduced speed, to the first safe place to stop the vehicle. Visually examine the tyre and check its pressure. If there are any signs of damage or deformity to the tyre, or the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar (19 psi, 130 kPa), do not continue driving.

Consult a tyre repair centre or a retailer/authorised repairer for advice concerning the replacement of a tyre after using a tyre repair kit.

1. Drive the vehicle for 3 km, then stop in a safe place. Carry out a visual examination of the tyre's condition.
2. Make sure that the sealant container is in its original position.
3. Screw the inflation hose connector firmly onto the tyre valve.
4. Read the tyre pressure from the gauge.
5. If the pressure of the sealant filled tyre is above 1.3 bar (19 psi, 130 kPa), adjust the pressure to the correct value. If there are signs of damage or deformity to the tyre, or the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar, do not continue driving.
6. Make sure that the compressor switch is in the off (**O**) position. Insert the power cable connector into the auxiliary power socket. If the vehicle is in a well-ventilated area, start the engine.
7. Switch the compressor to on (**I**). Inflate the tyre to the correct pressure. See **318, TYRE PRESSURES**.
8. To check the tyre pressure, switch off the compressor and then read the pressure from the gauge.
9. When the compressor is off, if the tyre pressure is too high, release the required amount of pressure using the pressure release valve.
10. Once the tyre is inflated to the correct pressure, switch off the compressor. Remove the power plug from the auxiliary socket.

    Note: *The use of the tyre repair kit sealant may lead to error prompts and incorrect readings of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS). Therefore, use the tyre repair kit's pressure gauge to check and adjust the damaged tyre's inflation pressure.*
11. Unscrew the inflation hose connector from the tyre valve. Replace the tyre valve cap and the inflation hose connector's protective cap.
12. Make sure that the tyre repair kit is stored securely in the vehicle.
13. Drive to the nearest tyre repair centre or retailer/authorised repairer for a replacement tyre to be fitted. Be sure to make the repair centre aware that the tyre repair kit has been used, before the tyre is removed.
14. The tyre inflation hose, the receiver, and the sealant bottle must be replaced once a new tyre has been fitted.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Tyre repair kit



Only sealant bottles which are completely empty should be disposed of with normal household waste. Sealant bottles which contain some sealant, and the tyre inflation hose, should be disposed of by a tyre specialist or a retailer/ authorised repairer, in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY

Before raising the vehicle or changing a wheel, make sure to read and comply with the following warnings:

- **Always find a safe place to stop, off the carriageway, and away from traffic.**
- **Do not jack the vehicle if it is over a metal grating or manhole cover.**
- **Make sure the vehicle is on firm, level ground.**
- **Make sure that the jack is on firm, level ground.**
- **Apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB). Engage Park (P) on automatic vehicles or select first or reverse gear on manual vehicles.**
- **Switch on the hazard warning lights.**
- **Make sure that the front wheels are in the straight ahead position and engage the steering lock.**
- **Disconnect any trailer/caravan from the vehicle.**
- **Make sure that all passengers, and animals, are out of the vehicle and in a safe place away from the carriageway.**
- **Place a warning triangle at a suitable distance behind the vehicle, facing towards oncoming traffic.**
- **Remove the spare wheel before jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilising the vehicle, when raised.**
- **Never place anything between the jack and the ground, or the jack and the vehicle.**
- **WARNING - THAT NO PERSON SHOULD PLACE ANY PORTION OF THEIR BODY UNDER A VEHICLE THAT IS SUPPORTED BY A JACK.**
- **Take care when loosening the wheel nuts. The wheel brace may slip off if not properly attached and the wheel nuts may give way suddenly. Either unexpected movement may cause an injury.**
- **Take care when lifting the spare wheel and removing the punctured wheel. The wheels are heavy and can cause injuries if not handled correctly.**
- **Position the jack from the side of the vehicle, in line with the appropriate jacking point.**
- **Do not attempt to raise the vehicle unless the jack head is fully engaged in the jacking point. Only jack the vehicle using the approved jacking points.**
- **The jack is designed for wheel changing only. Never work beneath the vehicle with the jack as the only means of support. Always use correctly rated vehicle support stands, before putting any part of the body beneath the vehicle.**
- **Always use the complete jacking lever assembly throughout the tyre changing process, to minimise any chance of accidental injury.**

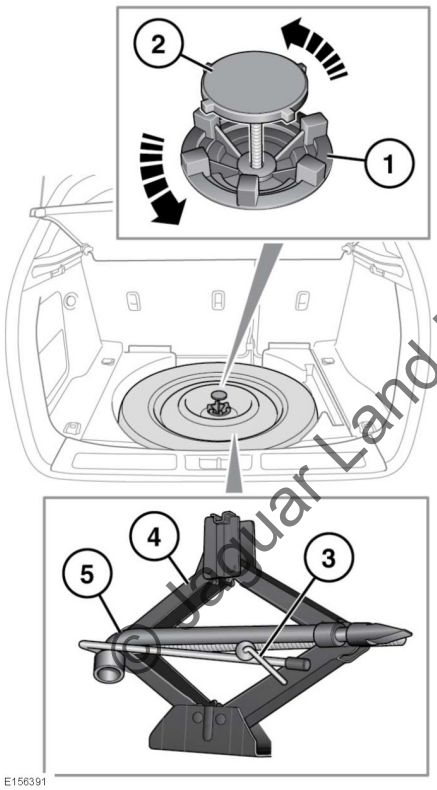
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Wheel changing

Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported only by a jack.

When jacking the vehicle, make sure that all precautions are taken to prevent vehicle movement. It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle are chocked.

TOOL KIT



The temporary-use spare wheel and tool kit contains the following.

1. Temporary-use spare wheel locking ring.
2. Temporary-use spare wheel securing bolt.
3. Tool kit securing bolt.
4. Jack.
5. Wheel brace.

After use, the tools and jack should be returned to the storage area and correctly stored.

Note: *Examine the jack occasionally. Clean and grease the moving parts, particularly the screw thread, to prevent corrosion.*

REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL

Remove the spare wheel prior to jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilising the vehicle when raised.

Wheels are heavy and if handled incorrectly may cause injury. Use extreme caution when lifting or manoeuvring the wheels.

Always secure the spare wheel, or the removed wheel, in the correct position using the securing bolt.

After wheel changing, always secure the tools, chocks, jack and replaced wheel in their correct storage positions. Such objects, if not properly stored, can become flying missiles in a crash or rollover, potentially causing injury or death.

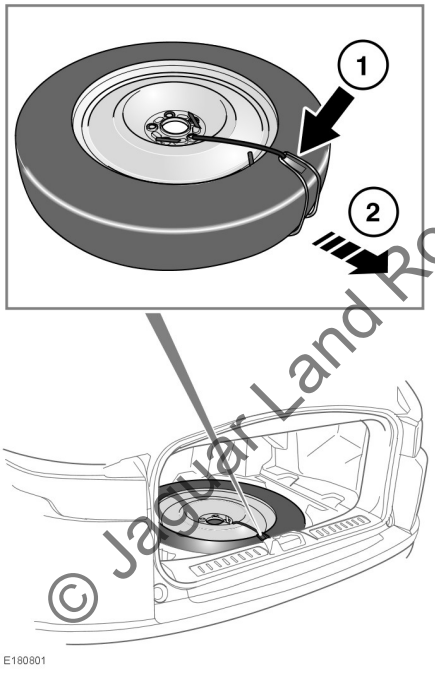
Do not use power tools to loosen the spare wheel. Doing so may damage the mechanism.

To remove the temporary-use spare wheel:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

1. To access the temporary-use spare wheel, fold forward the rear edge of the cover then remove it.
2. Turn the temporary-use spare wheel locking ring counter-clockwise to gain access to the securing bolt.
3. Turn the securing bolt counter-clockwise until it comes free.
4. Remove the temporary-use spare wheel.

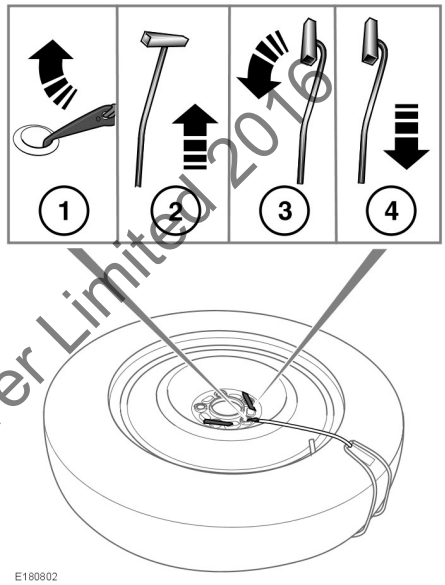
Convertible



Note: *Note the fitted position of the temporary-use spare wheel cord before removal.*

To remove the temporary-use spare wheel, carry out the steps listed previously and then:

1. Locate and firmly grasp the temporary-use spare wheel cord.
2. Using the temporary-use spare wheel cord, pull the temporary-use spare wheel assembly upward and rearward.



Remove the temporary-use spare wheel cord before fitting the temporary spare wheel to the vehicle. To remove the temporary-use spare wheel cord:

1. Release the hook from the hole in the spare wheel.
2. Pull one end of the temporary-use spare wheel cord upward.
3. Rotate the end of the temporary-use spare wheel cord, as illustrated.
4. Push the end of the temporary-use spare wheel cord through the hole in the spare wheel.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Repeat the steps for the other end of the temporary-use spare wheel cord.

To fit the temporary-use spare wheel cord, reverse the procedure.

Note: *When returning the temporary-use spare wheel to the loadspace, make sure that the temporary-use spare wheel cord is correctly fitted to the temporary-use spare wheel.*

Note: *Make sure that the temporary-use spare wheel is positioned to allow access to the temporary-use spare wheel cord.*

IMPORTANT – USE OF SPARE TYRE

Adhere to the instructions on the temporary-use spare warning label, affixed to the wheel. Failure to do so may cause vehicle instability and/or tyre failure.

Where fitted, the temporary-use spare wheel is for temporary use only.

Drive with caution while the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted.

Make sure that an original size wheel and tyre are fitted as soon as possible.

Do not fit more than one temporary-use spare wheel at any one time.

Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) while the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted.

The temporary-use spare wheel must be inflated to 4.2 bar (60 psi, 420 kPa) and cannot be repaired.

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) must be switched on while the temporary-use spare wheel is in use.

Traction devices, such as snow chains, cannot be used with a temporary-use spare wheel.

USING WHEEL CHOCKS

Note: *Not all vehicles have wheel chocks supplied as part of the tool kit.*

Wheel chocks are a useful addition to a vehicle's tool kit. Note the following advice when using wheel chocks:

Before raising the vehicle, the wheel diagonally opposite the one to be removed must be chocked.

Always chock the wheels using suitable wheel chocks. Place the chocks on both sides of the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.

If jacking the vehicle on a slight slope is unavoidable, place the chocks on the downhill side of both wheels on the axle not being raised.

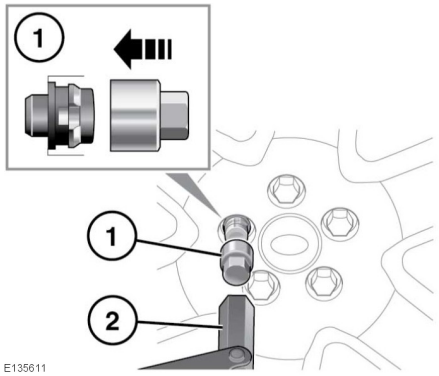
LOCKING WHEEL NUTS

Do not use air tools or power tools to remove or to refit the locking wheel nut. Doing so may damage the locking wheel nut or the adaptor.

Locking wheel nuts can be removed and fitted using only the special adaptor provided. See **334, TOOL KIT**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Note: *A code number is stamped onto the underside of the adaptor. The number should be recorded in the service book, supplied with the literature pack. If a replacement adaptor is required, quote this number.*



To release the locking wheel nut:

1. Insert the wheel nut adaptor onto the locking wheel nut. Make sure that the wheel nut adaptor fully engages.
2. Locate the wheel brace over the adaptor. Unscrew the wheel nut half a turn counter-clockwise.
3. After raising the vehicle on the jack, remove the locking wheel nut.

Note: *When the vehicle is first supplied, the wheel nut adaptor may be stored in the glovebox. If this is the case, the wheel nut adaptor must be moved to its correct storage position in the loadspace, as soon as possible. See* ***334, TOOL KIT****.*

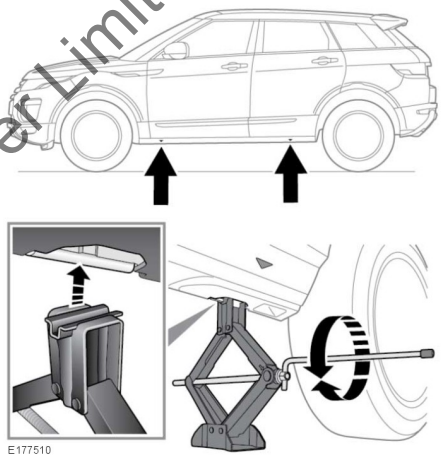
WHEEL CHANGING

Before raising the vehicle, refer to all warnings at the beginning of this section of the Owner's Handbook.

Jack up the vehicle using only the jacking points described, or damage to the vehicle could occur.

Before changing a wheel, read and observe the warnings. See **333, WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY**.

Note: *Vehicles with tilt sensor: The vehicle has a tilt sensor, which activates the alarm if the vehicle is tilted in any direction after it has been locked. To lock the doors while changing the wheel, and avoid the alarm activating, the tilt sensor can be temporarily disabled. See* ***24, TILT SENSOR****.*



To change a wheel:

1. Before raising the vehicle, use the wheel nut brace to slacken the wheel nuts of the wheel to be replaced. Turn half a turn counter-clockwise.
2. Locate the jack under the relevant jacking point.

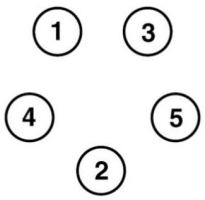
   Note: *Do not allow the jack to contact the sill at any other point, as damage may result.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Wheel changing

Note: *The sports pack sills include arrows to identify jacking points.*

3. Unfold the cranking handle from its stored position on the jack. Fit the wheel nut brace to the end of the cranking handle.
4. Rotate the handle clockwise to raise the jack, until the jack pin locates into the jacking point.
5. Raise the vehicle until the wheel is clear of the ground.
6. Remove the wheel nuts and place them together where they cannot roll away.
7. Remove the wheel and place it to one side. Do not lay the wheel on its face, as this may damage the finish.
8. Fit the temporary spare wheel to the hub.
9. Refit the wheel nuts and lightly tighten them. Make sure the wheel is making contact with the hub evenly.
10. Make sure the area under the vehicle is clear of obstructions. Lower the vehicle slowly and smoothly.
11. With all of the wheels on the ground and the jack removed, fully tighten the wheel nuts. The wheel nuts must be tightened in sequence (see the illustration below) to the correct torque of 133 Nm.



E153421

Note: *If it is not possible to torque the wheel nuts when a wheel is replaced, they should be set to the correct torque as soon as possible.*

Check and adjust the tyre pressure as soon as possible.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

RECOVERY METHOD

Make sure the vehicle recovery and/or transportation is carried out by suitably qualified personnel, and the vehicle is secured correctly.

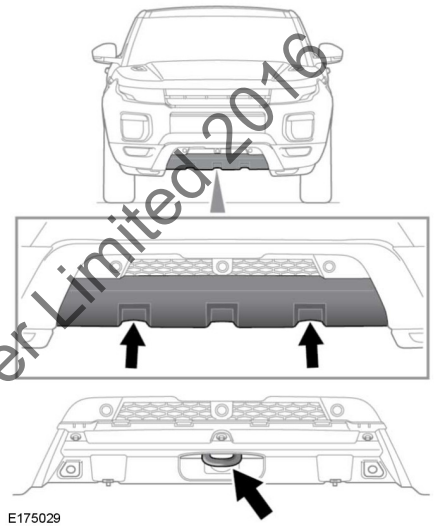
The recovery agent must activate the transmission park release before recovery commences. This procedure is covered in a separate publication for service personnel. Failure to activate the transmission park release can result in serious transmission damage.

The vehicle should not be towed on all four wheels and should not be recovered with the front or rear wheels suspended. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

The method for recovery and/or transportation of the vehicle is on a transporter or trailer designed for that purpose.

FRONT TOWING EYE

The towing eye at the front of the vehicle is designed for on-road recovery only. If it is used for any other purpose, it may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.



The towing eye is located behind a panel in the bumper.

To access the towing eye: Rotate the two fasteners 90 degrees counter-clockwise. Pull the panel away from the bumper.

Fitment of the panel is a reverse of removal.

Remove the towing eye cover before driving off-road, to prevent damage or loss.

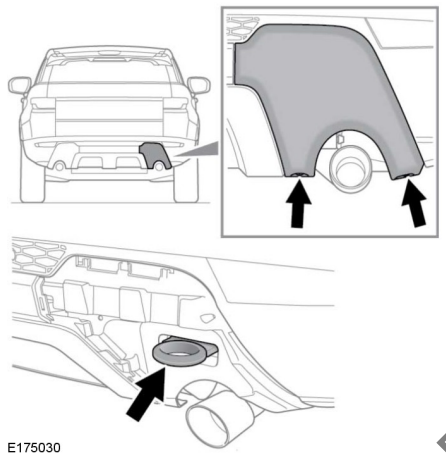
Use extreme caution when detaching towing equipment. Vehicle movement is possible which can result in serious injury.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Vehicle recovery

REAR TOWING EYE

The towing eye at the rear of the vehicle is designed for on-road recovery only. If it is used for any other purpose, it may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.



E175030

The towing eye is located behind a panel in the bumper.

To access the towing eye: Rotate the two fasteners 90 degrees counter-clockwise. Pull the panel away from the bumper.

Fitment of the panel is a reverse of removal.

Note: *The panel design may vary depending on the vehicle's specification.*

Remove the towing eye cover before driving off-road, to prevent damage or loss.

Use extreme caution when detaching towing equipment. Vehicle movement is possible which can result in serious injury.

TRANSMISSION PARK RELEASE

Make sure that the vehicle is secured with wheel chocks, then apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) or firmly press the brake pedal. Two people are requierd for this procedure. Failure to do so can result in unexpected movement of the vehicle causing serious injury or death.

When recovering the vehicle, it is essential that the transmission park release mechanism is activated. Activating the transmission park release mechanism locks the transmission in Neutral (**N**) and prevents the transmission from automatically selecting Park (**P**).

The recovery agent must activate the transmission park release before recovery commences. The procedure for activating the transmission park release is covered in a separate publication for service personnel. Failure to activate the transmission park release can result in serious transmission damage.

When vehicle transportation is complete, the transmission park release mechanism needs to be deactivated.

OFF-ROAD RECOVERY

If the towing eyes are to be used for off-road recovery, it is essential that off-road driver training, covering recovery techniques, is undertaken.

Further information on off-road driving can be found at: **www.landrover.com**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

BEFORE STARTING OR DRIVING

If the vehicle is involved in a collision, it should be checked by a retailer/authorised repairer or suitably qualified personnel, before starting or driving.

Note: *Some vehicles have an SOS emergency call button and an optimised SOS button. See* ***251, INCONTROL PROTECT****.*

EVENT DATA RECORDING

The vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle. The data assists in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in the vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seat belts were buckled or fastened.
- How far if at all the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was travelling.

The data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *EDR data are recorded by the vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs. No data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions. No personal data, e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, have a special equipment. The equipment can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

South Korea only

Please be advised that this vehicle incorporates an Event Data Recorder (EDR).

An EDR stores driving information at the moment of accident (driving speed, application of brake pedal and accelerator control etc.), and enables to confirm the information stored.

EDR information helps understanding the circumstances of accident more clearly.

SERVICE DATA RECORDING

Service data recorders in the vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about the vehicle. Potentially, this includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, accelerator pedal, steering, or brakes.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

After a collision

In order to properly diagnose and service the vehicle, a retailer/authorised repairer may access the vehicle's diagnostic information, through a direct connection to the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

LABEL LOCATIONS

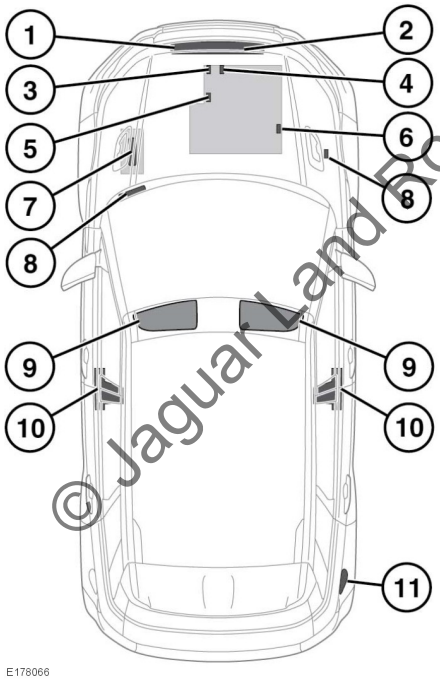


Warning labels attached to the vehicle bearing this symbol mean: Read the relevant instructions, before touching or adjusting components.



Labels showing this symbol indicate that the ignition system utilises very high voltages. Do not touch any ignition components while the ignition is switched on.

Additional information labels may also be found at the following locations:



1. Air Conditioning (A/C) label: Located on the bonnet locking platform.
2. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN): Located on the bonnet locking platform.
3. Engine information label (2.0L diesel): Located on the intake manifold.
4. Engine identification information (2.0L diesel): Stamped into the marking pad on the cylinder block.
5. Engine identification information: Stamped into the engine mounting flange.
6. Engine information label: Located on the top, right side of the engine cover.
7. Battery warning symbols: Located on the top of the battery.
8. The VIN is stamped onto a plate, which is visible through the lowest part of the left side of the windscreen.
   The VIN is also stamped into the right-side, front inner wing.
   The VIN can also be shown in the message centre via the **Vehicle Information** and **VIN Display** instrument panel menus. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.
   Note: *When communicating with a retailer/authorised repairer, you may be asked to quote the VIN number.*
9. Airbag label and vehicle handling label: Located on the sun visors.
10. Tyre pressure label, airbag warning label and certification label: Located at the base of the left-side B pillar.
    The certification label shows VIN, tyre and build-date information.
11. Fuel specification label: Located inside the fuel filler flap.

To make sure that the vehicle and its features are used safely, it is important to be familiar with these subjects.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

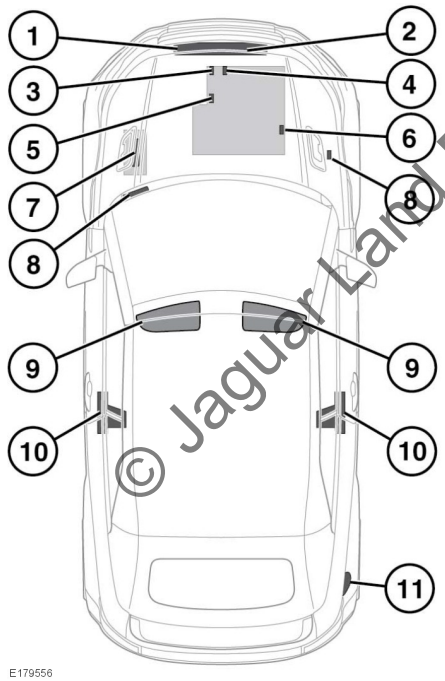
Vehicle labels

CONVERTIBLE - LABEL LOCATIONS

Warning labels attached to the vehicle bearing this symbol mean: Read the relevant instructions, before touching or adjusting components.

Labels showing this symbol indicate that the ignition system utilises very high voltages. Do not touch any ignition components while the ignition switch is switched on.

Additional information labels may also be found at the following locations:



1. Air Conditioning (A/C) label: Located on the bonnet locking platform.
2. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN): Located on the bonnet locking platform.
3. Engine information label (2.0L diesel): Located on the intake manifold.
4. Engine identification information (2.0L diesel): Stamped into the marking pad on the cylinder block.
5. Engine identification information: Stamped into the engine mounting flange.
6. Engine information label: Located on the top, right side of the engine cover.
7. Battery warning symbols: Located on the top of the battery.
8. The VIN is stamped onto a plate, which is visible through the lowest part of the left side of the windscreen. The VIN is also stamped into the right-side, front inner wing. The VIN can also be shown in the message centre via the **Vehicle Information** and **VIN Display** instrument panel menus. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

   Note: *When communicating with a retailer/authorised repairer, you may be asked to quote the VIN number.*
9. Airbag label and vehicle handling label: Located on the sun visors.
10. Tyre pressure label, airbag warning label and certification label: Located at the base of the left-side B pillar. The certification label shows VIN, tyre and build-date information.
11. Fuel specification label: Located inside the fuel filler flap.

To make sure that the vehicle and its features are used safely, it is important to be familiar with these subjects.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

Description	2.0L diesel	2.0L petrol
Number of cylinders	4	4
Displacement (cc)	1 999	1 999
Compression ratio	15.5:1	10:1

Note: *For further information, contact a retailer/authorised repairer and quote the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). See* ***343, LABEL LOCATIONS****.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Technical specifications

LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS

Description	Variant	Specification
Engine oil	2.0L diesel	SAE 0W-30 meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.03.5007.
	Petrol	SAE 5W-30 meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.03.5003.
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)	2.0L diesel	Meeting ISO standard 22241-1. Diesel Exhaust Fluid is also known as DEF, AdBlue™, AUS 32, and ARLA 32.
Brake and/or clutch fluid	All vehicles	We recommend that Land Rover brake fluid is used. If unavailable, then brake fluid meeting specification DOT4 Class 6 may be used.
Screen wash	All vehicles	Screen wash with frost protection.
Coolant	All vehicles	Mixture of 50% water and 50% antifreeze meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.651.5003.

™ mark of the Verband der Automobilindustrie e.V. (VDA)"

If in doubt about the required specification of a lubricant or fluid, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer.

E176576

Castrol Edge Professional exclusively recommended by Land Rover.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

CAPACITIES

Item	Variant	Capacity (litres)
Fuel tank	2.0L diesel	57
	Petrol	68.5
Engine oil refill and filter change	2.0L diesel	6.5
	Petrol	5.4
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) tank	Diesel vehicles with DEF	14.5
Washer reservoir	With headlight powerwash	4.1
	Without headlight powerwash	3.2
Cooling system refill	2.0L diesel automatic with auxiliary heater	11.4
	2.0L diesel automatic	11.2
	Petrol	4.4

The quoted capacities are approximate and are provided only as a guide. All oil levels must be checked using the level plugs, the message centre information or the drain and refill procedure, as applicable.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

WEIGHTS

Variant	Vehicle weight from kg	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)[1] from kg	Gross Train Weight (GTW)[2] from kg
Convertible petrol	1 936	2 410	3 910
Convertible diesel	1 967	2 475	3 975
3 door petrol 4WD	1 655	2 350	4 150
5 door petrol 4WD	1 658	2 350	4 150
3 door diesel 4WD manual	1 655	2 350	4 150
5 door diesel 4WD manual	1 665	2 350	4 150
3 door diesel 4WD automatic	1 687	2 350	4 350
5 door diesel 4WD automatic	1 674	2 350	4 350
3 door diesel 2WD	1 543	2 275	3 775
5 door diesel 2WD	1 608	2 275	3 775

[1] The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle including passengers and load. [2] The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle and braked trailer, including their respective loads.

Note: *For every extra 1 000 metres increase above sea level, the GTW must be reduced by 10%.*

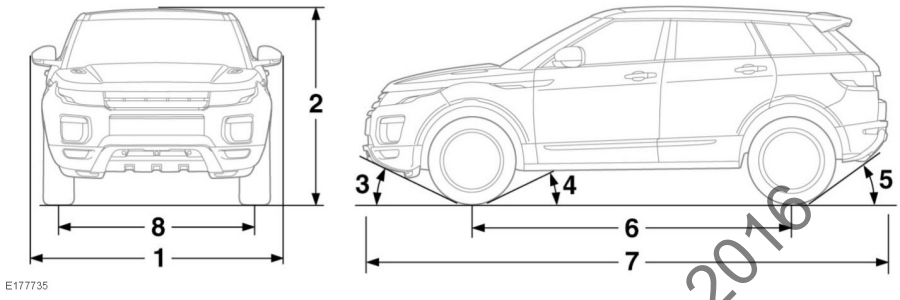
Variant	Maximum front axle load[1] kg	Maximum rear axle load[1] kg	Maximum roof rack load[2] kg
Convertible petrol	1 300	1 160	Not applicable
Convertible diesel	1 370	1 190	Not applicable
3 and 5 door	1 300	1 145	75

[1] The front and rear axle maximum loads cannot be reached simultaneously as this will exceed the GVW limit.

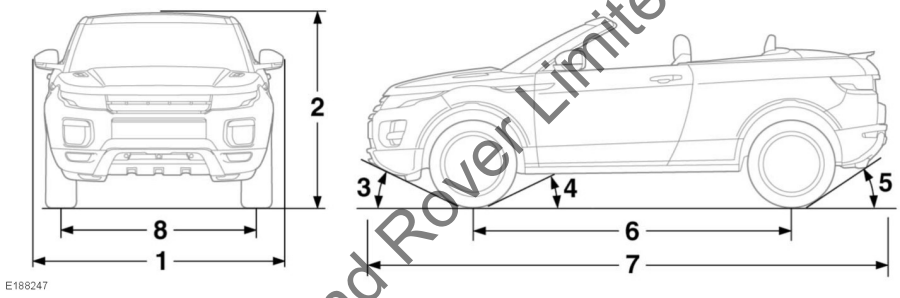
[2] This figure includes the weight of the roof rack.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

DIMENSIONS



E177735



E188247

Item	Description	Variant	(mm)	Degrees
1	Overall width including mirrors	Coupe	2 085	-
		5 door	2 090	-
		Convertible	2 085	-
	Overall width with mirrors folded	Coupe	1 985	-
		5 door	1 985	-
		Convertible	1 980	-
2	Height	Coupe	1 605	-
		5 door	1 635	-
		Convertible	1 609	-
	Height with roof rails	Coupe	1 610	-
		5 door	1 640	-

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Technical specifications

Item	Description	Variant	(mm)	Degrees
3	Approach angle	5 door and Coupe	-	25°
		Convertible	-	19°
4	Breakover angle	All vehicles	-	22°
	Breakover angle - 17'' wheels	Convertible	-	18.9°
	Breakover angle - 18'' wheels	Convertible	-	19.6°
	Breakover angle - 19'' wheels	Convertible	-	19.7°
	Breakover angle - 20'' wheels	Convertible	-	19.1°
5	Departure angle	Coupe	-	33°
		5 door	-	30°
		5 door with detachable tow ball	-	22°
		Convertible	-	31°
6	Wheelbase	All vehicles	2 660	-
7	Length	All vehicles	4 370	-
8	Track (front)	All vehicles	1 621	-
	Track (rear)	All vehicles	1 629	-
-	Maximum wading depth Note: Maximum wading speed is 7 km/h (4 mph)	All vehicles	500	-
-	Minimum ground clearance	All vehicles	212	-
-	Turning circle (wall to wall)	All vehicles	11.58 m	-

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

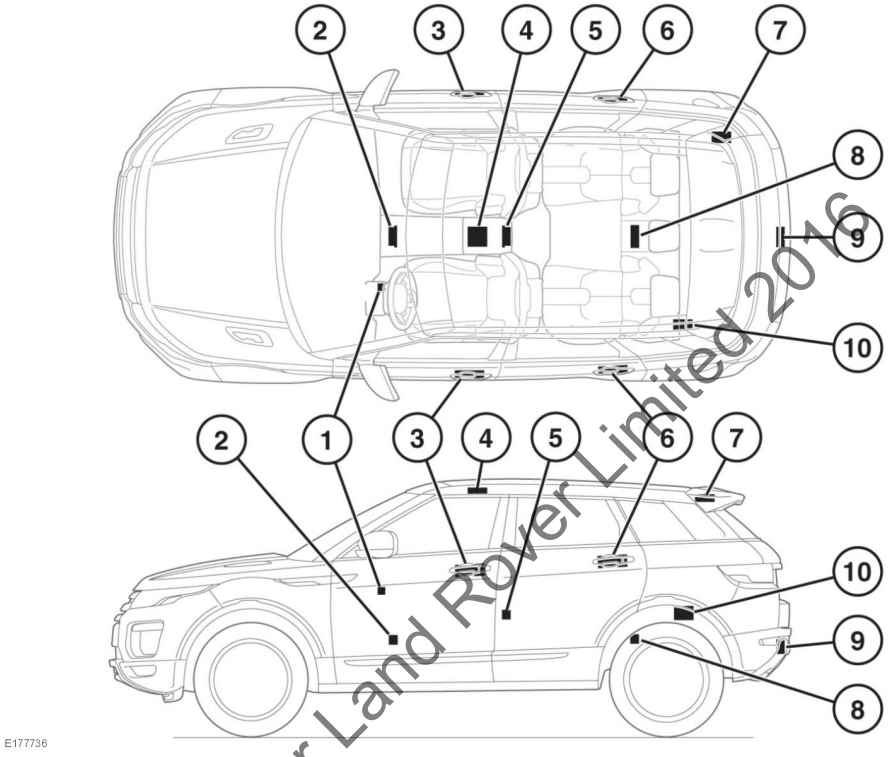
SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS

⚠ **Any person fitted with an implanted medical device (e.g., a pacemaker) should make sure the device is kept at a distance of at least 22 cm away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device.**

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Technical specifications

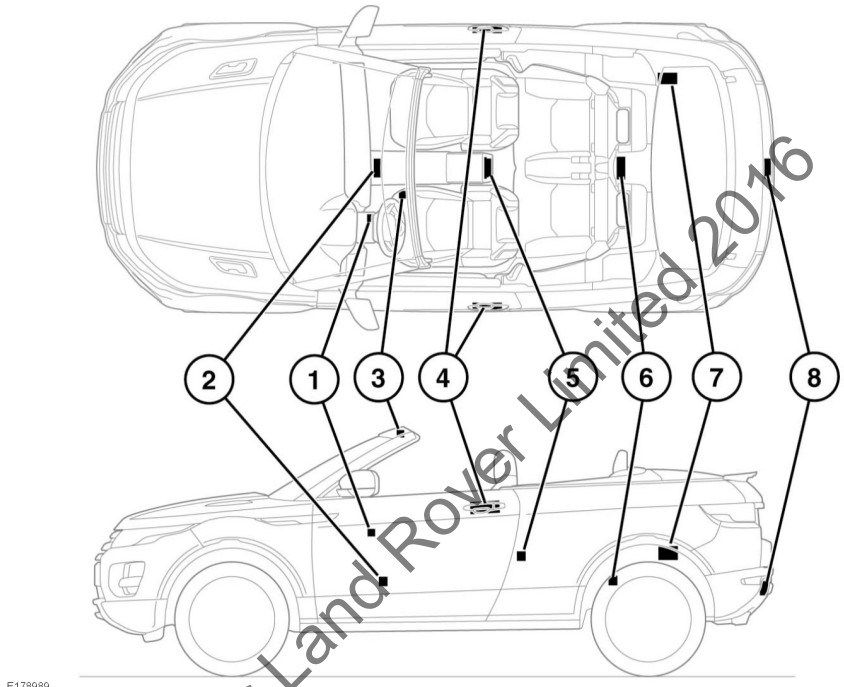
5 door and coupe



1. Steering column transmitter.
2. Front cockpit transmitter.
3. Front exterior door handle transmitters.
4. Keyless receiver.
5. Centre console transmitter.
6. Rear exterior door handle transmitters.
7. Luggage compartment transmitter.
8. Rear floor transmitter.
9. Rear bumper transmitter.
10. Keyless start module.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Convertible



1. Steering column transmitter.
2. Front cockpit transmitter.
3. Keyless receiver.
4. Exterior door handle transmitters.
5. Centre console transmitter.
6. Rear floor transmitter.
7. Luggage compartment transmitter.
8. Rear bumper transmitter.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATION STATEMENTS

Service	Frequency Band	Max. Output	Antenna Position	Specific Conditions
4m VHF	70 - 85 MHz	30 W/CW 40 W/AM	Anywhere close to the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
2m VHF	142 - 175 MHz	30 W/CW 40 W/AM	Anywhere close to the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
TETRA	380 - 422 MHz	10 W/CW 10 W/PM	Anywhere close to the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
UHF	450 - 470 MHz	10 W/CW	Anywhere close to the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
Bluetooth	2 400 - 2 483.5 MHz	10 mW	Anywhere on the vehicle.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Service	Frequency Band	Max. Output	Antenna Position	Specific Conditions
Road Telematics	5 795 - 5 815 MHz	2 W eirp	Anywhere close to a glazed area that does not contain antennas or conductive glass.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
Road Telematics	63 - 64 GHz	2 W eirp	Anywhere close to a glazed area that does not contain antennas or conductive glass.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.

South Korea only

Omnidirectional transmission or point-to-multipoint transmission is prohibited according to the law.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

ARRANGING A SERVICE

To make sure that the vehicle remains in first class order, visits to a retailer/ authorised repairer are required for routine servicing.

To help smooth this process:

- Arrange an appointment, unless it is an emergency. Give details of the vehicle and the nature of the work required. Where available, the retailer reviews the Online Service History (OSH) to determine the service required.

After arriving at the servicing premises:

- Give your name and address, and a telephone number where you can be contacted during the day. This is important if queries arise or additional work is found to be necessary.
- Explain as fully as possible, the details of the service or repair required.

For information, it is also important to:

- Enquire whether the service or repair is chargeable and, if so, ask for details of any costs and confirm the preferred method of payment.
- Establish when the vehicle will be ready for collection. Alternatively, arrange a time and place for it to be delivered.

Note: *Make sure that the retailer provides a copy of the latest OSH printout when the vehicle is returned. For markets where OSH is unavailable, make sure the appropriate pages of the Service Record are correctly completed.*

SAFETY-RELATED DEFECTS (AUSTRALIA ONLY)

Motor manufacturers and distributors are bound by the uniform code of practice for the recall of motor vehicles and/or parts. They will check and repair, free of charge, any vehicles which are found to have a possible safety related defect.

Jaguar Land Rover takes scrupulous care in making its vehicles safe for our roads. The chances of the vehicle being subject to a safety defect recall during its life are small.

However, should such an event occur that affects the model purchased, it is in best interest to adhere to the advice given in any letter received from us. This may involve a retailer carrying out a check on the vehicle. Contact a retailer and arrange an appointment as speedily as possible.

The retailer records the reference details of any work carried out on a decal. The decal is then affixed to the right-side, front A pillar which forms part of the surround for the right-side front door aperture. Once fixed this label must not be removed.

ONLINE SERVICE HISTORY (OSH)

The Online Service History (OSH) system has been introduced to completely replace the stamping of 'Service Record' pages in owner literature. A vehicle's service history is now stored on a centralised system, which can be accessed and amended by a retailer/authorised repairer via the internet.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

OSH records every scheduled service event, and includes all those items that need to be inspected, or replaced, over extended periods.

It is important to keep to the recommended service intervals to help protect the on-going validity of the manufacturer's warranty. An up-to-date OSH provides the necessary 'proof of service' should any warranty work be required.

After each scheduled and extended service visit, the retailer/authorised repairer updates the OSH for the vehicle. A printed copy of the complete record is also provided as proof that the required service has been performed.

As the OSH is securely stored for the life of the vehicle. The OSH can be viewed online, at anytime. It helps to enhance the vehicle's resale value and each subsequent owner will be able to obtain a service history they can trust. Any retailer/authorised repairer can produce an up-to-date OSH printout for the vehicle. The printout also contains details of how to register and view the vehicle's OSH.

If you have any questions regarding the OSH system, please contact your retailer/authorised repairer or the Land Rover distributor for the market. The distributor may also be contacted through the Land Rover internet site.

Note: *OSH is not available in all markets. For these markets, a Service Record publication is provided. See* ***358, SERVICE RECORD****.*

SERVICE REQUIREMENTS

Routine services must be carried out throughout the life of the vehicle.

Some vehicles have a service interval indicator in the instrument panel. When a service is required, an appropriate message is displayed when the ignition is switched on. Depending on the type and style of driving that the vehicle is subjected to, the indicator may display a service message at a shorter distance than shown in the service interval plans.

Service intervals shown in the plans are only nominal. The vehicle's message centre displays actual distances to the next service. On completion of a service, the message centre countdown feature is reset.

Not all markets have the service interval indicator activated. In these markets, the relevant service interval plan should be used as the guide to regular servicing. Services must be carried out at the distance or time-based interval, whichever occurs first, shown in the relevant service interval plan. The servicing schedules for arduous operating conditions are not displayed in the message centre.

SERVICE CONTENT

The precise content of each service varies from model to model and also according to the age of the vehicle, the distance it has travelled, and whether an arduous service is applicable. The service operations applicable to the vehicle are listed on the maintenance check sheet used by the retailer/authorised repairer.

Note: *Some service providers may use their own check sheet with differing levels of service operations. Usually the highest level matches Jaguar Land Rover Limited requirements.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

FLUID REPLACEMENT

Brake fluid and engine coolant (antifreeze and water solution) must be completely replaced at specific intervals. The retailer/authorised repairer replaces the fluids at the appropriate scheduled service.

Note: *Replacement of fluids is subject to extra labour and material costs.*

Some brake system components may also need to be replaced. The intervals are significantly longer than those in the interval plan and are indicated on the maintenance check sheet.

ARMOURED VEHICLES

Armoured vehicles require servicing every 13 000 km or 6 months.

ARDUOUS OPERATING CONDITIONS

When a vehicle is used in arduous conditions, more frequent attention must be paid to servicing requirements. Even daily attention may be necessary to make sure that continued safe and reliable operation of the vehicle is maintained.

Failure to adhere to the recommended service schedules may result in premature engine wear or damage and may invalidate the warranty.

Some markets may have unique service requirements. Check with a retailer/authorised repairer or importer.

Arduous operating conditions include:

- Driving in dusty and/or sandy conditions.
- Driving on rough and/or muddy roads.
- Frequent wading.
- Frequent driving at high speeds in high ambient temperatures above 50°C.
- Frequent driving in severe cold weather below -40°C.
- Frequent driving in mountainous conditions.
- Frequent trailer towing.
- Driving in areas using road salt or other corrosive materials on the driving surface.

Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice.

SERVICE RECORD

For markets where an Online Service History (OSH) is unavailable, the Service Record publication provides a record of the routine services carried out on the vehicle.

The information is important and could affect warranty entitlement. Always make sure that the appropriate record slip is stamped and signed on completion of each service.

REPLACEMENT SERVICE RECORD

If the Service Record book is lost, and an Online Service History (OSH) is not available, a replacement publication can be ordered via the Internet at:

www.landroverliterature.com or from a retailer/authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

The replacement book is visibly different to the original version. The front cover and title page have the revised title. Page 2 explains why the replacement version is being used. Each internal page displays the caption **REPLACEMENT**. To counteract fraudulent attempts to recreate a vehicle's service history, original style books are not available for purchase.

Remember to transfer the details recorded on the **Vehicle Details** page, to the replacement book.

SERVICE INTERVAL PLAN

References **A** and **B** in the interval plans, relate to the type of service required at that distance/time.

SERVICE INTERVAL PLAN 1 - 17 MODEL YEAR ONWARDS

Applies to the following countries: **Andorra, Australia, Austria, Belgium, Botswana, Brunei, Bulgaria, Canaries, Croatia, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Gibraltar, Gran Canaria, Greece, Greenland, Hong Kong, Hungary, Iceland, Indonesia[1], Ireland, Israel, Italy, Korea (South), Latvia, Liechtenstein, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Macau, Macedonia, Malta, Mexico, Moldova, Monaco, Namibia, Netherlands, Netherlands Antilles, New Caledonia, New Zealand, Norway, Philippines, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Serbia, Singapore, Slovakia, Slovenia, South Africa, Spain (mainland), Sweden, Switzerland, Tahiti, Taiwan, Thailand, Turkey, United Kingdom.** **[1] All diesel engines require servicing at 13 000 km or 12 months intervals.*** **Petrol 2.0L**	**Diesel 2.0L (except 2 Wheel Drive (2WD))**	**Diesel 2.0L - 2WD**
A Service 16 000 km or 12 months.*	**A Service** 34 000 km or 24 months.*	**A Service** 26 000 km or 12 months.*
B Service 16 000 km or 12 months* after the previous **A Service**.	**B Service** 34 000 km or 24 months* after the previous **A Service**.	**B Service** 26 000 km or 12 months* after the previous **A Service**.
A Service 16 000 km or 12 months* after the previous **B Service**.	**A Service** 34 000 km or 24 months* after the previous **B Service**.	**A Service** 26 000 km or 12 months* after the previous **B Service**.
Repeat sequence from the first **B Service**. *whichever occurs first.		

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

SERVICE INTERVAL PLAN 2 - 17 MODEL YEAR ONWARDS

Applies to the following countries: **Afghanistan, Albania, Algeria, Angola, Anguilla, Antigua and Barbuda, Argentina, Armenia, Aruba, Azerbaijan, Bahamas, Bahrain, Bangladesh, Barbados, Belarus, Belize, Benin, Bermuda, Bhutan, Bolivia, Bosnia and Herzegovina, British Virgin Islands, Burkina Faso, Cambodia, Cameroon, Cape Verde, Cayman Islands, Central African Republic, Chad, Chile, Colombia, Costa Rica, Cote d'Ivoire, Cuba, Djibouti, Dominica, Dominican Republic, East Timor, Ecuador, Egypt[1], El Salvador, Equatorial Guinea, Eritrea, Ethiopia, Falkland Islands, Fiji, Gabon, Gambia, Georgia, Ghana, Grenada, Guadeloupe, Guatemala, Guinea (Conakry), Guinea-Bissau, Guyana, Haiti, Honduras, India, Iran[1], Iraq[1], Jamaica, Jordan, Kazakhstan, Kenya[1], Kosovo, Kuwait, Kyrgyzstan, Laos, Lebanon, Liberia, Libya, Madagascar, Malawi, Malaysia, Mali, Martinique, Mauritius, Mayotte, Mongolia, Montenegro, Montserrat, Morocco, Mozambique, Myanmar (Burma), Nepal, Nicaragua, Niger, Nigeria, Oman, Pakistan[1], Palau, Palestine, Panama, Papua New Guinea, Paraguay, Peru, Qatar, Reunion, Russia, Rwanda, Saint Barthelemy, Saint Helena, Saint Kitts and Nevis, Saint Lucia, Saint Pierre and Miquelon, Saint Vincent and the Grenadines, Saudi Arabia, Senegal, Seychelles, Sierra Leone, Somalia, Sri Lanka, Sudan, Suriname, Syria[1], Tanzania, Trinidad and Tobago, Tunisia, Turks and Caicos Islands, Tuvalu, Uganda, Ukraine, United Arab Emirates, Uruguay, Uzbekistan, Venezuela, Vietnam, Yemen, Zambia, Zimbabwe.** **[1] All diesel engines require servicing at 6 500 km or 6 months intervals.***
All engines
A Service 13 000 km or 12 months.*
B Service 13 000 km or 12 months* after the previous **A Service**.
A Service 13 000 km or 12 months* after the previous **B Service**.
Repeat sequence from the first **B Service**. *whichever occurs first.

Note: *More frequent oil change services are recommended for vehicles operated in arduous conditions.*

END OF LIFE VEHICLE (ELV)

Within certain markets, Jaguar Land Rover has established a comprehensive plan to meet vehicle recycling requirements and End of Life Vehicle (ELV) legislation.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

In accordance with applicable market directives and local legislation, Jaguar Land Rover takes back all on-sale vehicles and vehicle starter batteries, regardless of the date of a vehicle's first registration, at the end of their life. Items taken back are treated in an environmentally responsible manner.

To locate the nearest take back or recycling facility, and for information on terms and conditions, consult a retailer. Alternatively, visit: **www.landrover.com**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

OWNER'S RESPONSIBILITIES

Proper maintenance and use guard against major repair expenses.

Make sure to present the vehicle to an authorised repairer for any warranty repair as soon as possible after a defect is detected. This minimises the effect a defect has on the vehicle and the nature of the repair needed.

Make sure all documentation for completed maintenance or service works are retained with the vehicle.

DATA PROTECTION STATEMENT

Jaguar Land Rover Limited respects the privacy of every individual. Information collected about you will be used to satisfy requests made by you, to fulfil contracts you have entered into, to inform you about new products and services, or to improve how we may serve you as a valued customer. The information will be treated in accordance with applicable data protection laws and the European Union EC Directive 95/46/EC. Information may be shared with Jaguar Land Rover and its affiliated or associated companies, its authorised retailers and repairers, agencies, and other companies providing services for your benefit.

We will not disclose your information to third parties, except as described above and as may be required by law. Should this happen, we will take steps to make sure that any third party companies who handle your information, comply with the relevant data protection laws. We may share generalised information about your behaviour patterns with partners or other parties on an anonymous basis and in such a way that neither you nor any individual customer can be identified.

Any personal information that you supply to Jaguar Land Rover Limited or its authorised retailers or repairers, will be held in encrypted electronic format on a secure computer server, to prevent unauthorised access by other people. We aim to make sure that the personal data stored will be up to date, relevant and not excessive, and that information is not retained longer than is necessary.

You have the right, at any time, to see what is held about you and to correct any inaccuracies or to withdraw from receiving any further communications from Jaguar Land Rover Limited and its affiliated or associated companies. Should you wish to do this, please contact a local retailer or (if different) the retailer from which the vehicle was purchased.

QUALITY CHECKS

The vehicle has been quality checked throughout every stage of the manufacturing process. The final check was made by dedicated inspectors to make sure that the vehicle was built to the level of excellence required by Jaguar Land Rover Limited.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

WARRANTY AND CONSUMER LAW

This warranty is a manufacturer's supplementary warranty. It does not affect your legal rights under the vehicle purchase agreement with your selling authorised retailer. Nor does it affect your legal rights under applicable national legislation governing the sale of consumer goods.

Obtaining Warranty Assistance

Should the vehicle ever require attention under the warranty arrangements, simply contact the nearest authorised repairer.

Transfer of Warranty

Warranty benefits continue to apply regardless of any change of ownership.

WARRANTY COVER WHEN TOURING

Jaguar Land Rover Limited has a comprehensive service network in most parts of the world. Any authorised repairer can carry out repairs under the Jaguar Land Rover warranty.

MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY

Should any part of the vehicle require repair or replacement as a result of a manufacturing defect, the part will be repaired or replaced completely free of charge by any Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer, regardless of any change of vehicle ownership during the period of cover.

MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY TERMS

Warranty Terms: 3 years or if sooner the applicable mileage limitations applying in certain markets. A retailer can advise.

In all cases of warranty repair carried out by a Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer, genuine Jaguar Land Rover parts will be used. Any displaced parts become the property of Jaguar Land Rover Limited.

Note: *Market legislation may overrule this.*

All parts fitted during warranty repairs are covered for the balance of the original warranty period.

Note: *Tyres are covered separately by the tyre manufacturer. A Jaguar Land Rover authorised retailer will, however, assist with any tyre issue.*

PAINT SURFACE WARRANTY

Should the paint surface of the vehicle body require attention due to a defect in material or applications, any necessary repairs will be performed completely free of charge by any Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer, regardless of any change in vehicle ownership during the period of cover.

Warranty Terms: as per the manufacturer's warranty but with no distance limitation.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

CORROSION PROTECTION WARRANTY

Should any part of the bodywork of the vehicle be perforated by rust corrosion, the panel(s) affected by the perforation will be repaired or replaced by any Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer, completely free of charge, regardless of any change in vehicle ownership.

Warranty Terms: 6 years, unlimited distance.

Note: *The term perforation means a hole that penetrates through the bodywork, caused by corrosion from the inside to the outside or from the underside to the upper side, as a result of faulty manufacture or materials. For the purpose of this warranty, the term bodywork, is defined as metal panels, including doors, bonnet, engine and boot compartments, wings, sills, scuttles, roof, floor panel, frames and chassis members, but excluding attachments such as bright trim, bumpers, mouldings, hinges, and road wheels.*

PARTS AND ACCESSORIES WARRANTY

There is a separate parts warranty for genuine Jaguar Land Rover parts and accessories purchased. Should any genuine part or accessory require repair or replacement as a result of a material or manufacturing defect, the part or accessory will be repaired or replaced completely free of charge by any authorised retailer/repairer.

Where the part or accessory is being repaired or replaced under the terms of this warranty by an authorised retailer/repairer, no labour charge will be made for such repair or replacement. However, where the work is carried out by anyone other than an authorised retailer/repairer, no contribution will be made to labour charges.

Note: *Genuine parts and accessories have been specifically designed to comply with Jaguar Land Rover safety and reliability standards. We, therefore, recommend that only genuine parts and accessories are used on the vehicle. Please be advised that non-genuine parts and accessories have neither been tested or approved by Jaguar Land Rover, and that, in spite of constant observation of the market, Jaguar Land Rover cannot evaluate their suitability and safety, neither isolated or when fitted to our vehicles.*

Duration of the Genuine Jaguar Land Rover Parts and Accessories Warranty

The warranty commences on the date of delivery of the part or vehicle accessory and is applicable for a period of 12 months or as per agreed local market legislation or the stated service life of the part or vehicle accessory, whichever occurs later. All parts or vehicle accessories fitted during warranty repairs are covered for the balance of the original warranty period.

Note: *Genuine Jaguar Land Rover batteries are covered by a 3 year, unlimited distance warranty.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

ACCESSORIES FITTED TO A NEW VEHICLE

Genuine Jaguar Land Rover Accessories, excluding gift items, fitted by an authorised retailer within 1 month or 1 600 km, whichever occurs first, of the vehicle entering service for the first time, will benefit from the same warranty terms and period of cover as the manufacturer's warranty.

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTY

Jaguar Land Rover Limited warrants that its vehicles are designed, built, and equipped, so as to conform at the time of sale, with all emission standards applicable at the time of manufacture, and are free from defects in materials and workmanship that could cause them not to meet those standards.

During the emission control system warranty period, if the failure of any part covered by this emission control system warranty is not the result of a lack of maintenance or of misuse of the vehicle, it will be repaired, replaced, or adjusted without charge.

A retailer can advise warranty terms.

ACCIDENT DAMAGE REPAIR

In the event of the vehicle requiring body repairs due to accident damage, a Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer will make sure all repairs are carried out by a Jaguar Land Rover approved body repair centre, using only Genuine Jaguar Land Rover approved parts, materials and repair techniques. Making sure that warranty cover continues on the repaired body sections for the remaining period of the corrosion protection warranty.

ALUMINIUM BODY REPAIRS

Some models incorporate the latest technology in aluminium body structure.

Specialist vehicle body and paint centres are provided with full technical support from Jaguar Land Rover.

The body and paint centres operate to high standards and have all the necessary tools and equipment essential to repair Jaguar Land Rover vehicles.

WHAT IS NOT COVERED BY THE MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY TERMS?

Jaguar Land Rover Limited offers no warranty and is **not** responsible for any repair or replacement to the vehicle, part or accessory that is required as a direct result of:

- Any modification to the vehicle, components, parts, or accessories, including any engine performance enhancement modifications, in particular, chip tuning, which are not authorised by Jaguar Land Rover Limited.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Warranty

- Normal wear and tear. Includes brake pads, brake discs, and any other friction related components. The list is not exhaustive.
- Defects or damage caused as a result of the vehicle being used in motor sport events, or for any purpose other than normal, private, or commercial use.
- Damage resulting from neglect, accident, flooding, or improper use or fitting.
- Damage due to the failure of another part on the vehicle.
- Damage caused during maintenance.
- Failure to properly maintain the vehicle, part, or accessory, in accordance with Jaguar Land Rover maintenance schedules and service instructions.
- Failure to use Jaguar Land Rover specified parts, oils, lubricants, or fluids during a warranty repair, or parts of equivalent quality during an authorised retailer repair.

  Note: *Failure to use oils, lubricants, or fluids of the correct specification may result in mechanical failure and refusal by Jaguar Land Rover to pay for any resultant claims.*
- The part or vehicle accessory covered by the parts warranty is damaged due to the failure of another part on the vehicle, except manufacturing defect.
- Failure of a non-approved part and/or the failure or misuse of a product or accessory not recommended by Jaguar Land Rover. Additionally, any consequential damage caused by the fitment or use of such parts, products, or accessories will not be covered by the Jaguar Land Rover vehicle or parts warranties.
- Any vehicle that has had its Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) altered or removed, or on which the odometer reading has been unlawfully changed.
- Refilling or topping up with the incorrect fuel, e.g., petrol used instead of diesel (or vice versa). Or consequential damage from misfuelling.
- The vehicle, part, or accessory having been altered from Jaguar Land Rover specifications.
- Use of fuel specifications or alternative fuels which are not approved by Jaguar Land Rover for the vehicle.
- Use of supplemental additives and flushing agents for fuel or engine oil, unless specified as part of a Jaguar Land Rover service requirement.
- The vehicle, as manufactured, does not meet the operational specification of a market for which it was not specified, including any legal requirements or penalties imposed by Government or other authority.
- The effects of any vehicle modifications undertaken to comply with legal or local requirements of a market for which it was not specified, unless authorised by Jaguar Land Rover Limited.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Note: *Where applicable, a Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer may, at the customer's expense, carry out authorised modifications to meet legal or operational requirements of a market.*

WHAT IS NOT COVERED BY THE PAINT SURFACE WARRANTY AND CORROSION PROTECTION WARRANTY?

Jaguar Land Rover Limited is **not** responsible for any repair or replacement that is required as a direct result of the following:

- Failure to properly maintain paint and bodywork by regular cleaning in accordance with Jaguar Land Rover Limited instructions.
- Failure to promptly rectify any paint or corrosion damage.
- Factors that are beyond the control of Jaguar Land Rover Limited, such as environmental hazards, including salt, industrial fall-out, storm damage, acid rain, bird droppings and also damage, including stone chips, scratches, and use of unsuitable cleaning agents.
- Accident repairs using materials or methods of repair that have not been approved by Jaguar Land Rover Limited.
- Alterations of the vehicle from Jaguar Land Rover original specification.

WHAT IS NOT COVERED BY SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS?

During a normal scheduled service or maintenance operation, consumable items which are subject to adjustment or replacement are **not** covered by the warranty, unless work is required as a direct result of a manufacturing defect.

Parts that fall into this category for all models are:

- Lubricants.
- Oil filter.
- Fuel filter.
- Air filter.
- Pollen filter (where applicable).
- Drive belts.
- Spark plugs (petrol engines only).
- Smart key batteries. Not all models. Please check with an authorised retailer/repairer.

Note: *The Jaguar Land Rover warranty applies up to the first scheduled service change point of the particular item. The period of cover for any item will not exceed the time and mileage limitation of the manufacturer's warranty.*

Repair, replacements, and adjustments up to the first scheduled service

Some parts that require repair, replacement, or adjustment, are recognised as having a limited service life. Such parts are warranted against manufacturing defects for a period of up to and including the first scheduled service or 12 months, whichever occurs first.

Parts and adjustments that fall into this category for all models are:

- Wiper blades.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

- Smart key batteries. Check with an authorised retailer/repairer.
- All light bulbs, interior and exterior. Except for, xenon headlight bulbs and fascia and instrumentation illumination, which are covered for the full duration of the manufacturer's warranty.
- Adjustments, including but not limited to: headlight and hinged panel adjustments, suspension tightening, steering geometry adjustments, emission and fuel system checks, lubrication and Electric Parking Brake (EPB) cable adjustments, wheel alignment, and wheel balancing.

Note: *Brake pads, brake discs, and any other friction related components are covered against manufacturing defects for the duration of the manufacturer's warranty.*

OTHER EXCLUSIONS

Jaguar Land Rover warranties exclude liability for any lost time, inconvenience, loss of transportation, or any other incidental or consequential damage that you (or anyone else) may incur as a result of a defect covered by the warranties.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

The roadside assistance programme provides assistance in motoring emergencies, from immobilisation due to breakdown or accident, to minor emergencies such as punctures. The benefits of the roadside assistance programme are available throughout the Manufacturer's Warranty period.

Contact Numbers

To contact Land Rover Assistance, call the number corresponding to the country where the vehicle was first registered:

Country	Phone number
Australia.	1800 819 181.
Austria.	0800 500 806. If outside Austria +43 1 503 0 806.
Bahrain.	800 00212. If outside Bahrain +9714 331 1130.
Belarus.	882000 718081.
Belgium.	0800 92 291. If outside Belgium +32 3 253 6045.
Croatia.	0800 1002. If outside Croatia +385 1 4693 791.
Czech Republic.	+420 261 000 557.
Denmark.	+45 70 266 566.
Egypt.	0800 755 5555. If outside Egypt +9714 331 1130.
Estonia.	+372 69 79 163.
Finland.	+358 800 13 700.
France.	+33 1 70 94 11 11.

Country	Phone number
Germany.	00800 15263 76837. If outside Germany +49 89 7676 3498.
Gibraltar.	900 314 195. If outside Gibraltar +34 915 949 383.
Greece.	+30 210 60 68 833.
Hungary.	+36 1 345 1754.
India.	1800 103 8545.
Italy.	800 557 999. If outside Italy +39 02 58 286 768.
Jordan.	0777 777 313. If outside Jordan +9714 331 1130.
Kazakhstan.	8800 2008081.
Korea (South).	080 337 9696.
Kuwait.	222 462 17. If outside Kuwait +9714 331 1130.
Latvia.	+371 67 11 22 10.
Lebanon.	(01) 806 690. If outside Lebanon +9714 331 1130.
Lithuania.	+370 52 499 006.
Luxembourg.	+32 3 253 6045.
Morocco.	0801 003 738. If outside Morocco +9714 331 1130.
Netherlands.	0800 555 0777. If outside Netherlands +31 592 390 558.
Norway.	+47 22 65 12 00.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Roadside assistance

Country	Phone number
Oman.	800 73636. If outside Oman +9714 331 1130.
Poland.	0801 777 980. If outside Poland +48 61 83 19 980.
Portugal.	+351 219 429 116.
Qatar.	44 607 550. If outside Qatar +9714 331 1130.
Republic Of Ireland (R.O.I).	1 800 456 999. If outside R.O.I +353 1 617 9560.
Romania.	+40 21 322 7535.
Russia.	8800 2008081. If outside Russia +74957 778536.
Saudi Arabia.	800 897 1431. If outside Saudi Arabia +9714 331 1130.
Slovakia.	+421 2 492 05 971.
Slovenia.	080 1 457. If outside Slovenia +386 1 5305 357.
Spain.	900 314 195. If outside Spain +34 915 949 383.
Sweden.	+46 771 99 54 00.
Switzerland.	+41 62 788 85 31.
Tunisia.	79 399 007. If outside Tunisia +9714 331 1130.
Ukraine.	+380 44 494 2951.
United Arab Emirates (UAE).	800 4647. If outside UAE +9714 331 1130.
United Kingdom.	0800 521 786. If outside UK +44 1926 320 003.
US Diplomatic and Military vehicles in Europe.	If inside Germany 0800 526 7687. If outside Germany +49 89 7413285 427.

Please have the following information to hand:

- Name.
- Location.
- Registration number or Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).
- A brief description of the incident.
- A contact telephone number.

If the vehicle has been involved in a road traffic accident, describe the extent of the damage and provide details of any third parties involved.

GENERAL CONDITIONS

Financial limitations may apply in some cases. Please refer to the owner section of **www.landrover.com** for further details.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

The participating countries in Europe are: Andorra, Austria, Belgium, Croatia, Czech Republic, Denmark (excluding the Faeroe Islands), Estonia, Finland (excluding Aland), France, Germany, Gibraltar, Greece, Hungary, Italy, Latvia, Liechtenstein, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Monaco, Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Republic of Ireland, San Marino, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain (including the Balearic Islands and Canary Islands), Sweden, Switzerland, and Turkey.

The participating countries in Middle East and North Africa (MENA) are: Bahrain, Egypt, Jordan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Morocco, Oman, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, Tunisia, and United Arab Emirates.

All calls to Land Rover Assistance are recorded to assist in confirming details of calls that may be incomplete or unclear. Recordings may be used for training purposes.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Type approval

DECLARATIONS OF CONFORMITY

The following information is correct at the time of print. The digital handbook can be viewed at: **www.ownerinfo.landrover.com** and is updated with the latest available information.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

E150388

SIEMENS VDO
Automotive

SiemensVDO Automotive AG „P.O. Box 10 09 43 „D-93009 Regensburg

Name	Dagmar Kolar
Department	SV C TS RBG EMC-Laboratory
Tel.	+49(0)941/790-6699
Fax	+49(0)941/790-136699
E-Mail	dagmar.kolar@siemens.com
Internet	www.siemensvdo.de
Our Ref.	Doc_5WK49096.doc
Date	03/08/2005

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer:	Siemens VDO Automotive AG Body & Chassis Electronics
Address:	Dep. SV C BC P2 RF TG Siemenstrasse 12 D-93049 Regensburg Germany
Product type designation:	5WK4 9096
Intended use:	Radio frequency receiver used in vehicle locking/unlocking systems

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to §3.1.a:	*Applied standard(s):* EN 60950:2000
Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b:	*Applied standard(s):* EN 301 489-1,-3: V1.4.1 (2002-08)
Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2:	*Applied standard(s):* EN 300 220-1: V1.3.1 (2000-09)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Siemens VDO Automotive AG

Regensburg, 2005-08-03

i. V.
Jean-Francois Tarabbia
Executive Vice President
Body and Chassis Electronics Operations

i.V.
Dr. Martin Fischer
Vice President
Wireless Products and Modules

SiemensVDO Automotive AG Body & Chassis Electronics

Helmut Matschi
Klaus Müller

Postal Address:
SiemensVDO Automotive AG
P.O. Box 10 09 43
D-93009 Regensburg

Office Address:
Siemenstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Tel. +49(0)941/790-0

SiemensVDO Automotive AG „Chairman of the Supervisory Board: Edward G. Krubasik „Managing Board: Franz Wressnig, Chairman „Members: Klaus Egger, Günter Hauptmann, Johann Löttner „Registered Office: München „Commercial Registry: München, HRB 132637

SIEMENS VDO
Automotive

SiemensVDO Automotive AG „P.O. Box 10 09 43 „D-93009 Regensburg

Name	Dagmar Kolar
Department	SV C TS RBG EMC Laboratory
Tel.	+49(0)941/790-6699
Fax	+49(0)941/790-1366999
E-Mail	dagmar.kolar@siemens.com
Internet	www.siemensvdo.de
Our Ref.	Doc_S122780002.doc
Date.	09/11/2005

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer:	Siemens VDO Automotive AG Body & Chassis Electronics
Address:	Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany
Product type designation:	S122780002
Intended use:	Radio frequency transmitter used Tire Pressure Monitoring system

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to §3.1.a:	*Applied standard(s):* EN 60950: 2000
Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b:	*Applied standard(s):* EN 301 489 -1,-3: V1.4.1 (2002-08)
Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2:	*Applied standard(s):* EN 300 220 -1: V1.3.1 (2000-09)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Siemens VDO Automotive AG

Regensburg, 2005-11-09

i. V.
Jean-Francois Tarabbia
Executive Vice President
Body and Chassis Electronics Operations

i.V.
Dr. Martin Fischer
Vice President
Wireless Products and Modules

SiemensVDO Automotive AG Body & Chassis Electronics

Helmut Matschi
Klaus Müller

Postal Address:
SiemensVDO Automotive AG
P.O. Box 10 09 43
D-93009 Regensburg

Office Address:
Siemensstraße 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Tel. +49(0)941/790-0

SiemensVDO Automotive AG „Chairman of the Supervisory Board: Edward G. Krubasik „Managing Board: Franz Wressnig, Chairman „Members: Klaus Egger, Günter Hauptmann, Johann Löttner „Registered Office: München „Commercial Registry: München, HRB 132637

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

E150389

LEAR CORPORATION
ADVANCE RELENTLESSLY

Lear Corporation

Electronics Systems Division
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, MI 48033-4248
USA

Phone (248) 447-1500

Date: February 6, 2009

INFORMATION TO BE INCLUDED IN THE END USER'S MANUAL

The following information must be included in the end product user's manual to ensure continued FCC and Industry Canada regulatory compliance. The ID numbers must be included in the manual if the device label is not readily accessible to the end user. The compliance paragraphs below must be included in the user's manual.

The following user's manual statements are provided by Lear Corporation to Jaguar Land Rover electronically after certification.

Key fobs

Land Rover, Range Rover,

****

FCC ID: KOBJTF10A (Range Rover, Land Rover)
FCC ID: KOBJTF10B (Jaguar)
IC: 3521A-JTF10A (Range Rover, Land Rover)
IC: 3521A-JTF10B (Jaguar)
Model #: AH42-15K601A (Range Rover)
Model #: AH22-15K601A (Land Rover)
Model #: AW93-15K601A (Jaguar)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

****

LEAR CORPORATION
ADVANCE RELENTLESSLY

Lear Corporation

Electronics Systems Division
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, MI 48033-4248
USA

Phone (248) 447-1500

RKE Receiver

Land Rover, Range Rover, Jaguar

****

FCC ID: KOBJLR09A
IC: 3521-JLR09A
Model #: AH42-15K602-A

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

****

Passive Entry / Passive Start Module

Land Rover, Range Rover, Jaguar

****

FCC ID: KOBJBG10A
IC: 3521-JBG10A
Model #: AH22-19H440 (PEPS)
Model #: AH42-19H440 (Passive Start ONLY)

FCC ID: KOBJBG10B
IC: 3521-JBG10B
Model #: AH22-19H440 (PEPS)
Model #: AH42-19H440 (Passive Start ONLY)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

E150390

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive.	1999/5/EC
Manufacturer:	Lear Corporation
Type Designation / FCC ID:	KOBJBG10B
Model Numbers:	5E0770257, 5E0770357, 19H440, AH22-19H440, AH42-19H440, AH22-19H440-AD, AH42-19H440-AE
Description / Intended Use:	Remote Function Actuator (RFA), passive keyless entry and start system low frequency initiator
Trademarks.	Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar
Applied Standards.	European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC ETSI EN 60950 ETSI EN 300 330 CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03 AS/NZS 4268 FCC Regulations 47 CFR Part 15
Responsible Person:	Kevin Cotton Lear Corporation 21557 Telegraph Road Southfield, Michigan 48033 United States of America

Hereby, **Lear Corporation** declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of **Directive 1999/5/EC**, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to **Directive 1999/5/EC**

Signed. Kevin Cotton
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date. **27 March 2009**

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive.	1999/5/EC
Manufacturer.	Lear Corporation
Type Designation / FCC ID.	KOBJBG10A
Model Numbers:	5E0770237, 5E0770337, 19H440, AH22-19H440-AC, AH42-19H440-AD, AH22-19H440, AH42-19H440
Description / Intended Use:	Remote Function Actuator (RFA), passive keyless entry and start system low frequency initiator
Trademarks:	Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar
Applied Standards:	European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC ETSI EN 60950 ETSI EN 300 330 CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03 AS/NZS 4268 FCC Regulations 47 CFR Part 15
Responsible Person:	Kevin Cotton Lear Corporation 21557 Telegraph Road Southfield, Michigan 48033 United States of America

Hereby, **Lear Corporation** declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of **Directive 1999/5/EC**, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to **Directive 1999/5/EC**

Signed. Kevin Cotton
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date. **27 March 2009**

E150391

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive:	1999/5/EC
Manufacturer:	Lear Corporation
Type Designation:	5E0760127
Model Numbers:	5E0760127, 15K602, AH42-15K602-B, AH42-15K602-BC
Description / Intended Use:	RF Receiver (RFR), used in passive entry and passive start, remote keyless entry, and tire pressure monitoring systems
Trademarks:	Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar
Applied Standards:	European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC ETSI EN 60950 ETSI EN 300 220 CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03 AS/NZS 4268
Responsible Person.	Kevin Cotton Lear Corporation 21557 Telegraph Road Southfield, Michigan 48033 United States of America

Hereby, **Lear Corporation** declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of **Directive 1999/5/EC**, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to **Directive 1999/5/EC**.

Signed: Kevin Cotton
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: **27 March 2009**

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive:	1999/5/EC
Manufacturer:	Lear Corporation
Type Designation:	15K601
Model Numbers:	5E0B50127, 5E0B60127, 15K601-BB, AH42-15K601B, AH22-15K601B, AH42-15K601-BC, AH22-15K601-BC
Description / Intended Use:	Passive Key (PK) / Customer Identification Device (CID), passive keyless entry system keyfob
Trademarks:	Land Rover / Range Rover
Applied Standards:	CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03 ETSI EN 60950 ETSI EN 300 220 ETSI EN 301 489 IEC EN 60950 AS/NZS 4268
Responsible Person.	Kevin Cotton Lear Corporation 21557 Telegraph Road Southfield, Michigan 48033 United States of America

Hereby, **Lear Corporation** declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of **Directive 1999/5/EC**, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to **Directive 1999/5/EC**.

Signed. Kevin Cotton
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: **26 March 2009**

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

快特電波股份有限公司
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者： Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商： Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱： RFA (Passive Start)
四、廠牌/型號： LEAR / 5E0770337
五、發射功率（電場強度）: 125KHz ; 61.5dBuV/m(Average)
六、工作頻率： 125KHz
七、發證日期： 98 年 06 月 02 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：
CCAH09LP0570T1

說明：
1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼在印錶於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，經自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率或依電信法規定處罰外，無證機關(構)逕得廢止其型式認證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商保留送審樣品所有自後權利。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者，本證明持有人始得同意專輯轉讓第三者使用，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：
1：本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 2.8節之規定。
2：本驗證機構係經國家認證輸委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3：本器材所使用固定式天線廠牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

快特電波股份有限公司
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者： Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商： Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱： Range Rover FOB
四、廠牌/型號： Range Rover / 5E0B60227
五、發射功率（電場強度）: 315MHz ; 84.195dBuV/m(Peak)
六、工作頻率： 315MHz
七、發證日期： 98 年 06 月 02 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：
CCAH09LP0550T5

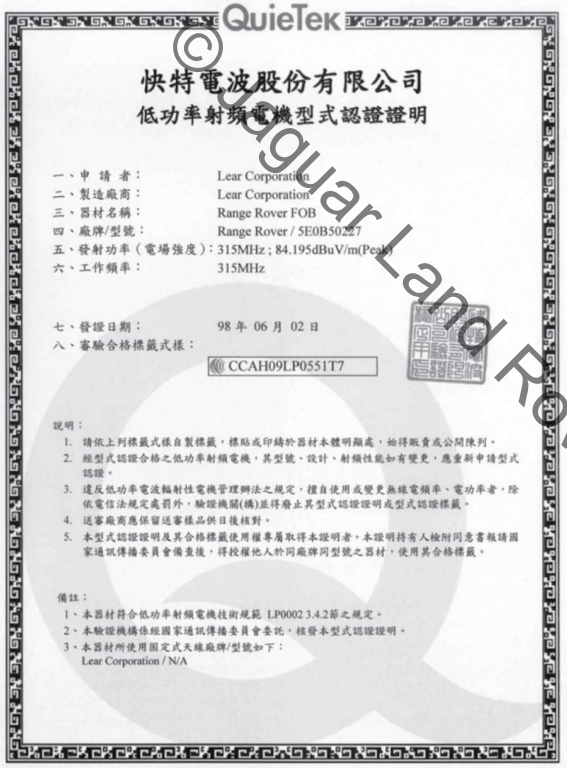
說明：
1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼在印錶於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，經自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率或依電信法規定處罰外，無證機關(構)逕得廢止其型式認證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商保留送審樣品所有自後權利。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者，本證明持有人始得同意專輯轉讓第三者使用，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：
1：本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 2.8節之規定。
2：本驗證機構係經國家認證輸委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3：本器材所使用固定式天線廠牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

E150392

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

E150393



QuieTek

快特電波股份有限公司

低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者： Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商： Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱： Range Rover FOB
四、廠牌/型號： Range Rover / 5E0B50227
五、發射功率（電場強度）：315MHz ; 84.195dBuV/m(Peak)
六、工作頻率： 315MHz

七、發證日期： 98 年 06 月 02 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：

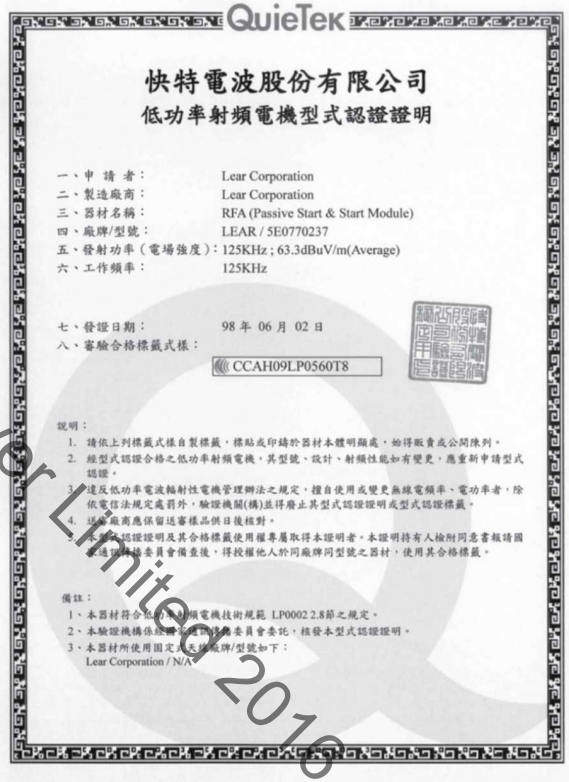
CCAH09LP0551T7

說明：

1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者。本證明持有人檢附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：

1、本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 3.4.2節之規定。
2、本驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3、本器材所使用固定式天線廠牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A



QuieTek

快特電波股份有限公司

低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者： Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商： Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱： RFA (Passive Start & Start Module)
四、廠牌/型號： LEAR / 5E0770237
五、發射功率（電場強度）：125KHz ; 63.3dBuV/m(Average)
六、工作頻率： 125KHz

七、發證日期： 98 年 06 月 02 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：

CCAH09LP0560T8

說明：

1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者。本證明持有人檢附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：

1、本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 2.8節之規定。
2、本驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3、本器材所使用固定式天線廠牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

E150394

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

QuieTek

快特電波股份有限公司

低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者： Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商： Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱： Jaguar fob
四、廠牌/型號： JAGUAR / 5E0B4P217
五、發射功率（電場強度）：315MHz ; 83.225dBuV/m(Peak)
六、工作頻率： 315MHz

七、審驗日期： 98 年 07 月 01 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：

CCAH09LP0830T1

說明：

1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者。依電信管制射頻器材審驗辦法第15條規定，持有人得經由網際網路申請同意他人於同廠牌同型號之電信管制射頻器材使用型式認證標籤，並於次日起 30 天內，應檢具「電信管制射頻器材審驗合格標籤或符合性聲明標籤同意使用備查表」送本會備查。

備註：

1、本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範(LP0002 3.4.2節)之規定。
2、驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3、本器材使用固定式天線，廠牌/型號為:Lear Corporation / N/A。

Continental

Continental Automotive GmbH – Postfach 100 953 – 93009 Regensburg

Kolar Dagmar
AQL RBG 42
Phone +49 (941) 790-6699
Fax +49 (941) 790-136699
dagmar.kolar@continental-corporation.com

Date	Your message dated	Our Reference	Your reference
July 29, 2008			

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer:	Continental Automotive GmbH
Address:	Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany
Product type designation:	S180 052 020 A
Intended use:	Tire Pressure System

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to §3.1.a:	*Applied standard(s):* EN 60950-1: 2006
Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b:	*Applied standard(s):* EN 301 489 -1: V1.6.1 (2005-09) EN 301 489 -3: V1.4.1 (2002-08)
Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2:	*Applied standard(s):* EN 300 220 -1: V2.1.1 (2006-04) EN 300 220 -2: V2.1.1 (2006-04)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Continental Automotive GmbH

Regensburg, 2008-07-29

Andreas Wolf
Executive Vice President
Body &Security

i. V.
Norbert Müller
Director Product Group 3
Body & Security

E150395

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

전자문서확인번호 [illegible]-V7SG-VXVD

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

인증의 종류 *Certification Type*	형식등록(Type Registration)
상호 또는 성명 *Trade Name or Applicant*	LEAR CORPORATION
기기의 명칭 *Equipment Name*	특정소출력무선기기(데이터전송용 무선기기)
기본모델명 *Basic Model Number*	5E0B40
파생모델명 *Series Model Number*	
인증번호 *Certification No*	LER-5E0B40
제조자/제조국가 *Manufacturer/Country of Origin*	Lear Automotive Electronics and Electrical/중국
형식기호 *Type Identification*	LARN2-I03L433.92T,0.125R0.003F1D1
인증연월일 *Date of Certification*	2009년(Year) 07월(Month) 15일(Date)
기타 *Others*	

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 07월(Month) 15일(Date)

전파연구소장

Director General of Radio Research Laboratory

Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

전자문서확인번호 NC49-Y219-MT4V-UKBD

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

인증의 종류 *Certification Type*	형식등록(Type Registration)
상호 또는 성명 *Trade Name or Applicant*	LEAR CORPORATION
기기의 명칭 *Equipment Name*	데이터전송용 무선기기
기본모델명 *Basic Model Number*	5E0B5P127
파생모델명 *Series Model Number*	5E0B50,5E0B60
인증번호 *Certification No*	LER-5E0B5P127
제조자/제조국가 *Manufacturer/Country of Origin*	Lear Automotive Electronics and Electrical/중국
형식기호 *Type Identification*	LARN2-I03L433.92T,0.125R0.003F1D1
인증연월일 *Date of Certification*	2009년(Year) 05월(Month) 22일(Date)
기타 *Others*	

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 05월(Month) 28일(Date)

전파연구소장

Director General of Radio Research Laboratory

Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

E150396

전자문서확인번호 7N7R-CFNL-[illegible]-SU1X

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

인증의 종류 *Certification Type*	형식등록(Type Registration)
상호 또는 성명 *Trade Name or Applicant*	LEAR CORPORATION
기기의 명칭 *Equipment Name*	미약 전계강도 무선기기
기본모델명 *Basic Model Number*	5E0770237
파생모델명 *Series Model Number*	
인증번호 *Certification No*	LER-5E0770237
제조자/제조국가 *Manufacturer/Country of Origin*	Lear Valls Automotive Electronics and Electrical/스페인
형식기호 *Type Identification*	LPD-103L0.125TA1D
인증연월일 *Date of Certification*	2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)
기타 *Others*	

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

전파연구소장

Director General of Radio Research Laboratory

Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

전자문서확인번호 JVC5-A5YQ-BF4C-1DBT

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

인증의 종류 *Certification Type*	형식등록(Type Registration)
상호 또는 성명 *Trade Name or Applicant*	LEAR CORPORATION
기기의 명칭 *Equipment Name*	미약 전계강도 무선기기
기본모델명 *Basic Model Number*	5E0770237
파생모델명 *Series Model Number*	5E0770337
인증번호 *Certification No*	LER-5E0770237
제조자/제조국가 *Manufacturer/Country of Origin*	Lear Valls Automotive Electronics and Electrical/스페인
형식기호 *Type Identification*	LPD-103L0.125TA1D
인증연월일 *Date of Certification*	2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)
기타 *Others*	

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 18일(Date)

전파연구소장

Director General of Radio Research Laboratory

Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

E150397

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Pinmill Farm, 164 Katherine Street, Sandton
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009/302

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see overleaf), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name	:	**Jaguar Land Rover SA**
Street Address	:	**Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton**
Telephone Number	:	**012 842 3274**
Facsimile Number	:	**012 845 1005**
Registration Number	:	**2001/027269/07**

Description of Apparatus

Category	:	**Remote Function Actuator (RFA)**
Model	:	**KOBJBG10B**
Frequency Range	:	**119 – 135 kHz**
ITU Emission Code	:	**12KG1D**
Modulation	:	**BPSK**
Power Output	:	**+37.7 DbµA/m @ 3m**
Channel Spacing	:	-
Features	:	-

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philemon Molefe
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

0 9 JUN 2009

P Mashilo (**Chairperson**), NA Buthi, TLV Makhakhe, R Nkuna, BB Ntombela, FK Sibande, Dr MM Soulkwa, Prof JCW van Rooyen SC, MM Zokwe (**Councillors**), **BK Motlana (CEO)**

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Pinmill Farm, 164 Katherine Street, Sandton
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009/303

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see overleaf), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name	:	**Jaguar Land Rover SA**
Street Address	:	**Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton**
Telephone Number	:	**012 842 3274**
Facsimile Number	:	**012 845 1005**
Registration Number	:	**2001/027269/07**

Description of Apparatus

Category	:	**Remote Function Actuator (RFA)**
Model	:	**KOBJBG10A**
Frequency Range	:	**119 – 135 kHz**
ITU Emission Code	:	**12KG1D**
Modulation	:	**BPSK**
Power Output	:	**+40.7 DbµA/m @ 3m**
Channel Spacing	:	-
Features	:	-

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philemon Molefe
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

0 9 JUN 2009

P Mashilo (**Chairperson**), NA Buthi, TLV Makhakhe, R Nkuna, BB Ntombela, FK Sibande, Dr MM Soulkwa, Prof JCW van Rooyen SC, MM Zokwe (**Councillors**), **BK Motlana (CEO)**

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

E150398

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

ICASA

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Pinmill Farm, 164 Katherine Street, Sandton
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009/304

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see overleaf), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name	:	**Jaguar Land Rover SA**
Street Address	:	**Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton**
Telephone Number	:	**012 842 3274**
Facsimile Number	:	**012 845 1005**
Registration Number	:	**2001/027269/07**

Description of Apparatus

Category	:	**Low Frequency Initiator FET Receiver**
Model	:	**5E0760127**
Frequency Range	:	**433.05 – 434.79 MHz**
ITU Emission Code	:	**739KK1D**
Modulation	:	**ASK, FSK**
Power Output	:	-
Channel Spacing	:	-
Features	:	-

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philemon Molefe
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

0 9 JUN 2009

P.Mashile (**Chairperson**), NA Batyi, TLV Makhakhe, R Nkuna, BB Ntombela, FK Sibande, Dr MM Sucikwa

ICASA

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Pinmill Farm, 164 Katherine Street, Sandton
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009/305

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see overleaf), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name	:	**Jaguar Land Rover SA**
Street Address	:	**Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton**
Telephone Number	:	**012 842 3274**
Facsimile Number	:	**012 845 1005**
Registration Number	:	**2001/027269/07**

Description of Apparatus

Category	:	**Key Fob Transmitter**
Model	:	**15K601**
Frequency Range	:	**433.05 MHz**
ITU Emission Code	:	**739KK1D**
Modulation	:	**ASK, FSK**
Power Output	:	**-14.6 dBm**
Channel Spacing	:	-
Features	:	-

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philemon Molefe
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

0 9 JUN 2009

P.Mashile (**Chairperson**), NA Batyi, TLV Makhakhe, R Nkuna, BB Ntombela, FK Sibande, Dr MM Sucikwa,
Prof. ICW van Rooyen SC, MM Zrikwa (**Councillors**), BK Motlana (**CEO**)

E150399



Label to be used on the following products only:

- *citizen band radio equipment*
- *cellular equipment*
- *trunk radio equipment*
- *spread spectrum devices*
- *leased channel radio equipment*
- *cordless telephone*
- *wireless security devices*
- *wireless microphone*
- *radio-control equipment*
- *medical & biology telemetry equipment*

ALPINE

ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC.
20-1 Yoshima-Kogyodanchi Iwaki-City Fukushima 970-1192 Japan.
Phone: (+81) 246-36-4111 Fax: (+81) 246-36-6090

DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

We, **Alpine Electronics, Inc.** of the above address, hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed herewith.

Product	:	**Bluetooth Module**
Model/ Type Number	:	**IAM 2.1 BT PWB EU**
Directive and Standards used	:	**Radio: EN 300 328 V1.7.1: 200610**
		EMC: EN 301 489-17 V1.3.2: 2008-04
		EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1: 2008-04
		ISO7637-2: 2004
		Safety: IEC 60065 Ed.7: 2001 + Amd.1: 2005
		EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006
Year of affixing CE marking	:	**2009**
Signature	:	S. Asuke
Name	:	Shinichi Asuke
Date	:	November 12, 2009

CE

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Type approval

The following information relates to Infotainment System Radio Type Approval Declarations.

The notices below apply to the following variants:

Model name: IMC1.0_ROW and ISC1.0

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Type approval

Česky [Czech]	Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. tímto prohlašuje, že tento "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Dansk [Danish]	Undertegnede Jaguar Land Rover Ltd.erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch [German]	Hiermit erklärt Jaguar Land Rover Ltd., dass sich das Gerät "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Eesti [Estonian]	Käesolevaga kinnitab Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. seadme "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
English	Hereby, Jaguar Land Rover Ltd., declares that this "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español [Spanish]	Por medio de la presente Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. declara que el "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Ελληνική [Greek]	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Jaguar Land Rover Ltd.ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Français [French]	Par la présente Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. déclare que l'appareil "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Italiano [Italian]	Con la presente Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. dichiara che questo "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski [Latvian]	Ar šo Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. deklarē, ka "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių [Lithuanian]	Šiuo Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. deklaruoja, kad šis "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Nederlands [Dutch]	Hierbij verklaart Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. dat het toestel "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Malti [Maltese]	Hawnhekk, Jaguar Land Rover Ltd., jiddikjara li dan "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Magyar [Hungarian]	Alulírott,Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. nyilatkozom, hogy a "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Polski [Polish]	Niniejszym Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. oświadcza, że "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português [Portuguese]	Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. declara que este "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensko [Slovenian]	Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. izjavlja, da je ta "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Slovensky [Slovak]	Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. týmto vyhlasuje, že "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Suomi [Finnish]	Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. vakuuttaa täten että [type of equipment = laitteen tyyppimerkintä] tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Svenska [Swedish]	Härmed intygar Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. att denna "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Íslenska [Icelandic]	Hér með lýsir Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. yfir því að "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Norsk [Norwegian]	Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. erklærer herved at utstyret "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

E182096

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

4x4i
4WD information....156
vehicle dimensions....157
4WD information drive assist....158
4WD information low traction launch....157
4WD information wade sensing....158
off-road information
terrain response information....156
4x4i 4 wheel drive information....157

A

About this handbook....2
Accessories....275
tow ball....114
Adaptive cruise control....141
adaptive cruise control gap change....143
automatic switch-off....144
driving hints....145
follow mode....142
follow mode off....143
forward alert....146
intelligent emergency braking....148
malfunction....146
queue assist....143
radar detection beam issues....145
resume follow mode....144
resume set speed....144
set speed and follow mode override....143
Adaptive dynamics....129
AdBlue....264
AEB....131
Age degradation (tyres)....321
Airbags
cover cleaning....291
curtain....54
deployment....52, 55
disability modifications....57
disabling....56
front....54
locations....50
maintenance....275
obstruction....53
service information....57
side....54
warning lamp....55, 66
Air conditioning....206
air quality sensor....209
air vents....209
automatic recirculation....209
remote control batteries....216
using the remote control....215
Air conditioning (a/c)
fluid top up....273
Alarm....275
automatic relocking and arming....22
battery back-up sounder....23
deactivating....25
interior disabling....22
passive arming....23
security sensor fault....25
tilt sensor....24
All terrain progress control (ATPC)
overview
settings....149, 151
Amber exhaust fluid warning lamp....67
Amber tea cup warning....68
Anchor points (luggage)....97
Anti-lock braking system
emergency stop signal....134
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) warning lamp....67
Anti-theft system....275
Anti-trap protection
windows....89
ARLA 32....264
Assistance contact numbers....369
ATPC
using....149, 151
Audio
AM/FM radio controls....185
automatic station retune....186
CD loading....180
changing portable media device....195
conversation assist....181

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Index

DAB radio
controls....188
settings....189
dual view....202
dual view controls....202
full screen view....197
licensing....181, 183
media controls....178
portable media connections....190
portable media controls....192
portable media pairing....194
portable media playing....193
settings....179
sound settings....180
TV controls....198
Audio settings....179
AUS 32....264
Auto lamps
wiper detection....73
Automatic locking....13, 22
Automatic switch off of adaptive cruise control....144
Automatic transmission....125
gear shift warning lamp....69
Autonomous emergency braking (AEB)....131
Auto start....123
Auto stop....123
Auto zoom (navigation)....242
Auxiliary device connection....194
Auxiliary heater....213
Auxiliary power sockets....95

B

Battery
boost starting....302
care....300
charging....303
connecting jump leads....301
disconnection....303
effects of disconnection....303
maintenance....300
monitoring system....303
removing....303
replacing....303
using a starting aid....302
warning lamp....65
warning symbols....300
Battery back-up sounder....23
Bend lighting....74
warning lamp....67
Blind
resetting the roof blind....286
Blinds
rear window....88
side windows....89
Blind spot monitor
closing vehicle sensing....161
displayed messages....163
notification of overtaking vehicle....160
sensor blockage....163
Bluetooth
compatibility....231
general information....235
pairing
via the phone....231
phone
icons....232
safety....230
portable media
pairing....194
playing....193
Bluetooth phone
call volume....233
overview....229
steering wheel controls....233
Bonnet
closing....277
opening....277
Booster seats for larger children....47
Boost starting....302
Boot opening and closing....13
Brakes
ABS warning lamp....67
autonomous braking....131
control with ABS....130
electronic brake force distribution...131

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

emergency assist.....147
emergency brake assist.....130
emergency stop signal.....134
fluid
specification.....298
top up.....298
fluid level.....297
handbrake.....133
important information.....130
parking brake warning lamp.....66
steep slope control.....130
warning lamp (amber).....67
warning lamp (red).....65
Brake temperature.....139
Breakdown assistance
InControl link.....251
Bulbs
changing a bulb.....279
direction indicator.....284
rear fog lamp.....285
rear lamp.....285

C

Cameras
hitch assist.....110
single rear view camera.....225
Capacities.....347
engine oil.....347
fuel tank.....347
washer reservoir.....347
Carpets and mats.....291
CD player
CD loading.....180
portable media pairing.....194
portable media playing.....193
Cell phone
call volume.....233
icons.....232
overview.....229
steering wheel controls.....233
Changing a bulb.....279
Changing a fuse.....306
Changing a wheel
locking wheel nuts.....336
recommended process.....337
safety warnings.....333
spare wheel.....334
temporary spare wheel.....336
tool kit.....334
Charging the vehicle battery.....303
Chassis number.....343–344
Child safety
booster seats.....47
check list.....47
child seats.....42
ISOFIX installation.....47
larger children on booster seats.....47
lock and window inhibitor.....42
positioning.....44
recommended child seats.....47
tether straps.....48
Cleaning
after off-road driving.....289
airbag covers.....291
alloy wheels.....289
carpets and mats.....291
engine compartment.....289
exterior.....288
glass.....289
interior.....290
leather.....290
park assist sensors.....289
parking aids sensors.....289
rear screen.....290
seat belts.....291
sensors and cameras.....289
under body.....289
washer jets.....292
wipers.....292
Cleaning the wiper blades.....292
Climate and comfort
fuel burning heater.....213
remote control batteries.....216
timed climate remote controls.....216
using the remote control.....215
Climate and comfort settings.....209
Climate control.....206

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Index

air vents....209
automatic recirculation....209
climate seats....212
fuel burning heater....213
heated seats....211
remote control batteries....216
seat comfort....211
timed climate remote controls....216
using the remote control....215
Climate settings....209
Clock....58
Closing the bonnet....277
Closing the luggage compartment....13
Closing vehicle sensing....161
Clutch
fluid level....297
Commandshift....125, 128
Compact disc....180
Condensation (headlamps)....73
Conformity declarations....372
Connecting jump leads....301
Connectivity
connecting a sim card....261
settings....259
status icons....260
Controls cleaning....290
Convenience mode....12
Convertible
wind deflector
windbreak....104
Convertible roof
closing....101
manual re-set....101
opening....100
Coolant
checking the level....295
specification....295
top up....295
Courtesy delay....72
Covers
refitting....278
removal....277
Critical warning messages....65
Cruise control....140
adaptive cruise control....141
adaptive cruise control driving hints....145
adaptive cruise control emergency braking....148
adaptive cruise control follow mode....142
adaptive cruise control gap change....143
adaptive cruise control malfunction....146
adaptive cruise control radar detection beam issues....145
adaptive cruise control set speed and follow mode override....143
follow mode....142
forward alert in adaptive cruise control....146
resume adaptive cruise control follow mode....144
resume adaptive cruise control set speed....144
using adaptive cruise control....141
warning lamp....69
Curtain airbags....54

D

DAB radio
settings....189
DAB radio controls....188
Data recording....341
Daytime running lamps....72
Declarations of conformity....372
DEF....264
consumption rate....346
DEF warning lamp....65, 67
Detachable tow ball....112
Detection beam issues....145
Diesel
anti misfuel device active....269
fuel....263
glow plugs
warning lamp....68

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

misfuel device passive.....269
sulphur content.....264
water in fuel.....267
Diesel engines.....267
Diesel exhaust fluid (DEF)
consumption rate.....346
Diesel particulate filter (DPF).....274
sulphur content.....264
Dimensions.....349
Direction indicators.....71
warning lamp.....69
Disability modifications
airbags.....57
Disabling the passenger airbag.....56
Displays.....291
Door mirrors.....83
blind spot monitor.....160
closing vehicle sensing.....161
sensors.....163
Door transceiver
assistance.....86
erase all programming.....86
programming.....85
programming a single button.....86
programming the garage door
opener.....85
Double locking.....21
DPF.....274
DPF warning lamp
amber.....67
green.....69
red.....65
Drive assist
4x4i (4 wheel drive information).....158
Drive away locking.....13
Driver drowsiness alert.....68
Driver exit
deactivating intelligent stop/start....124
Driver monitor.....165
Driving
activating intelligent stop/start.....123
adaptive cruise control.....141
adaptive cruise control automatic
switch-off.....144
adaptive cruise control driving
hints.....145
adaptive cruise control emergency
braking.....148
adaptive cruise control follow
mode.....142
adaptive cruise control forward
alert.....146
adaptive cruise control gap
change.....143
adaptive cruise control
malfunction.....146
adaptive cruise control radar detection
beam issues.....145
adaptive cruise control set speed and
follow mode override.....143
after a collision.....341
autonomous braking.....131
before starting.....341
blind spot monitor.....160
closing vehicle sensing.....161
blind spot monitor messages.....163
brake control with ABS.....130
brakes important information.....130
daily checks.....274
deactivating intelligent stop/start....124
DSC active warning lamp.....68
electronic brake force distribution...131
emergency brake assist.....130
emergency stop signal.....134
forward alert.....146
forward alert warning lamp.....69
fuel filler information.....268
gear shift warning lamp.....69
lane departure warning lamp
(green).....70
lane departure warning lamp (red)....66
low oil pressure.....66
queue assist (adaptive cruise
control).....143
rain sensor.....80

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

resume adaptive cruise control follow mode....144
resume adaptive cruise control set speed....144
running-in....273
sitting correctly....29
steep slope control with ABS....130
using adaptive cruise control....141
using cruise control....140
weekly checks....274
Driving abroad
beam pattern....73
headlamps....73
Driving aids
cameras
proximity view....166
touch screen menu....166
lane departure warning....163
traffic sign recognition....165
Driving assist....164
Driving position memory....29
Driving programs
dynamic program....154
general program....153
grass/gravel/snow....154
mud/ruts....154
override options....154
sand....154
system difficulties....154
Dual view....202
controls....202
Dynamic program....154
Dynamic stability control (DSC)....135
DSC active warning lamp....68
DSC off warning lamp....68
switching off....135
switching on....135

E

Effects of battery disconnection....303
Electric parking brake....133
Electric roof
closing....101
manual re-set....101
opening....100
Electric seats....26
position memory....29
rear seat access....30
restricted front seat travel....29
Electric windows
operation....88
Electronic brake force distribution....131
Electronic data....341
Electronic traction control (ETC)....137
Emergency brake assist....130, 147
Emergency call
InControl link....251
Emergency release
load carrying....99
Emergency stop signal....134
hazard warning lamps....134
Engine
antifreeze level....295
compartment opening....277
coolant level....295
diesel....267
diesel fuel....263
engine compartment
poisonous fluids....276
oil level....294
petrol fuels....262
running-in....273
specifications....345
switching off....119
Engine/transmission warning lamp....68
Engine compartment
fluid filler locations....293
Engine compartment cleaning....289
Engine covers
refitting....278
removal....277
Engine oil
capacity....347
Engine pre-heater
antifreeze....121
cold starting....121
connecting to mains supply....121

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Engine starting.....119
failure to start.....121
Engine temperature warning lamp.....66
Entering the vehicle
entry and exit mode.....30
global opening.....12
keyless entry.....12
passive entry.....12
unlocking mode.....11
unlocking the steering column.....36
Ethanol.....263
Event data recording.....341
Exhaust emissions.....278
Exhaust filter.....264, 274
Exhaust filter warning lamp
amber.....67
green.....69
red.....65
Exhaust fluid
diesel.....264
Exiting the vehicle
closing mislock.....24
door locks and release levers.....24
double locking.....21
global closing.....23
interior locks.....24
keyless locking.....22
lock confirmation.....22
passive arming.....23
single locking.....21
Exterior cleaning.....288
Exterior lamps
bulb changing.....279
Exterior mirrors
electric.....83
manual.....83
mirror dip when reversing.....84
External temperature
warning lamp.....68
Extinguisher.....287

F

Fatigue alert.....68, 165
Fire extinguisher.....287
Flat spots.....321
Fluids
air conditioning (a/c) fluid.....273
brake
check.....297
specification.....298
top up.....298
capacities.....347
clutch check.....297
coolant
specification.....295
top up.....295
engine oil
check.....294
filler locations.....293
oil
top up.....295
specifications.....346
washer fluid.....299
check.....298
specification.....299
Fog lamp
bulb replacement.....285
Fog lamps
warning lamps
front.....69
rear.....69
Follow
override.....143
Follow mode
entering.....142
gap change.....143
gap changing.....143
off.....70
override.....144
resume.....144
switching off.....143
Forward alert.....146
Forward alert in adaptive cruise control
object detection.....146
Forward alert warning lamp.....69
Forward vehicle guidance
object detection.....169

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Index

steering path....169
Front airbags....54
Front climate control
automatic recirculation....209
Front towing eye....339
Fuel and refuelling....268
anti misfuel device active....269
consumption....271
diesel....263
diesel fuel sulphur content....264
ethanol....263
fuel filler....268
fuel filler flap....268
methanol....263
methyl tertiary butyl ether (MTBE)...263
misfuel device passive....269
octane rating....262
petrol....262
running out....266
safety precautions....262
tank capacity....270
water in fuel....267
Fuel burning heater....213
Fuel can....266
Fuel consumption....271
combined cycles....272
extra-urban cycle....272
urban cycle....272
Fuel filler flap....268
Fuel filter information....268
Fuel gauge....58
Fuel system....278
Fuel tank
capacity....347
Full screen view for video....197
Fuses
changing....306
engine compartment fuse box....307
loadspace fuse box....313
locations....305
luggage compartment....313
luggage compartment fuse box....311
passenger compartment fuse box...309

G

Garage door opener....85
assistance....86
erase all programming....86
programming....85
programming a single button....86
Garage door transceiver....85
Gearbox
automatic....125
emergency park release....340
gear shift warning lamp....69
limp home mode....127
manual....128
General program....153
Glass cleaning....289
Global closing....23
Global opening....12
Glovebox locking....22
Glow plugs
warning lamp....68
Gradient release control
ascent brake release....139
Grass/gravel/snow....154

H

Handbook symbols....2
Handbrake....133
Hands free tailgate opening....18
Hazard warning lamps
emergency stop signal....134
Headlamps....71
beam pattern....73
bend lighting....74
bulb changing....279
condensation....73
courtesy delay....72
daytime running lamps....72
driving abroad....73
high beam assist....72
high beam assist warning lamp....69
high beam warning lamp....70
levelling....74
removal....281
warning lamp bend lighting....67

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

washers....82
xenon....280
Headlight
washers....82
Head restraints
front seats....34
rear seats....34
Head up display....61
Heated steering wheel....36
Heating and ventilation....206
air quality sensor....209
air vents....209
automatic recirculation....209
climate seats....212
heated seats....211
High beam assist....72
Hill descent control....138
brake release control....139
brake temperature....139
warning lamp....70
Hitch assist
cameras....110
Homelink....85
assistance....86
erase all programming....86
programming....85
programming a single button....86
programming the garage door opener....85

I

Ignition
rolling re-start....120
switching on....120
InControl
apps....257
connected navigation....245
connectivity....259
overview....251
pro services....256
protect....251
remote premium....254
secure....255
Indicator lamps....63
Indicators warning lamp....69
Information messages....59, 68
Infotainment
automatic station retune....186
CD loading....180
connecting a media device....191
conversation assist....181
DAB radio
settings....189
DAB radio controls....188
dual view....202
controls....202
DVD player controls....200
full screen view....197
headphones....204
importing/ripping media....195
licensing....183
media controls....178
media player controls....196
portable media
changing....195
connecting multiple devices....194
connections....190
controls....192
pairing....194
playing....193
radio controls....185
settings....179
sound settings....180
touch screen
care....174
extra features....175
home menu....170
my home screen....172
operating....173
TV controls....198
Instrument panel....58, 291
display units....61
fuel range....60
head up display....61
lamp test....64
menu....59
driving features....59

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Index

instrument display.....59
trip computer.....59
vehicle set-up.....59
recommended tyre pressures.....326
service indicator.....61
trip computer.....60
trip distance.....60
tyre pressure check.....326
warning lamps.....64
warning messages.....59
Intelligent emergency braking
adaptive cruise control.....148
Intelligent stop/start.....123
activating.....123
deactivating.....124
Intelligent stop/start warning lamp.....70
Interior cleaning.....290
airbag covers.....291
carpets and mats.....291
Interior lamps.....75, 77
bulb changing.....279
intensity.....78
interior mood lighting.....78
stealth mode.....78
types.....75, 77
Interior locking.....24
Interior protection
temporary disabling.....22
Introduction
instructional videos.....3
ISOFIX installation.....47

J

Jump starting
connecting a starting aid.....302
connecting jump leads.....301

K

Keyless entry.....12
Keyless locking.....22
Keyless start backup.....120
Key transmitters.....13
Kick gesture tailgate opening.....18

L

Label locations.....343–344
Lamps.....71
auto lamps wiper detection.....73
bulb changing.....279
condensation.....73
test.....64
TPMS warning lamp.....69
warning lamps.....64
xenon headlamps.....280
Lane departure warning.....163
Lane departure warning lamp (green)...70
Lane departure warning lamp (red).....66
Lane drifting.....164
Leather cleaning.....290
Levelling
headlamps.....74
Licensing
audio/video.....181
Lighting
interior lamps intensity.....78
interior lamps locations.....75, 77
interior mood lighting.....78
stealth mode.....78
Limp home mode.....127
Load carriers
roof mounted.....97
Load carrying
emergency release.....99
securing a load.....96
Load securing.....97
Loadspace
emergency release.....99
Loadspace cover.....96
Locking
automatic relocking.....22
confirmation.....22
door locks and release levers.....24
double locking.....21
drive away.....13
global closing.....23
keyless.....22
mislock.....24

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

security sensor fault.....25
single.....21
transmitter effects on medical devices.....13
Locking the glovebox.....22
Locking wheel nuts.....336
Low fuel warning lamp.....69
Low oil pressure warning lamp.....66
Low traction launch
4x4i 4 wheel drive information.....157
Lubricants specifications.....346
Luggage
loadspace area.....96
Luggage compartment
anchor points.....97
loadspace cover.....96
Luggage compartment closing.....13
Luggage compartment hatch.....99
Luggage compartment opening.....13

M

Maintenance
after off-road driving.....289
air conditioning (a/c).....273
brake fluid level.....297
bulb changing.....279
capacities.....347
changing a fuse.....306
checking tyre pressure after a repair.....331
cleaning
alloy wheels.....289
exterior.....288
glass.....289
interior.....290
leather.....290
rear screen.....290
seat belts.....291
sensors and cameras.....289
the engine compartment.....289
under body.....289
closing the bonnet.....277
clutch fluid level.....297
daily checks.....274
engine compartment fuse box.....307
engine coolant level.....295
engine oil level.....294
fuel system.....278
fuse box (passenger compartment).....309
jump starting.....302
label locations.....343–344
loadspace fuse box.....313
lubricants and fluid specifications.....346
luggage compartment fuse box.....311
oil top up.....295
paintwork repair.....292
running-in.....273
smart key battery.....19
tyre repair kit.....328
tyre repair procedure.....329
using a starting aid.....302
washer fluid level.....298
weekly checks.....274
Manual seats.....26
Map
auto zoom.....242
split screen.....242
updates.....244
Massage seats.....212
Media
automatic station retune.....186
DVD player controls.....200
portable media
connecting a media device.....191
importing/ripping media.....195
radio controls.....185
rear media
headphones.....204
video media player controls.....196
Media controls.....178
side panel.....171
Message centre display units.....61
Methanol.....263
Minor paintwork repairs.....292
Mirrors
blind spot monitor.....160–161, 163

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

dip when reversing.....84
exterior mirrors.....83
Misfuel device active.....269
Misfuel device passive.....269
Mpg.....271
Mud/ruts.....154

N

Navigation
address entry.....240
adjusting the volume.....243
alerts.....244
approach mode.....246
connected navigation.....245
door to door routing.....247
edit route.....243
favourites.....244
fuel finder.....245
fuel prices service.....246
main menu
search.....240
map
auto zoom.....242
split screen.....242
updates.....244
menu.....239
my commute.....245
online routing.....247
online service.....247
operating.....236
overview.....236
profiles.....248
real time traffic flow.....246
route planning web portal.....247
safety cameras.....247
satellite view.....247
search.....240
settings.....242
share.....248
side panel.....171
view options.....243
News
side panel.....171

O

Obstructing the airbag.....53
Occupant safety
child seat tether straps.....48
cleaning seat belts.....291
recommended child seats.....47
rollover protection device.....55
seat belt checks.....40
seat belt pre-tensioners.....39
seat belt reminder warning.....41
seat belt safety.....39
seat belts warning lamp.....66
using seat belts.....37
Octane rating.....262
petrol.....262
Off-road driving
cleaning after.....289
dynamic program.....154
general program.....153
grass/gravel/snow.....154
mud/ruts.....154
override options.....154
recovery.....340
sand program.....154
system difficulties.....154
Off-road information
4x4i.....156
Oil
engine oil specification.....295
filler locations.....293
poisonous fluids.....276
specification.....346
top up.....295
used engine oil.....276
Online service history (OSH).....356
Opening the bonnet.....277
Opening the luggage compartment.....13
OSH
online service history.....356
Oversteer.....135
Overview
InControl mobile technology.....251
indicator lamps.....63

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

warning lamps.....63
Owner maintenance.....274

P

Paintwork
repair.....292
Pairing
via the phone.....231
Panoramic roof blind.....89
resetting the roof blind.....286
Park assist
cleaning sensors and cameras.....289
limitations.....224
options.....219
selecting.....221
troubleshooting.....225
using.....221
Parking aid
limitations.....219
Parking aids
adjusting the volume.....219
cleaning sensors and cameras.....289
reverse traffic detection (RTD).....226
sensors.....227
single rear view camera.....225
system fault.....219
Parking brake.....133
warning lamp.....66
Parking features
park assist.....219
limitations.....224
selecting.....221
troubleshooting.....225
using.....221
using.....217
Park position emergency release.....340
Particle filter.....274
Parts.....275
Passenger compartment fuse box.....309
Passive alarm arming.....23
Passive entry.....12
Petrol
fuel types.....262
Petrol consumption.....271
Phone
Bluetooth compatibility.....231
call volume.....233
compatibility list.....231
contacts.....233
icons.....232
InControl.....254
managing two calls.....232
merge calls.....232
overview.....229
pairing via the phone.....231
side panel.....171
steering wheel controls.....233
Phone safety.....230
Portable media
Bluetooth wireless technology.....235
changing device.....195
connecting a media device.....191
connecting multiple devices.....194
connections.....190
controls.....192
importing/ripping media.....195
pairing.....194
playing.....193
Powered tailgate.....16
opening height.....19
resetting the memory.....19
Power sockets.....95
Pregnancy
using seat belts.....39
Pressure checking (tyres)
checking after a repair.....331
Pressures
tyres.....318
Progress control warning lamp.....66
Puncture repair kit.....328
instructions for use.....329
repair procedure.....329
safety.....328
Push button start backup.....120

Q

QR codes for smart phones
instructional videos.....3

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Index

Queue assist
adaptive cruise control.....143

R

Radio
automatic station retune.....186
DAB
settings.....189
DAB controls.....188
Radio frequency ID (RFID).....90
Radio frequency regulations.....354
Rain sensor.....80
Rear camera
hitch assist.....110
Rear fog lamps warning lamp.....69
Rear media
headphones.....204
Rear screen cleaning.....290
Rear seat access.....30
Rear seat entertainment
headphones.....204
Rear seat hatch.....99
Rear seats
folding and raising.....32
Rear towing eye.....340
Rear window blind.....88
Recommended tyre pressures.....326
Recording
event data.....341
service data.....341
Recovery
off-road.....340
transmission park release.....340
transporting.....339
Red exhaust fluid warning lamp.....65
Refuelling
diesel.....263
diesel fuel sulphur content.....264
ethanol.....263
fuel filler flap.....268
methanol.....263
MTBE.....263
octane rating.....262
petrol.....262
running out of fuel.....266
safety precautions.....262
Reminder (seat belt).....41
Remote control
care.....20
driving position memory.....29
single locking.....21
smart key battery.....19
system transmitters.....351
Removing the spare wheel.....334
Removing the vehicle battery.....303
Repairing paintwork damage.....292
Replacement tyres.....320
Resetting the windows.....287
Restarting the engine while moving...120
Restricted front seat travel.....29
Resume speed and follow mode (adaptive cruise control).....144
Reverse parking aids
adjusting the volume.....219
parking aid system fault.....219
reverse traffic detection (RTD).....226
sensors.....227
using.....217
Reverse trailer.....111
Reversing
parking aid limitations.....219
Roadside Assistance.....369
Road sign recognition.....165
Rolling re-start.....120
Rolling roads.....276
Rollover protection.....50
Rollover protection device.....55
Roof blind.....89
operation.....89
Roof racks.....97
maximum weight.....97
Running-in.....273
Running out of fuel.....266

S

Safety
child safety locks.....42
cleaning seat belts.....291

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

fuel and refuelling....262
rollover protection device....55
seat belt checks....40
seat belt pre-tensioners....39
seat belt reminder warning....41
seat belts....39
seat belts warning lamp....66
seats for larger children....47
sitting correctly....29
tyre care....317
tyre pressures....318
used engine oil....276
use seat belts during pregnancy....39
using seat belts....37
using the phone....230
Safety camera alert
adjusting the volume....243
Safety in the garage
battery precautions....276
electrical components....276
engine fans....276
exhaust gases....276
hot components....276
jacking....276
Sand program....154
Satellite navigation
address entry....240
alerts....244
approach mode....246
connected navigation....245
door to door routing....247
edit route....243
favourites....244
fuel finder....245
fuel prices service....246
map
auto zoom....242
split screen....242
updates....244
menu....239
my commute....245
online routing....247
online service....247
operating....236
overview....236
profiles....248
real time traffic flow....246
route planning web portal....247
safety cameras....247
satellite view....247
search....240
settings....242
share....248
view options....243
Screen wash
check....298
specification....346
topping up....299
Seat belts....37, 291
adjusting....37
checks....40
pre-tensioners....39
reminder warning....41
safety....39
use during pregnancy....39
warning lamp....66
Seats
child restraint check list....47
child seat positioning....44
child seats....42
child seat tether straps....48
cleaning seat belts....291
climate seats....212
comfort and adjustment....211
electric front....26
front head restraints....34
heated....211
ISOFIX installation....47
manual front....26
position memory....29
rear head restraints....34
rear seat access....30
rear seat folding and raising....32
recommended child seats....47
remote seats
settings....213

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Index

restricted front seat travel.....29
seat belts warning lamp.....66
seat massage.....212
sitting correctly.....29
Securing luggage.....96–97
Security
alarm.....275
tilt sensor.....24
automatic perimeter alarm.....23
automatic relocking and arming.....22
battery back-up sounder.....23
closing mislock.....24
deactivating the alarm.....25
lock confirmation.....22
single locking.....21
Security sensors
fault.....25
Sensors
blockage.....163
Sequential shift.....125, 128
Service
arduous operating conditions.....358
armoured vehicles.....358
arranging a service.....356
end of life vehicle (elv).....360
fluid replacement.....358
online service history (OSH).....356
replacement service record.....358
service content.....357
service interval plan.....359
service record.....358
service requirements.....357
Service interval indicator.....61
Service position
wipers service position.....286
Servicing
airbags.....57
data recording.....341
Settings
general.....177
guidance
navigation system.....242
system.....177
Settings menu.....59
display units.....61
Setting the heating and ventilation.....209
Side airbags.....54
Side lamps warning lamp.....70
Sign recognition.....165
Silencing the alarm.....25
Sim card
connecting.....261
Sitting correctly.....29
Smart key
battery changing.....19
care.....20
driving position memory.....29
single locking.....21
transmitters.....351
Smartphone
InControl.....254
InControl app.....251, 257
InControl protect link.....251
Smart phone video
QR codes.....3
Snow chains.....323
Soft top roof
closing.....101
manual re-set.....101
opening.....100
Solar attenuating glass.....90
SOS emergency call
InControl protect link.....251
Sound settings.....180
Spare wheel.....334
using wheel chocks.....336
Specifications
capacities.....347
dimensions.....349
engine.....345
ethanol.....263
fluids.....346
fuel tank capacity.....270
label locations.....343–344
lubricants.....346
methanol.....263

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

MTBE....263
weight....348
Speed-dependent wipers....81
Speedometer....58
Split screen map....242
SRS....50
airbag warning lamp....66
Stability control
DSC....135
switching on....135
switching off....135
Starting after a collision....341
Starting the engine....119, 123
engine pre-heater....121
failure to start....121
push button start backup....120
Status icons
touch screen....172
Stealth mode....78
Steering column
lock....13
vehicle recovery....13
Steering column lock....36
Steering correction....164
Steering wheel
adjusting....36
heated....36
Stolen vehicle
InControl secure....255
Stop/start
activating....123
deactivating....124
Stopping the engine....123
Storage compartments....91
cup holders....91
front cubby box....91
glovebox....22
rear armrest....91
Storage compartments areas
glove box....91
Sun blind....88–89
Sunroof
anti-trap protection....89
Sun roof
roof blind....89
Supplementary restraint system (SRS)
airbag deployment....55
airbag locations....50
airbags maintenance....275
airbag warning lamp....55, 66
curtain airbags....54
disabling passenger airbag....56
front airbags....54
side airbags....54
Surround camera....111
Surround cameras....166
forward vehicle guidance....169
touch screen menu....166
Suspension
adaptive dynamics....129
Switch cleaning....290
Switching off the engine....119
Switching on the ignition....120

T

Tachometer....58
Tailgate
opening and closing....15–16
powered opening height....19
resetting the powered tailgate memory....19
Tailgate hands free opening....18
Take a break....165
Tea cup alert....68
Technical specifications
brake fluid....346
capacities....347
DEF consumption rate....346
diesel exhaust fluid (DEF) consumption rate....346
dimensions....349
engine....345
engine coolant....346
engine oil....346
radio frequency regulations....354
washer fluid....346
weights....348

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Index

Telephone
Bluetooth compatibility.....231
Bluetooth wireless technology.....235
call volume.....233
contacts.....233
icons.....232
managing two calls.....232
merge calls.....232
overview.....229
pairing
via the phone.....231
steering wheel controls.....233
Telephone safety.....230
Television
controls.....198
Terrain response.....153
Terrain response information
4x4i.....156
Tilt sensor.....24
Timed climate.....214
additional remote controls.....216
remote control batteries.....216
touch screen controls.....214
using the remote control.....215
Timed climate control.....213
Tinted front screen.....90
Tiredness alert.....165
Toll road payment.....90
Tool kit.....334
Touch screen.....291
changing portable media device.....195
connecting multiple portable media devices.....194
connectivity settings.....259
DAB radio controls.....188
dual view.....202
dual view controls.....202
editing screens.....173
editing shortcuts.....173
editing widgets.....173
extra features.....175
forward vehicle guidance.....169
fuel burning heater.....213
general settings.....177
heated seats.....211
home menu.....170
inhibited display.....197
massage seats.....212
my home screen.....172
operating.....173
portable media
controls.....192
portable media connections.....190
portable media pairing.....194
portable media playing.....193
seat settings.....213
side panel.....171
status icons.....172
surround cameras.....166
system settings.....177
timed climate controls.....214
touch screen care.....174
TV controls.....198
valet mode.....175
deselecting.....176
video player controls.....196
Tow ball
detachable.....112
options.....110
Tow ball accessories.....114
Tow bar
mounting points.....116
Towing
a trailer.....114
calculating weight.....113
checks
breakaway cable.....113
lights.....113
nose weight limit.....113
tow ball.....113
detachable tow ball.....112
essential checks.....113
hitch assist.....110
stability assist.....110
tow assist.....111
tow ball accessories.....114

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

tow ball options....110
tow bar dimensions....116
tow bar mounting points....116
trailer electrical connections....112
trailer hitch....112
trailer sway....110
weights....108
Towing eyes
front....339
rear....340
Tracking your vehicle
InControl secure....255
Traction control....137
switching off....135
switching on....135
Traffic sign recognition....165
Trailer
electrical connections....112
sway....110
towing weights....108
Trailer direction indicators warning lamp....70
Trailer rear view....111
Transmission
automatic....125
emergency park release....340
gear shift warning lamp....69
limp home mode....127
manual....128
Transmission park release....340
Transmitters
smart key....351
Transporting the vehicle....339
Trip computer....60
average speed....60
fuel consumption....60
fuel range....60
reset....60
trip distance....60
Trunk opening and closing....13
Turning adaptive cruise control follow mode off....70
TV
controls....198
dual view....202
dual view controls....202
Tyre pressure checking after a repair....331
Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)....325
full size replacements....327
tyre care....317
valves....320
warning lamp....69
Tyre pressures....326
Tyre repair kit
checking pressures....331
repair procedure....329
safety information....328
using....329
Tyres
age degradation....321
changing....327
flat spots....321
full size replacements....327
important information....336
Indian regulations....324
pressure check....326
pressures....318
recommended tyre pressure look-up....326
repair kit....328
repair kit use....329
repair procedure....329
replacements....320
snow chains....323
speed ratings....317
temporary use spare....327
TPMS....325
warning lamp....69
tyre care....317
tyre repair safety....328
tyre wall markings....316
use of spare tyre....336
valves....320

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Index

vehicle loading....326
wall markings....316
winter....321

U

Under body cleaning....289
Under bonnet covers....277–278
Understeer....135
Unlocking....24
all doors....9
driver's door....9
entry and exit mode....30
global opening....9, 12
keyless entry....12
load carrying emergency release....99
mode....9
multi point entry....9, 11
opening the tailgate....15–16
passive entry....12
single point entry....9, 11
steering column....36
transmitter effects on medical devices....13
USB devices
connecting multiple devices....194
Used engine oil....276
Using adaptive cruise control....141
Using cruise control....140
Using the spare tyre
important information....336
Using wheel chocks....336

V

Valet mode....175
deselecting....176
Vehicle alarm....275
Vehicle battery
battery monitoring system....303
connecting jump leads....301
effects of disconnection....303
removing....303
replacing....303
warning symbols....300
Vehicle battery care....300
Vehicle cleaning
after driving off-road....289
airbag covers....291
alloy wheels....289
carpets and mats....291
engine compartment....289
interior....290
rear screen....290
under body....289
washer jets....292
Vehicle data recording....341
Vehicle dimensions....157
Vehicle loading tyre pressures....326
Vehicle location
InControl secure....255
Vehicle recovery
front towing eye....339
off-road....340
rear towing eye....340
steering column lock....13
transmission park release....340
transporting the vehicle....339
Vehicle testing on rolling roads....276
Video media player
controls....196
dual view....202
controls....202
full screen view....197
inhibited display....197
VIN number....343–344
Voice control....249
settings
command list....250
operating guide....250
preferences....250
voicetags....250
voice training....250
tutorial....250
voicetags....250

W

Wade sensing
4x4i 4 wheel drive information....158

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Index

Warning lamp
adBlue....65, 67
DPF
green....69
red....65
Warning lamps....63–64, 68–69
ABS....67
adaptive cruise control follow mode....68, 70
airbags....55, 66
battery charge....65
bend lighting....67
brake....65, 67
critical warning message....65
cruise control....69
diesel glow plugs....68
DPF....67
DSC active....68
engine/transmission....68
engine temperature....66
external temperature....68
forward alert....69
gear shift warning lamp....69
HDC....70
headlamp high beam....70
high beam assist....69
indicators....69
intelligent stop/start (green)....70
intelligent stop/start (white)....70
lamp test....64
lane departure (green)....70
lane departure (red)....66
low fuel....69
low oil pressure....66
parking brake....66
progress control system....66
rear fog lamps....69
seat belt....66
side lights....70
trailer direction indicators....70
tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)....69
Warning messages....59
Warranty
accessories fitted to a new vehicle....365
accident damage repair....365
aluminium body repairs....365
corrosion protection warranty....364
data protection statement....362
emission control system warranty....365
manufacturer's warranty....363
manufacturer's warranty terms....363
other exclusions....368
owner's responsibilities....362
paint surface warranty....363
parts and accessories warranty....364
quality checks....362
safety-related defects (australia only)....356
warranty and consumer law....363
warranty cover when touring....363
what is not covered by scheduled maintenance items?....367
what is not covered by the manufacturer's warranty?....365
what is not covered by the paint surface warranty and corrosion protection warranty?....367
Warranty exclusions
other exclusions....368
what is not covered by scheduled maintenance items?....367
what is not covered by the manufacturer's warranty?....365
what is not covered by the paint surface warranty and corrosion protection warranty?....367
Warranty information
owner's responsibilities....362
warranty and consumer law....363
warranty cover when touring....363
Warranty terms
accessories fitted to a new vehicle....365
accident damage repair....365

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016

Index

aluminium body repairs....365
corrosion protection warranty....364
emission control system warranty....365
manufacturer's warranty....363
manufacturer's warranty terms....363
paint surface warranty....363
parts and accessories warranty....364
Washer jets....292
Washer reservoir
capacity....347
Washers....79
fluid specification....299
fluid top up....299
headlamps....82
headlight....82
Water in fuel....267
Weather
side panel....171
Weights
gross vehicle weights....348
roof load....348
roof rack weight....348
tow ball/hitch....108
towing....108
vehicle weights....348
Wheel changing
important information....336
locking wheel nuts....336
recommended process....337
safety warnings....333
spare wheel....334
temporary spare wheel....336
tilt sensor....337
tool kit....334
use of spare tyre....336
Wheel chocks use....336
Wheels and tyres
age degradation....321
changing a tyre....327
checking the pressures after a repair....331
flat spots....321
full size replacements....327
Indian regulations....324
pressures....318
puncture repair....328
puncture repair safety....328
repair kit....328
repair kit use....329
repair procedure....329
replacements....320
snow chains....323
temporary use spare....327
TPMS....325
TPMS warning lamp....69
tyre care....317
tyre speed ratings....317
tyre wall markings....316
valves....320
winter tyres....321
Wheel spin....135
Wi-Fi connection icons....260
Windbreak....104
Wind deflector....104
Windows
anti-trap protection....89
operation....88
reset....287
resetting the roof blind....286
roof blind....89
solar attenuating....90
Winter tyres....321
Wipers....79
service position....286
Wipers and washers....79
drip wipe....81
fluid level....298
rain sensor....80
speed-dependent mode....81
winter park position....81
Wireless technology
Bluetooth....235

X

Xenon headlamps....280

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2016